

तमसो मा ज्योतिर्गमय

SANTINIKETAN  
VISWA BHARATI  
LIBRARY

- 475

W6

## EDUCATIONAL WORKS

### A First Year French Writer.

By G. H. WADDE. 2s. 6d.

Second Year. 3s. 6d. Third Year. 3s. 6d.

**Graduated French Exercises and Questionnaires on Accidence and Syntax.** From the Earliest Stages up to the Subjunctive Mood.  
By F. E. ROBESON. 3s. 6d.

### The Transitional French

**Reader.** With Exercises and Grammar, providing a Second French Course, based on the gradual introduction of the Tenses, for the use of Pupils who have already gone through an Elementary Oral Course.  
By R. H. PARDOE. 3s.

### Exercises in French Prose.

By E. G. H. NORTH and L. G. d'A. HUNTINGTON. 2s. 6d.

### Lectures Scientifiques.

By W. G. HARTOG. 5s.

### French Unseens.

Junior Course.—Two books, 6s. each.  
Senior Course.—Two books, 8s. each.

### The Modern German Series.

#### A Primer of German Grammar.

By SOMERVILLE and BYRNE. 2s. net.

#### Primary German Exercises.

By the same. 2s. net.

#### A First German Writer.

By the same. 3s. 6d.

#### Primary German Translation and Exercise Book.

By H. S. BRESFORD-WEBB. 2s. net.

#### Beginners' Texts. 9d. each.

1. Selections from Hebel's *Schatzkästlein* (MORRIS). 2. *Deutsches Allerlei* (MORRIS). 3. *Lustige Geschichten* (MORRIS). 4. *Erzählungen aus der Römischen Geschichte* (LYON). 5. *Leichte Lesestücke* (SIEPMANN). 6. *Ulysses und der Kyklop* (BECKER).

#### Elementary Texts. 1s. each.

1. *Wohnachten bei Leberecht Hühnchen* (SEIDEL). 2. *Episodes from Andreas Hofer* (HOFFMANN). 3. *Bilder aus der Türkei* (GRUBB). 4. *Die Werke der Barmherzigkeit* (RIEHL). 5. *Die wandernde Glocke* (FISCHER). 6. *Der Besuch im Carcer* (ECKSTRIN). 7. *Fritz auf dem Lande* (ARNOLD).

#### Advanced Texts. 6 vols. 2s. each.

A detailed list to be had on application.

### Rivingtons' Direct Method Elementary German Texts.

Edited by D. L. SAVORY. 1s. 6d. each Vol.

#### Das Gespensterschiff.

By WILHELM HAUFF.

#### Die Geschichte des jungen

Herrn Anton. By HEINRICH SEIDEL.

#### Krambambuli.

By MARIE VON EBNER-F. FENNBACH.

#### Der Dachs auf Lichtmess.

By W. H. RIEHL.

#### John Wells.

By FRIEDRICH GERSTACKER.

#### Johannissegen.

By ERNST MUELLENBACH.

By A. R. LECHNER.

#### Easy Readings in German. 2s.

#### Schrammen's Tales of the Gods and Heroes of Ancient Greece. 2s.

#### Schrammen's German Heroes of the Middle Ages. 2s.

#### First Book of German Oral

Teaching. On the Direct Method, written throughout in German.

By A. R. FLORIAN. 3s. 6d.

#### German Prose Composition.

By R. J. MORICH. 4s. 6d.

### English Classics for Schools.

Grade I. 6d. each net.

1. Burns, Byron, and Campbell's Shorter Poems. 2. English Ballads (FIRST SERIES). 3. English Ballads (SECOND SERIES). 4. Macaulay on Clive.\* 5. Macaulay on Warren Hastings.\* 6. Scott's *Ivanhoe*.\* In 2 Vols., or in 1 Vol., 10d. net. 7. Scott's *Kenilworth*.\* 8. Scott's *Lady of the Lake*.\* Vols. I. & III. 9. Scott's *Lay of the Last Minstrel*.\* in 2 Vols., or in 1 Vol., 10d. net. 10. Scott's *Talisman*.\* 11. Wordsworth's Shorter Poems.

Grade II. 10d. each net.

1. Anson's *Voyage Round the World*.\* 2. Byron's *Childe Harold*. Cantos III. IV.\* 3. Cook's *Voyages*.\* 4. Dampier's *Voyage*.\* 5. Defoe's *Plague of London*.\* 6. Longfellow's *Evangeline*. 7. Milton's *Paradise Lost*.\* in 2 Vols., or in 1 Vol., 1s. 2d. net. 8. Pope's *Iliad*.\* in 3 Vols., or in 1 Vol., 2s. net. 9. Prescott's *Conquest of Mexico*.\* in 2 Vols., or in 1 Vol., 1s. 6d. net.\*

\* The text of these books is reduced.  
Grade III. Five Vols.

A detailed list to be had on application.

London: 34, King Street, Covent-Garden, W.C.



# SECOND LATIN BOOK

BEING THE SECOND YEAR OF A TWO YEARS'  
COURSE PREPARATORY TO CAESAR

BY

C. A. WILLIAMS, M.A.

SOMETIME SCHOLAR OF QUEENS' COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE  
FORMERLY CLASSICAL MASTER AT HULME GRAMMAR SCHOOL, OLDHAM,  
AND AUTHOR OF 'FIRST LATIN BOOK'

RIVINGTONS  
34 KING STREET, COVENT GARDEN  
LONDON  
1910



BY THE SAME AUTHOR  
**FIRST LATIN BOOK. 2s.**

BEING THE FIRST YEAR OF A TWO YEARS' COURSE  
PREPARATORY TO CAESAR

'The author is to be congratulated upon the thorough and workmanlike manner in which he has treated his subject. There is no doubt that pupils who have worked through this course and that which is to follow it will be able to attack "Caesar" with understanding and facility.'—**Schoolmaster.**

'The plan is a great advance on the old-fashioned method of beginning with "Caesar," a grammar, and a dictionary, and Mr. Williams has worked it out with admirable skill. We envy the pupils who get their introduction to Latin by such a plan. —  
**Secondary School Journal.**

'A capital little book for pupils who are entering upon the study of Latin.'—**Scotsman.**

'To the notice of teachers of Latin by modern methods we commend this volume.'—**Educational News.**

'The lessons are admirably arranged. There is an excellent Latin-English Vocabulary. We commend this volume to the notice of teachers.'—**The Teacher.**

'Mr. Williams has planned his book with great skill, and worked out the plan as skilfully. We cordially recommend it to those in search of an introduction to Latin.'—**Aberdeen Journal.**

'The book will be a favourite one. It is thorough.'—**School Guardian.**

'It is neatly and attractively got up, the matter is well selected and judiciously introduced, and the book can be recommended to any teacher who desires a reliable and interesting introduction to the language.'—**Secondary Education.**

LONDON : RIVINGTONS

## P R E F A C E

THIS book is a continuation of my **First Latin Book**, and is planned throughout on the same lines. Thus it contains sentences for translation from Latin into English, and from English into Latin, Free Composition, Easy Continuous Prose, Recapitulatory Exercises, and passages for reading (*Lectiōnēs*). The latter are taken entirely from Caesar's *Gallic War*, adapted to suit the requirements of pupils, and chosen, as far as possible, to illustrate rules of Syntax given in the previous part of the Lesson. At Lesson 46 a Continuous Narrative is introduced, comprising the matter of Caesar, *B. G.* v. 39-48.

As in my *First Latin Book* great stress is laid on **Oral Work**. The Examiners in Classics under the Scotch Secondary Education Board 1908 report as follows — 'the extent to which systematic oral practice is calculated to impress ordinary forms and constructions on the mind of the learner is not sufficiently appreciated.'<sup>1</sup> And

<sup>1</sup> Report of Secondary Education (Scotland) 1908, p. 16.

again—‘nor should the introduction of written composition involve *ipso facto* the discontinuance of oral.’<sup>2</sup>

This view is supported also by the Classical Association in their report of the Curricula Committee upon a Four Years Latin Course for Secondary Schools, presented at the general meeting of the Association, 11th January 1910. On p. 8 of that report it is suggested that ‘the conversion of English sentences into Latin (during the first year) should be done orally in class before they are reproduced in writing.’ There seems no reason why this plan should not be continued after the First year.

The same report recommends that the Subjunctive Mood and Passive Voice should be mastered in the Second not the First year.

In accordance with suggestions in the Scotch Report<sup>3</sup> Continuous Passages for reading, not meant to be literally translated, but read rapidly in Latin, have been added as an Appendix.

It is recommended that throughout the book all Latin to be translated, whether in the form of

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.* p. 38.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.* pp. 35 and 37.

sentences or *Lectiōnēs*, be read first in Latin. 'One great object of reading Latin is to bring the pupil to the point at which translation may in ever increasing measure be dispensed with.'<sup>1</sup>

The book has purposely been made full. If some Lessons are found to be rather long, it is intended that teachers should make their own selection as to what to omit, *e.g.* those who prefer not to use the continuous prose passages may confine themselves to the detached sentences.

Only constructions that occur with frequency in Caesar's *Gallic War* have been given, and the author may claim that pupils who have worked through this and the First Book ought to be able to attack Caesar with understanding and facility.

The book begins with the Passive Voice and includes Passive and Deponent Verbs (all Moods)<sup>1</sup>—Infinitive and Subjunctive Moods ~~and~~ Active Verbs—Imperative Mood of Passive and Deponent Verbs—Participles—Supines—The Gerund and Gerundive—Frequentative, Inceptive, Impersonal,

<sup>1</sup> Report of Secondary Education (Scotland) 1908, p. 37.

and Defective Verbs—Compound Nouns—Diminutive and Distributive Numeral Adjectives—Indefinite Pronouns—Prepositions—Uses of the Cases—The Ablative Absolute—Time and Place, including the Locative Case—Uses of the Subjunctive in Independent and all kinds of Dependent Clauses—Sequence of Tenses—Indirect Statement, Command, and Question.

In the Latin-English Vocabulary words are in most cases given in their setting. French derivatives in common use have in many cases been added for purposes of comparison. No proper names have been included in it, except such as differ much from the English forms, *e.g.* Belgae, Cantium, Hibernia.

The Grammar has been collected and summarised at the end of the book.

In conclusion, I have to thank the Rev. F. Conway, M.A., of Merchant Taylors' School, E.C., to whom I am indebted for many valuable suggestions and for his great help in the correcting of proofs.

C. A. WILLIAMS.

EASTBOURNE, April 1910.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
PRONUNCIATION, . . . . .	xii
ABBREVIATIONS, . . . . .	xiv
MARKING OF QUANTITIES, . . . . .	x.

## PART I., pp. 1-250.

### LESSONS 1-58.

#### LESSON

1. Passive Voice. Introductory. *Lectiō: Frāter frātrī succurrit,* . . . . . 1
2. Passive Voice. Present Tense (1st and 2nd Conj.). *Lectiō: Rhēnus flūmen,* . . . . . 4
3. Passive Voice. Future and Imperf. Tenses (1st and 2nd Conj.). *Lectiō: Oppidī obsidiō,* 7
4. Passive Voice. Pres. Fut., and Imperf. Tenses (3rd and 4th Conj.). *Lectiō: Caesar per dolum litterās mittit,* . . . . . 11
5. Deponent Verbs. The verb *fīō,* . . . . . 15
6. Deponent Verbs (*continued*). *Lectiō: Rōmānī in itinere oppugnantur,* . . . . . 19
7. The Present Participle. *Lectiō: Rōmānī cum Britannīs proelium committunt,* . . . . . 23
8. The Supines and Future Participle. *Lectiō: Nostri Germānōrum metū adficiuntur,* . . . . . 27
9. The Perfect Participle, . . . . . 33

LESSON	PAGE
10. Recapitulatory, . . . . .	37
11. The Perfect Participle ( <i>continued</i> ). <i>Lectiō</i> :	
<b>Rōmānī in summō periculō versantur,</b> . . . . .	40
12. Frequentative and Inceptive Verbs. <i>Lectiō</i> :	
<b>Britannia.</b> The verb <b>consuescō,</b> . . . . .	45
13. The Ablative Absolute, . . . . .	49
14. The Ablative Absolute ( <i>continued</i> ). <i>Lectiō</i> :	
<b>Caesar cum Britannīs bellum gerit,</b> . . . . .	54
15. Indefinite Pronouns; 'double <b>alius</b> ,' . . . . .	58
16. Indefinite Pronouns ( <i>continued</i> ). The Relative	
<b>quicumque.</b> <i>Lectiō</i> : <b>Gallī aggerem Rō-</b>	
<b>mānum incendunt,</b> . . . . .	61
17. The Gerund, . . . . .	65
18. The Gerundive. <i>Lectiō</i> : <b>Quae ducī agenda</b>	
<b>sunt,</b> . . . . .	70
19. The Gerundive ( <i>continued</i> ). <i>Lectiō</i> : <b>Germānī</b>	
<b>ā Caesare fugantur,</b> . . . . .	74
20. Recapitulatory, . . . . .	79
21. The Infinitive Mood (all Voices). <b>coeptus</b>	
<b>sum,</b> followed by the Passive Infinitive, . . . . .	81
22. Indirect Statement ( <i>ōrātiō obliqua</i> ). <i>Lectiō</i> :	
<b>Caesar bellum contrā Suēvōs parat,</b> . . . . .	88
23. Indirect Statement ( <i>continued</i> ). Predicative	
Dative, . . . . .	93
24. Impersonal Verbs. <i>Lectiō</i> : <b>Gallōrum deī,</b> . . . . .	98
25. Impersonal Use of Verbs. Gerund and Ger-	
undive in Indirect Statement, . . . . .	102
26. Nouns. <i>Lectiō</i> : <b>Caesar in Britanniam pro-</b>	
<b>fisciscitur,</b> . . . . .	107

LESSON	PAGE
27. Adjectives. Distributive Numeral and Diminutive, . . . . .	111
28. Prepositions governing the Acc. Case, idiomatic uses of. <b>hōc(eō) . . . quod. Lectiō: Caesar in Britanniam contendit,</b> . . . . .	116
29. Prepositions governing the Abl. Case, idiomatic uses of. <b>accēdit quod,</b> . . . . .	122
30. Recapitulatory, . . . . .	127
31. The Subjunctive Mood. Introductory, . . . . .	129
32. The Subjunctive Mood (2nd, 3rd, and 4th Conj.). The Perfect Subj. used to express prohibitions, . . . . .	135
33. Subjunctive Mood of some Irregular Verbs. <b>Lectiō: Indutiomari mors,</b> . . . . .	140
34. Primary and Secondary Tenses. Sequence of Tenses. Historic Present. <b>Lectiō: Rōmānī Gergoviam oppugnant,</b> . . . . .	144
35. The Locative Case. Place and Time, . . . . .	149
36. The Subj. in Subordinate Clauses in <b>ōrātiō obliqua. Lectiō: Ambiorix victōriā sublātus Nervīōs sollicitat,</b> . . . . .	154
37. The Subj. in Subordinate Clauses in <b>ōrātiō obliqua (continued),</b> . . . . .	158
38. Indirect Command and Petition. <b>Lectiō: Orgetorix Helvētiīs, ut ē finibus suis exeant, persuādet,</b> . . . . .	162
39. <b>quīn</b> and <b>quōminus,</b> . . . . .	166
40. Recapitulatory, . . . . .	170



LESSON *	PAGE
41. Final Clauses. <i>Lectiō: Rōmānī cum Belgīs</i> <i>confligunt,</i> . . . . .	172
42. Final Clauses ( <i>continued</i> ), . . . . .	177
43. Consecutive Clauses. <i>Lectiō: Prīnipīlus,</i> . . . . .	180
44. Indirect Question. <i>Lectiō: Quōmodo Vene-</i> <i>tōrum nāvēs factae sunt,</i> . . . . .	185
45. Some uses of the Genitive Case. <i>Lectiō: Quī</i> . <i>prīmō irridēt postrēmō maerēbunt,</i> . . . . .	190
46. Causal Clauses. <i>Lectiō: Cicerō in Nerviiis</i> <i>obsidētur,</i> <sup>1</sup> . . . . .	195
47. Causal Clauses ( <i>continued</i> ) <i>Lectiō: Quōmodo</i> <i>sē dēfendit Cicerō,</i> . . . . .	199
48. Temporal Clauses, <i>Lectiō: Colloquium inter</i> <i>Nerviōs et Cicerōnem,</i> . . . . .	203
49. Temporal Clauses ( <i>continued</i> ). <i>Lectiō: Quae</i> <i>ab hostibus parantur,</i> . . . . .	208
50. Recapitulatory, . . . . .	212
51. Conditional Clauses. <i>Lectiō: Quae septimō</i> <i>diē facta sunt,</i> . . . . .	214
52. Conditional Clauses ( <i>continued</i> ). <i>Lectiō:</i> <i>Oppugnātiō gravior fit,</i> . . . . .	219
53. Some uses of the Dative Case, . . . . .	223
54. Concessive Clauses. Verbs of Fearing. <i>Lectiō:</i> <i>Caesar, litterīs commōtus, auxilia undiquē</i> <i>arcessit,</i> . . . . .	228

<sup>1</sup> A continuous narrative begins here, and is continued to the end of the book.

# CONTENTS

xi

LESSON	PAGE
55. Some uses of the Ablative Case. <i>Lectiō:</i> <div style="margin-left: 40px;"><b>Labiēnus, Trēverōs veritus, Cicerōnī succurrere nōn potest,</b></div>	232
56. Some uses of the Ablative Case ( <i>continued</i> ). <div style="margin-left: 40px;"><i>Lectiō:</i> <b>Caesar ad Cicerōnem pervenit:</b>  <b>Nerviī obsidiōnem relinquunt,</b></div>	238
57. The Imperative Mood of Passive and Deponent Verbs. Defective Verbs. <i>Lectiō:</i> <b>Cicerō obsidiōne liberātur: Caesaris grātulātiō,</b>	243
58. Recapitulatory,	248

## PART II

LATIN PASSAGES,	251
GRAMMAR SUMMARISED,	260
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY,	283
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY,	336

## PRONUNCIATION.

THE following hints on Pronunciation are taken by permission of the Committee of the Classical Association from their pamphlet, *The Pronunciation of Latin*. (London: John Murray. 1908. Price 3d.)

### Vowels:

ā (*fātum*), as **a** in *father*.

ă (*dăbit*), as **a** in *aha*.

ē (*poēta*), as **e** in *prey*.

ě (*těnent*), as **e** in *fret*.

ī (*Dīdo*), as **ee** in *feel*.

ĩ (*sĩmĩlis*), as **i** in *fit*.

ō (*hōra*), as **o** in *flown*.

õ (*quõta*), as **o** in *not*.

ū (*tūto*), as **oo** in *shoot*.

ũ (*ũbi*), as **u** in *full*.

**Diphthongs:**

The two vowel sounds composing the diphthong should be rapidly run together.

ae (*portae*) = *a + e*, nearly as **ai** in *Isaiah*.

au (*aurum*) = *a + u*, as **ou** in *hour*.

oe (*poena*) = *o + e*, nearly as **oi** in *boil*.

ui (*huic, cui*) = *u + i*, as Fr. **oui**.

eu (*Europa*) = *e + u*, nearly as **ew** in *new*.

ei (*Pompēi*, vocative of Pompeius) = *e + i*, as **ey** in *grey*.

**Consonants:**

c, g, and t are always hard, even before i.

qu (*qui, quod*), as **qu** in *queen*.

gu (*unguere*), as **gu** in *anguish*.

i and u consonantal.

i (j), e.g. *iacio*, as **y** in *you*.

u (v), e.g. *volo*, practically as **w** in *we*.<sup>1</sup>

Double consonants, e.g. *vac-ca*, are pronounced separately, as English book-keeper.

## ABBREVIATIONS

abl., ablative.	fut., future.	opp., opposed.
abl. absol., ablative absolute.	gen., genitive.	p., page, pp., pages.
acc., accusative.	hist. pres., historic present.	part., participle.
act., active.	i.e., id est (that is).	pass., passive.
adj., adjective.	imper., imperative.	perf., perfect.
adv., adverb.	imperf., imperfect.	pers., person.
aor., aorist.	impers., impersonal.	pl., plural.
cf., confer (compare).	indef., indefinite.	pluperf., pluperfect.
compar., comparative.	indic., indicative.	predic., predicative.
condit., conditional.	infin., infinitive.	pres., present.
conj., conjugation or conjunction.	l., line, ll., lines.	rel., relative.
constr., construction.	Less., Lesson.	sc., scilicet (namely).
dat., dative.	lit., literally.	sent., sentence or sentences.
dep., deponent.	loc., locative.	sing., singular.
e.g., exempli grātiā (for example).	m. or masc., masculine.	sqq., and following.
etc., et cētera.	milit., military, in military affairs.	superl., superlative.
f., or fem., feminine.	n. or neut., neuter.	subj., subjunctive.
fol., followed.	nom., nominative.	superl., superlative.
Fr., French.	n.b., notā bene (note well).	vide, or v., see.
		viz., namely.
		vocab., vocabulary.

## MARKING OF QUANTITIES.

A long vowel is denoted by the sign (—), a short vowel by the sign (˘).

In the following pages:—

(a) vowels long ‘by nature,’ *e.g.* **ācrēs, ēducō, Rōmānī**, are marked.

(b) vowels short ‘by nature,’ *e.g.* **bōnus, incōlā, tēnēt**: vowels short ‘by nature’ but long ‘by position,’ *e.g.* **rēspicio, dūx, impellere**: and vowels long ‘by nature and position,’ *e.g.* **dēstringo, ūllus**, are not marked.

(c) diphthongs, *e.g.* **ae, au, eu, etc.**, and the rare diphthong **-ui**, as in **cui** and **huic**, are not marked.

(d) Some doubtful vowels, are marked, *e.g.* the **i** in the 2nd pers. sing., and 1st and 2nd pers. pl. of the fut. perf. indic. act. and the perf. subj. act., *e.g.* **fuerīs, fuerīmus, fuerītis**.

(e) Where the word **-que**, ‘and,’ is hyphenated to a word, the last vowel of such word, if long ‘by nature,’ has been marked, *e.g.* **ingentēs-que, barbaris-que**, but only in the first few Lessons. Where **que** is joined without a hyphen to such endings, they are left unmarked.

- (f) The compounds of **iaciō**, are peculiar. The **i** before the **c** representing both the consonantal **i** at the beginning of this verb, and also the following **a**, is vocalic, because it makes a separate syllable with the **c**; but it is also sufficiently consonantal to lengthen a short vowel followed by a consonant in front of it. In all such cases the vowel thus lengthened has been marked; *e.g.* **cōnicio**, **dīsicio**, **īnicio**. **ābicio** is an exception. In the supine the **i** is purely consonantal, and the lengthened vowel in front is, therefore, left unmarked, in accordance with rule (b).
- (g) The **e** of the 5th declension has for uniformity been marked long in the gen. and dat. sing., though it was usually short in **rēi**, **fidēi**, **spēi**. There is much uncertainty about the pronunciation of the **ei**, and possibly it was often treated as a diphthong.

## LESSON 1.

### *PASSIVE VOICE—Introductory.*

<b>turr̄is aedificātur</b> , a tower is built.	<b>fossa complētur</b> , the trench is filled.
<b>turrēs aedificantur</b> , towers are built.	<b>fossae complentur</b> , trenches are filled.
<b>tēlum cōnicitur</b> , a weapon is thrown.	<b>oppidum mūnītur</b> , the town is fortified.
<b>tēla cōniciuntur</b> , weapons are thrown.	<b>oppida mūniuntur</b> , towns are fortified.

1. turr̄is ā Rōmānīs aedificātur.
2. turrēs lignēis trabibus aedificantur.
3. fossa sarmentīs complētur.
4. fossa lāta ā mīlitibus dūcitur.
5. tēla in nostrōs ā barbarīs cōniciuntur.
6. oppida mūrīs altīs mūniuntur.
7. urbs ab incolīs fortiter dēfenditur.
8. locus nātūrā atque opere ēgregiē mūnīr̄.

We saw in Lesson 19 of my First Lat. Bk.<sup>1</sup> that 'by' when it precedes a personal agent is translated by **ā** or **ab** followed by the ablative (*abl. of Agent*): cf. sent. 1, 4, 5, 7, above.

• <sup>1</sup> This refers to *First Latin Book*, by C. A. Williams. Rivingtons. 2s.



In all other circumstances the ablative *alone* is used (*abl. of Instrument*).

- e.g. miles ā barbarō occiditur.  
           the soldier is killed by the native.  
 but miles saxō occiditur.  
           the soldier is killed by a stone.

*Vivā Vōce:*

1. ā quibus aedificātur turris? 2. quibus rēbus cōmplētur fossa? 3. in quōs tēla cōniciuntur? 4. quōmodo urbs mūnītur? 5. quālis fossa dūcitur? 6. quid ēgregiē mūnītur? 7. quālibus trabibus aedificantur turrēs?

*In sequentibus quod dē-est suppedītātē<sup>1</sup>:*

1. agrī ab agricol— arant—.
2. agricol— agrī arātr— arantur.
3. aciēs nostr— in fugam nōn dat—.
4. nāv— vent— in portū tenētur.
5. agmen nostr— viār— difficultāt— impedīt—.
6. milit— animī ducis verb— confirm—.

*Latīnē reddite:*

1. The top-of the hill is-held by a garrison.
2. The muscles of the Germans are-strengthened by hunting (*pl.*) from-childhood (*ā parvulīs*).
3. The fleet is-hindered by contrary winds.
4. The natives are-put-to-flight by the weapons of the Romans.
5. Our-men are-kept in camp for-several days (*acc.*) by the storms.
6. Soon all the cavalry (*equitātus, ūs, m.*) of the enemy is-put-to-flight.

<sup>1</sup> 'In the following supply what is wanting.'

7. In-spring the fields are-ploughed by the farmers.

8. The town is-blockaded by outwork, mantlets, (and) towers.

### VOCABULARY.

I put-to-flight, *fugō*. 1 ; *in fugam dō*. 1.

outwork, *agger*, *eris*, m. The 'agger' was a mound erected before the walls of a besieged city. On it were placed the siege-engines, and it was gradually extended towards the walls.

### LECTIŌ.

*Frāter frātrī succurrīt.*

In eō proeliō cum Germānīs commissō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā, *in* hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquītānus, cūius avus in cīvitatē suā regnum obtinuerat, *amicus* ab senātū nostrō *appellātus*.

Forte Pīsōnis frāter ab hostībūs *interclūdītur*. Huic Pīsō auxilium fert, ex-que periculō ēripit. Ipse tamen equō vulnerātō dēicitur, atque sic impeditus ab hostibus circumdatur, multa-que vulnera accipit.

*Tum dēmum* frāter equum incitat, hostibus *sē offert*, atque fortissimē *pugnans* interficitur.

**in**, amongst.

**amicus appellātus**, called friend (said of a foreigner who was in alliance with Rome).

**interclūdō**, I cut-off (*milit.*).

**tum dēmum**, then at last, or not till then.

**sē offert**, offers himself ; *i.e.* rushes at.

**pugnans**, fighting.

## LESSON 2.

*PASSIVE VOICE—Present Tense (First and Second Conj.).*

*1st Conj.*

colloc(a)-or, I am put, posted,  
(*milit.*).

collocā-ris

collocā-tur

collocā-mur

collocā-mini

colloca-ntur

*2nd Conj.*

contine-or, I am kept, de-  
tained, enclosed.

continē-ris

continē-tur

continē-mur

continē-mini

contine-ntur

*Similarly conjugate :*

**confirmor**, I am strengthened.

**terreor**, I am frightened.

**vulneror**, I am wounded.

**dēleor**, I am destroyed.

1. exercitus in hibernis collocā-tur.

2. vicus altissimis montibus continē-tur.

3. feroci Germanorum impetū nōn perturbā-mur.

4. barbarorum cōpiae in insidiis colloca-ntur.

5. nonne vōs, milites, disciplinā atque ūsū belli  
confirmā-mini?

6. milites sub pellibus ā duce diūtius nōn contine-  
ntur.

7. immanē-ne ferae magnitudine terrē-ris?

*Put the verbs in the following sentences into the Plural, and make other necessary changes :*

- 1. ego tēlō vulner-or.
- 2. tū, miles, in statiōne collocā-ris.
- 3. ille ab audācī Gallō vulnerā-tur.
- 4. ea cohors in Alpibus collocā-tur.
- 5. tū ducis cohortātiōne incitā-ris.
- 6. incola in captā urbe continē-tur.

Make sentences orally with the pres. tense of the verb *collocor*, and the words *legiō*, *cohors*, *auxilia*, *impedimenta* (introducing adjectives suitable to each), and the *Personal pronouns*.

*Quod dē-est suppeditāte :*

- 1. Helvētiī undique loc— nātūrā continen—.
- 2. ūn— pars Galliae Garumnā flūm—— continētur.
- 3. nōs in castr— tempestāt—— contin——.
- 4. hostium ordin— facile ā nostr— perturb——.
- 5. fossa —— complēt——.

When a sentence is turned into the Passive from the Active voice, the Object becomes the Subject, and the Subject is put into the ablative (with or without a preposition).

*e.g.* agricolae agrōs arant (*act.*).

becomes agrī ab agricolis arantur (*pass.*)

Turn the five sentences in ‘*Quod dē-est*’ into the Active form.

## LECTIŌ.

*Rhēnus flūmen.*

Rhēnus *oritur* ex *Lēpontiīs*, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per multārum gentium finēs *fertur*. Ubi ōceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs diffluit partēs, et multās ingentēs-que insulās efficit. Hārum pars magna ā feris barbaris-que nātiōibus *incolitur*, ex quibus *sunt* quī piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur. Deinde flūmen multis *capitibus* in ōceanum influit.

**oritur**, rises. .

- **Lēpontiī**, a people near the modern St. Gothard.

**fertur**, is carried, *i.e.* flows.

**incolitur**, is inhabited.

**sunt quī**, there are (some) who.

**capitibus**, mouths. What is the nom. sing.?

*Vivā Vōce:*

1. ex quō populō oritur Rhēnus?
2. quālī cursū fertur?
3. ubi diffluere incipit?
4. quae tum efficit?
5. ā quālibus nātiōibus hae insulae incoluntur?
6. quō cibō hārum insulārum incolae vivunt?

## LESSON 3.

*PASSIVE VOICE—Future and Imperfect Tenses*  
(First and Second Conj.).

## FUTURE TENSES.

circumda- <del>bor</del> , I shall be sur- rounded.	obsidē- <del>bor</del> , I shall be be- sieved.
circumda- <del>beris</del> (bere)	obsidē- <del>beris</del> (bere)
circumda- <del>bitur</del>	obsidē- <del>bitur</del>
circumda- <del>bimur</del>	obsidē- <del>bimur</del>
circumda- <del>bimini</del>	obsidē- <del>bimini</del>
circumda- <del>buntur</del>	obsidē- <del>buntur</del>

## IMPERFECT TENSES.

excitā- <del>bar</del> , I was being roused.	terrē- <del>bar</del> , I was being frightened.
excitā- <del>bāris</del> (bāre)	terrē- <del>bāris</del> (bāre)
excitā- <del>bātur</del>	terrē- <del>bātur</del>
excitā- <del>bāmur</del>	terrē- <del>bāmur</del>
excitā- <del>bāmini</del>	terrē- <del>bāmini</del>
excitā- <del>bantur</del>	terrē- <del>bantur</del>

## LECTIŌ.

*Oppidū obsidiō.*

Gallōrum oppidum ā Rōmānīs iam diū obsidēbātur. Nostrū mūrōs undique circumdederant, neque iam incolis ulla spēs salūtis relinquitur. Agger quoque *in diēs* propius mūrōs agitur. Nihilō minus tamen Galli fortiter resistunt. Mox dux Rōmānus diem oppugnātiōni • dīcet. Militum animi ad pugnandum excitābuntur.

Et iam antē id tempus cōpia magna eōrum quae ad oppugnātiōnem *ūsui* sunt comparābatur, et commeātīs ex agris comportābantur. Interim hostēs nōn terrentur. Frustrā tamen resistent, et mox tōtum oppidum ā nostris expugnābitur. Post victōriam dux, propter longam dēfensiōnem irātus, gravissimō suppliciō eōs adficiet. Nam omnia aedificia vastābuntur, omnia *bona* ā victōribus exportābuntur.

**in diēs**, day by day.

**pugnandum**, i., fighting (gerund, *v. Less. 17*).

**ūsui**, useful.

**bona, ōrum**. n. pl., goods *or* belongings.

### *Latīnē reddite:*

*A. Connected.* The race of the Suēvī is by-far the largest and most warlike of all the German races. They (*hī*) are-said to have a hundred cantons, from which every-year warriors (*armātī, ōrum*) go-out for-the-sake-of fighting. The rest, who remain (*perf.*) at-home, support themselves and the warriors. Thus neither agriculture nor the theory and practice of war is-interrupted.

The Suēvī do not live much on-corn (*abl.*) but chiefly on-milk and cattle, and are much occupied in hunting (*pl.*).

In the coldest places they wear (*say 'have'*) no clothing except skins, owing-to the scantiness of which a large part of (the) body is exposed.

## VOCABULARY.

are said, <i>dicuntur</i> .	chiefly, <i>maximam partem</i> .
fighting, <i>bellandum</i> , <i>ī</i> , (gerund, <i>v. Less. 17</i> ).	to be much occupied in, <i>multum esse in</i> (abl.).
theory and practice, <i>ratio atque</i>	exposed, <i>apertus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
<i>usus</i> .	

## B. Detached.

1. Four cohorts were-being-posted on the left wing.
2. We-shall-be-besieged in a badly (*male*) fortified city.
3. At-night the soldiers will-be-roused from (*ē*) sleep by the sound of the trumpet.
4. Will-you (*sing.*) -be-frightened by the arrival of the enemy? (No.)
5. Corn will-be-carried into the city from the fields.
6. Our-men were-being-wounded in-all-directions by the enemy's weapons.
7. After several days our town will-be-stormed, and we ourselves (shall) surrender (*in deditiōnem venīre. 4.*).
8. Everything (*n. pl. of omnis, e*) will-be-laid-waste by-fire-and-sword (*ignī ferrō-que*).
9. By the advice of Cato (*-ōnis*) Carthage is-destroyed by the Romans.
10. The Helvētīi are-enclosed on-all-sides by natural barriers (*say 'by the nature of the place'*).



*Translate the following orally and insert (where needful) an appropriate subject:*

vastābuntur.	expugnāmur.
vulnerābiminī.	incitābere.
arābitur.	dēlebitur.
confirmābātur.	perturbābantur.
in fugam dabor.	comparābitur.
complēbantur.	obsidētur.

Conjugation of **nōlō**, I do not wish, and **mālō**, I prefer.<sup>1</sup>

Present Indic.	{ nōlō, nōn vīs, nōn vult, nolumus, nōn vultis, nōlunt.
	{ mālō, māvis, māvult, mālumus, māvultis, mālunt.
Future Indic.	nōlēs, nōlet ; mālēs.
Imperfect Indic.	nōlē-bam, etc. ; mālē-bam, etc.
Perfect Indic.	nōlu-ī, etc. ; mālu-ī, etc.
Fut. Perfect Indic.	nōlu-erō, etc. ; mālu-erō, etc.
Pluperfect Indic.	nōlu-eram, etc. ; mālu-eram, etc.
Imperative Mood.	nōli (2nd sing.), nōlite (2nd pl.). <sup>2</sup>
Present Infin.	nolle, malle.
Present Part.	nōlens, ( <i>wanting</i> ).

For Subj. Mood *v.* Less. 33.

<sup>1</sup> For reference.

<sup>2</sup> *mālō* has no Imperative Mood.

## LESSON 4.

*PASSIVE VOICE—Present, Future, and Imperfect Tenses*  
(Third and Fourth Conjugations).

## PRESENT TENSE.

## 3rd Conj.

dūc-ōr, I am led.  
dūc-e-ris(re)  
dūc-i-tur  
dūc-i-mur  
dūc-i-mini  
dūc-u-ntur

## 4th Conj.

inveni-or, I am found.  
inveni-ris(re)  
inveni-tur  
inveni-mur  
inveni-mini  
inveni-u-ntur

## FUTURE TENSE.

mitt-ar, I shall be sent.  
mitt-ē-ris(re)  
mitt-ē-tur  
mitt-ē-mur  
mitt-ē-mini  
mitt-e-ntur

pūni-ar, I shall be punished.  
pūni-ē-ris(re)  
pūni-ē-tur  
pūni-ē-mur  
pūni-ē-mini  
pūni-e-ntur

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

capi-ē-bar, <sup>1</sup> I was being captured	impedi-ē-bar, I was being hindered.
capi-ē-bāris(bāre)	impedi-ē-bāris(bāre)
capi-ē-bātur	impedi-ē-bātur
capi-ē-bāmur	impedi-ē-bāmur
capi-ē-bāmini	impedi-ē-bāmini
capi-ē-bantur	impedi-ē-bantur .

<sup>1</sup> Verbs like *capior* (e.g. *rapior*, *conspicior*, *iacior*, etc.) drop the *i* of the stem before *ē*. Thus the pres. tense of *conspicior* is *conspici-or*, *conspic-e-ris*, *conspici-tur*, *conspici-mur*, *conspici-mini*, *conspici-u-ntur*.

*Conjugate similar tenses of:*

**arcess-or.** 3., I am sent for.      **conscrib-or.** 3., I am enrolled.

**conspici-or.** 3., I am seen.      **audi-or.** 4., I am heard.

1. nulla tēla ā nostrīs frustrā mittuntur.
2. agmen nostrum ā multitudīne cālōnuū impediēbatur.
3. ex hostibus complūrēs capientur.
4. in mediterrāneīs Britannīae regiōnibus plumbum album (sic narrat Caesar) invenitur.
5. omne frūmentum in agrīs succidebatur.
6. vōs, explōrātōrēs, ab hostibus conspiciēminī.
7. auxilia ā Britannīs arcessentur.
8. cōpiaē in ūnum locum cōgēbantur.

*Turn the fut. and imperf. tenses in the above sentences into the pres.*

*Quod dē-est suppeditāte:*

mittunt— (*pres. pass.*) ad Caesar— confestim ab Cicerōne litter—, sed quoniam omn— viae obsideb— (*imperf. pass.*), nuntiū intercipi— (*pres. pass.*). Noctū ex māteriā, quam mūnitiōn— causā compostāv— (*3rd pl. pluperf. act.*), turrēs admodum cxx excitant— (*pres. pass.*) incredibil— celeritāte. Hostēs poster— diē mult— māiores cōpi— cōgunt, castra oppugn—, fossam compl—.

Put the verbs in the following sentences into the Passive form, and make other necessary changes:

1. nostri crēbrās arborēs succīdunt.
2. dux praesidium castris relinquet.
3. Caesar vicōs aedificiaque incendit.
4. barbari saxīs nostrōs petēbant.
5. dux duās legiōnēs in Galliā citeriōre conscribit.
6. Rōmāni corpora scūtīs prōtegēbant.

#### LECTIO.

*Caesar per dolum litterās mittit.*

Dum Cicerō, ūnus ē lēgātis Caesaris, ā Nerviis obsidētur, Caesar litterās ad eum mittere vult. Itaque *cuidam* ex equitibus Gallis magnīs praemiis *persuādet* ut ad Cicerōnem epistolam *dēferat*.

Hanc epistolam Graecis litteris scribit, propterea quod consilia sua ab hostibus *cognoscē* nōnvult. Tum nuntiō ‘sī adire nōn poteris’ inquit ‘epistolam ad trāgulae āmentum *dēligātam* intrā mūnitiōnēs abice!’

Gallus periculum veritus, sī propius *accesserit*, irāgulam procul mittit.

Hac cāsū ad turrīm adhaesit, neque ab nostris *bīduō* animadvertitur. Tertiō autem diē ā *quōdam* milite conspicitur, atque ad Cicerōnem *dēfertur*.

Ille epistolam in conventū militum recitat, omnēsque maximā laetitiā adficiuntur.

**cuidam**, dat. of }  
**quōdam**, abl. of } **quīdam** (v. Less. 15).

**persuādet** . . . **ut dēferat**, persuades to take.

**cognoscī**, to be known (pres. infin. pass. of **cognoscō**).

**dēligātam**, tied (agreeing with **epistulam**).

**accesserit**, what tense and why?

**bīduō**, for two days.

*Vivā Vōce :*

1. quis erat Cicerō?    2. ā quibus obsidēbātur?
3. quid Caesar facere vult?    4. quō dolō epistulam mittit?
5. cūr hanc Graecīs litterīs scribit?    6. quae iussa nuntiō dat?
7. quid trāgulae accidit?    8. quid fēcit miles quī trāgulam conspexit?
9. ubi dux epistulam recitat?    10. quōmodo militēs adficiuntur?

## LESSON 5.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

Deponent verbs are Passive in form, but Active in meaning.

Thus:—

**cohortor.** 1., I encourage.

**proelior.** 1., I fight.

**polliceor.** 2., I promise.

**vereor.** 2., I fear.

**utor.** 3., I use (*abl.*).

**profiscor.** 3., I set-out, start.

**experior.** 4., I try.

**potior.**<sup>1</sup> 4., I get possession of

(*abl. or gen.*).

Deponent verbs are conjugated like the Passive voices of their respective conjugations (*vide* Less. 2, 3, 4) except in the Infinitive mood (*vide* pp. 83, 84).

1. priusquam proelium committit, dux suos cohortatur.
2. legiō undecima ingenti virtute proeliabatur.
3. Aeduī Caesarī frumentum pollicebuntur.
4. num vōs, comitēs, itineris pericula verēminī?
5. mediā circiter nocte ē castris proficiscimur.
6. nostrī hostium impedimentis castris-que potiuntur.
7. milites, eandem bellī fortunam unā experiemur!
8. Germānī importātis iumentis nōn utuntur.

<sup>1</sup> The pres. indic. has 3rd sing. *potitur*, and 1st pl. *potimur*.

*Latīnē reddite :*

*A. Connected.*—L. Fabius, a centurion, and those who had climbed the wall along-with-him, having been killed, (*interfectus, a, um*) were being thrown from the wall. M. Petrōnius, a centurion of the same legion, tries to cut-down the gates, but is overwhelmed by numbers (*multitūdō, inis, f.*). To the soldiers who were following him he cried (*inquit*) ‘Since I cannot save myself along-with-you (*unā vobīs-cum*) I will provide-for the safety of you whom I have led into danger. Do you look-to yourselves.’ At-the-same-time he bursts into the middle of the enemy, kills two of them, and moves the remainder a-little from the gate. To his comrades, who were trying to help him, he says ‘It is useless for you to try (say ‘*in vain you are trying*’) to help me. Go-away, and while you may, (say ‘*while there-is a chance*’) retreat to the legion.’ Thus fighting after-a-little-while (*post paulum*) he fell, and saved his comrades.

## VOCABULARY.

soldier, *manipulāris, is, m.*

I provide-for, *prōspiciō. 3. (dat.).*

I look to myself, *mihī consulō. 3.*

I move, *sum-moveō. 2. -mōvī.*

fighting, *pugnans.*

B. *Detached.*

1. The Germans were encouraging each-other (*inter* . . . *sē*) to battle.
2. In cavalry (*adj.*) skirmishes the Suēvī often leap-down from their horses, and fight (*proelior*. 1.) on-foot (*pl.*).
3. The enemy will send to Caesar the corn which they promised (*imperf.*).
4. We shall start to-morrow about the third watch.
5. Almost all the higher ground\* (*loca*, *n.* *pl.*) was held (*imperf.*) by a multitude of armed-men (*armātī*, *ōrum*, *m.* *pl.*).
6. Soldiers, we will make a sortie, and try (our) last resource ( *auxilium*, *ilī*, *n.*).
7. Caesar gets-possession-of a large number of men and cattle (*pecus*, *oris*, *n.*).
8. Instead-of coins (*sing.*) the ancient Britons used (*imperf.*) either bronze, or iron bars (*tālea*, *ae*, *f.*) weighed to (*ad*) a fixed standard (say 'weight').
9. The Suessiōnēs had (say 'used') the same laws and the same rights (*iūs*, *iūris*, *n.* *sing.*) as (say 'which') the Rēmī.
10. The general sent-forward scouts because he feared (*imperf.*) an ambush.



The verb *fiō*, *I become, am made*, is used as the Passive of *faciō*.

Present Tense.	<i>fiō, fis, fit, fiunt.</i>
Future „	<i>fiam, fiēs, fiet, fiēmus, fiētis, fient.</i>
Imperfect „	<i>fiē-bam, -bās, -bat, -bāmus, -bātis, -bant.</i>
Present Infinitive.	<i>fiē-rī.</i>
Imperative Mood.	<i>fī! (2nd sing.)</i>

- e.g.* Marius septiēs consul fiet.  
*Marius will be made consul seven times.*  
id tum facile fiēbat.  
*this was easily done then.*  
ab hīs consilium fit.  
*a plan is made by them.*  
quis dives fieri nōn vult?  
*who does not wish to become rich?*

also very common in the phrase '**certior fiō**' (passive of *certiorem facere* (*v. First Lat. Bk. Less. 57*).

- e.g.* litteris Labiēni Caesar certior fit.  
*Caesar is informed by Labiēnus' letter.*

## LESSON 6.

*DEPONENT VERBS—Continued.*

Learn the following verbs:

<b>cōnor.</b> 1., I try.	<b>loquor.</b> 3., I speak.
<b>moror.</b> 1., I stop, linger.	<i>col-loquor.</i> 3., I converse
<b>vagor.</b> 1., I wander.	confer (cum).
<b>versor.</b> 1., I take part, busy myself.	<b>patior.</b> 3., I suffer, allow.
<b>videor.</b> 2., I seem.	<b>queror.</b> 3., I complain (of).
<b>gradior.</b> 3., I go.	<b>sequor.</b> 3., I follow.
<i>ag-gredior.</i> 3., I attack.	<i>con-sequor.</i> 3. }
<i>con-gredior.</i> 3. (cum), I contend.	<i>in-sequor.</i> 3. }
<i>ē-gredior.</i> 3., I go out.	<i>per-sequor.</i> 3. { I follow up,
<i>in-gredior.</i> 3., I go in, enter.	<i>prō-sequor.</i> 3. { on.
<i>prō-gredior.</i> 3., I advance.	<i>sub-sequor.</i> 3. }
<i>re-gredior.</i> 3., I retire.	<b>orior.</b> 4., I arise.
<i>trans-gredior.</i> 3., I cross.	<i>ad-orior.</i> 4., I attack.
	<i>co-orior.</i> 4., I arise (of storms, war, etc.).

*N.B.*—*videor* is also used regularly as the Passive of *videō*.

- e.g. *hōc mihi mīrum vidētur.*  
*this seems to me wonderful.*  
*hostium cōpiaē in summō iugō vidēbantur.*  
*the enemy's forces were seen on-the-top-of a ridge.*

## LECTIŌ.

*Rōmānī in itinere oppugnantur.*

Illic Caesar paucōs diēs propter frūmentī inopiam **morātur**,<sup>1</sup> deinde magnīs itineribus in hiberna **profiscitur**. At hostēs eum itinere prohibere **cōnantur**, atque aliquōs, quī lātius frūmentī causā **vagābantur**,<sup>1</sup> subitō ex insidiīs **adoriuntur**. Simul aliā ex parte clāmor fremitus-que **oriēbatur** eōrum quī nostrōs ā sinistrō cornū **aggredi conābantur**.

*Quod* fierī dux nōn **patitur**, sed ipse cum equitatū barbarōs **insequitur**. Hī perterriti fugae sē mandant, et complūrēs ab equitibus nostris interficiuntur.

Post hōc proelium Caesar cum hostium duce **colloquitur**, et magnum obsidum numerum eī imperat.

**aggredi**, pres. infin. of *aggredior*.

**quod**, *lit.* 'which thing'; translate 'this.'

*Vivā Vōce :*

1. quārē Caesar illic morātur ? 2. quō (*adv.*) deinde profiscitur ? 3. unde hōstēs eum prōhibēbant ? 4. quōrum clāmor oritur ? 5. cum quō dux barbarōs insequitur ? 6. utrum nostrī an hostēs in fuga sē convertunt ? 7. quid post proelium dux Rōmānus faciet ? 8. cui obsidēs imperābit ?

<sup>1</sup> Words in black type are Deponent verbs.

*Latīnē reddite:*

1. P. Considius, who was-considered (*imperf.*) very-skilful in-military matters (*what case?*), is sent-forward with the scouts.
2. Amongst the Gauls the common-people (*plebs*, f.) are considered (*sing.*) almost in-the light (*use* 'locus') of slaves.
3. A sudden war breaks-out (*coorior*. 4.) in Gaul.
4. The women and those who owing-to (their) age seemed (*imperf.*) useless for (*ad*) fighting (*say* 'battle') are sent to the marshes for (*causa*) safety.
5. Caesar's allies were promising a large supply of ships.
6. We shall stop for-a-while (*paulisper*) near that town, and ravage (*dēpopulor*. 1.) the territory of the Rēmī.
7. A very-great storm will arise at-night.
8. Some-men take-part in (*in. abl.*) state-matters (*sing.*), others in war (*rēs militāris*).
9. The Britons are compelled to give hostages, and to obey the sway of the Roman people.
10. The soldiers hidden (*abditus*, a, um) in their tents were either complaining-of their fate, or bewailing (*miseror*. 1.) the common danger.
11. At-that spot (*abl.*) the ascent to the enemy's fortifications seemed (*imperf.*) least (*minimē*) steep.
12. I was enjoying (*say* 'using') the hospitality of my friends for-a few days (*acc.*).

*Quod de-est suppedītate:*

1. T. Labiēnus cum legiōnibus trib— hostēs subse-  
quēb—.
2. nostrī magnoper— perturbāb— (*fut.*).
3. quartā vigil— nōs ē castrīs ēgrediē— (*fut.*).
4. dux suōs long— orātiōn— cohortāb— (*imperf.*).
5. id fie— nōn potest.
6. principēs Britanniae inter — colloqu— (*pres.*).
7. discessus fug— similis vidēbāt—.
8. nāvēs paul— facit lātiōrēs quam quibus (*those*  
• *which*) in nostr— mar— ūtim— (*pres.*).
9. Rōmānī saepe in pericul— versā— (*imperf.*).
10. fūmī incendi— proc— vidēbantur.

**discessus**, ūs, m., departure.

**fūmus**, ī, m., smoke.

**incendium**, dī, n., fire

## LESSON 7.

*THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.*

The Present Participle of verbs is formed by adding **-ns** to the Verb stem, and corresponds to the English participle in **-ing**. Thus:—

## Active verbs

pugnā-**ns**. 1., fighting.iacē-**ns**. 2., lying.audi-e-**ns**. 4., hearing.pete-**ns**. 3., seeking.cupi-e-**ns**. 3., desiring.

## Deponent verbs

arbitrā-**ns**. 1., thinking.tuō-**ns**. 2., watching.experi-e-**ns**. 4., trying.pati-e-**ns**. 3., allowing, suffering.proficisce-**ns**. 3., setting-out.

*Note*:—(1) In verbs of the 4th conj. and in those of the 3rd conj. ending in **-iō** (capiō, cupiō, iaciō,<sup>1</sup> etc.), **-e** is added to the Verb Stem before adding the termination **-ns**.

(2) Deponent verbs have present participles, but

(3) There is no present participle passive.

(4) The verb *sum* has no present participle.

<sup>1</sup> Often called 'Mixed' verbs.

Present Participles are 'Adjectives of one Termination' (v. First Lat. Bk., Less. 47).

*cf.* the following examples:—

#### SINGULAR.

- Nom. fortissimē **pugnans** occiditur.  
 Acc. equitātum **persequentem** vīdi.  
 Gen. **fugientis** exercitūs clāmōrēs.  
 Dat. comitī **labōranti** succurrit.  
 Abl. **despērante** exercitū (the army being in despair;  
     v. Less. 13).

#### PLURAL.

- Nom. hōc **flentēs** petiērunt.  
 Acc. dux hostēs transire **cōnantēs** prohibuit.  
 Gen. multitudinem **fugientium** conspeximus.  
 Dat. dux **cupientibus** signum dat.  
 Abl. **insequentibus** nostrīs (as our men were following;  
     v. Less. 13).

#### *Meaning of the Present Participle.*

The present participle denotes an action of the same time as that of the Principal verb.

*e.g.* Cotta cohortēs adhortans vulnerātur.

*Cotta is wounded in the act of exhorting the cohorts.*

barbarī nostrōs ē nāvī ēgredientēs conspexērunt.

*The natives caught-sight-of our-men in the act of disembarking.*

*Note:*—Many present participles are used as adjectives:—

e.g. **absens**, absent.      **potens**, powerful.

**praesens**, present.    **imprūdens** (=imprōvidens), not expecting.

Thus:—**sē absente**, in his absence.

**sē praesente**, in his presence.

**hostibus imprudentibus**, the enemy not expecting (it). *cf.* Less. 13.

### LECTIŌ.

*Rōmānī cum Britannīs proeliū committunt.*

Pugnātum est ab utrisque ācriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa *subsequi* poterant, magnopere perturbābantur. Hostēs vērō omnia vada cognōvērunt, et *ubi* ex litore singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs *conspexerunt* impeditōs *adoriēbantur*. Quō *vīsō* Caesar scaphās longārum nāvium militibus *complēri* iussit, atque subsidia *eīs* submittēbat, quōs labōrantēs conspexerat. Nostri, *simul* in ārido constitērunt, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt.

**subsequi**, pres. infin. of subsequor.

**ubi conspexerant . . . adoriēbantur**, whenever they saw . . . they attacked.

**quō vīsō**, seeing which (*lit.* 'which (thing)•having been seen,' *v.* Less. 13).

**complēri**, pres. infin. pass. of complēō, 'to be filled.'

**eīs**, antecedent of quōs, 'to those whom.'

**simul**, as soon as.



*Latīnē reddite :*

1. All *weeping*<sup>1</sup> fling themselves at Caesar's feet (*say* 'to Caesar at (ad) his feet.')
2. Caesar *departing* for (*in. acc.*) Britain had left the Morini pacified (*pācātus, a, um*).
3. The enemy were trying to surround us as we were *fighting*.
4. They were standing-on (*in-stō. 1.*) their *prostrate* (*say* 'lying') comrades (*dat.*).
5. The reserves (*auxiliaris, is, m.*) lent (*præb-eō. 2. -uī*) an appearance of *fighting*-(men).
6. The enemy were hurling weapons at our men as they advanced (*veniō. 4.*)
7. When they stoutly resisted (*say* 'to them stoutly resisting') Caesar brought up (*agō. 3., ēgī*) mantlets and towers.
8. This method of fight(ing) brought (*in-ferō, -ferre, -tulī*) the same danger to *pursuers* (*insequens, ntis*) and *pursued* (*cēdens, ntis*).

<sup>1</sup> Words in *italics* are to be put in the present participle.

## LESSON 8.

## THE SUPINES AND FUTURE PARTICIPLE.

## THE SUPINES.

The Supine is in form a noun of the 4th Declension, found only in the accusative and ablative (or dative) case singular.

Thus :

postulā-tum, to demand.	dic-tū, for or in saying.
cohortā-tum, to exhort.	fac-tū, for or in doing.
ius-sum, to order.	vī-sū, for or in seeing.

*Supine in -um.*

The Supine in **-um** is used after verbs of Motion or verbs implying Motion, to express *Purpose*.

e.g. Aeduī lēgātōs mittunt **rogātum** auxilium.  
*the Aeduī send ambassadors to ask-for assistance.*

principēs Caesarem **grātulātum** vēnērunt.  
*the chiefs came to congratulate Caesar.*

*Supine in -ū.*

The Supine in **-ū** is used with *adjectives* and is confined to a few phrases:—

e.g. **perfacile, optimum factū**, very-easy, best to do, (*in the doing*).  
**mirābile dictū**, wonderful to relate (*in the relating*).

With few exceptions, all Active and Dependent verbs have supines, and from the supines are formed :—

(a) the Future Participle (act. and dep.), *v.* below.

(b) the Future Infinitive (act., pass., and dep.),  
*v.* Less. 21.

(c) the Perfect Participle (pass. and dep.),  
*v.* Less. 9, 11.

*N.B.*—Latin has no Future Participle Passive (*v.* Less. 18) or Perfect Participle Active (*v.* Less. 9).

The following tables show various formations of the supine :—

*A. Active verbs.*

Verb.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Tense.	Supine.
port-ō, I carry. 1.	portā-re	portā-v-ī	portā-tum
iuv-ō, I help. 1.	iuvā-re	iūv-ī	iū-tum
mane-ō, I remain. 2.	manē-re	man-s-ī	man-sum
move-ō, I move. 2.	movē-re	mōv-ī	mō-tum
tend-ō, I stretch. 3.	tende-re	tetend-ī	ten-tum <i>or</i> ten-sum
rapi-ō, I seize. 3.	rape-re	rap-u-ī	rap-tum
mūni-ō, I fortify. 4.	mūnī-re	mūnī-v-ī	mūnī-tum
inveni-ō, I find. 4.	invenī-re	invēn-ī	inven-tum
sentī-ō, I feel. 4.	sentī-re	sens-ī	sen-sum

*B. Dependent verbs.*

Verb.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Tense.	Supine.
vast-or, I devastate. 1.	vastā-rī	vastātus sum ( <i>I have devastated</i> )	vastā-tum
vere-or, I fear. 2.	verē-rī	veritus sum ( <i>I have feared</i> )	veri-tum
loqu-or, • I speak. 3.	loqu-ī	locūtus sum ( <i>I have spoken</i> )	locū-tum
pati-or, I suffer. 3.	pat-ī	passus sum <i>I have suffered</i>	pas-sum
adori-or, I attack. 4.	adorī-rī	adortus sum ( <i>I have attacked</i> )	ador-tum

The supines in **-um** of all verbs are given in the Vocabularies after the perfect tense.

## THE FUTURE PARTICIPLE

can be formed from the supine by changing the **-um** into **-ūrus, a, um, etc.**

The Meaning of the future participle can be seen from the following examples:—

frumentum quod hostēs **portātūrī** erant.

*the corn which the enemy were about to (intended to) carry.*

loca ubi dux bellum **gestūrus** erat.

*the places where the general was about to wage war.*

legiō quae **ventūra** est.

*the legion which is on its way (about to come).*

*Anglicē reddite:*

1. sī Rōmānī Helvētiōs superāverint, Aeduīs liber-  
tātem ēreptūrī (*ēripio*. 3.) sunt.
2. Sabīnus interpretem ad Ambiorigem mittit inter-  
rogātum.
3. Divitiacus 'ad senātum' inquit 'vēnī auxilium  
postulātum.'
4. Rōmānī, Germānōrum metū permōtī, signa lātūrī  
(*fero*. 3.) nōn sunt.
5. hostēs magnā manū castra oppugnātum vēnerant.
6. dē quartā vigiliā castra dux mōtūrus est.
7. tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum  
castra oppugnātum mīsīt.
8. barbarī in insidiīs latēbunt nostrōs impeditōs  
oppugnātūrī.
9. ea rēs nōn modo vīsū foeda (*shocking*) sed etiam  
audītū erat.
10. dux quinque cohortēs frūmentātum in proximās  
segetēs mīsīt.

### LECTIŌ.

*Nostrī Germānōrum metū adficiunt.*

Dum paucos diēs Caesar ad *Vesontiōnem* rēi frūmen-  
tariae causā morātur, summus subitō timor omnem  
exercitum occupābat, propterea quod Germānī ingenti

magnitūdine, incredibīlī virtūte esse ā Gallis mercātōribus-que dicēbantur. Omnium vērō mentes animī-que magnopere perturbābantur.

Hic timor primum ā tribūnīs militum et praefectīs reliquīs-que, quī nōn magnum in rē militārī ūsum habēbant, *ortus est*.

Hī neque *vultum fingere* neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant. Abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur, aut cum familiāribus suis cōmūne pericūlum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātīm etiā eī, quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, perturbābantur.

**Vesontio**, ōnis, m. the modern Besançon.

**ūsus**, ūs, m. experience.

**ortus est**, 3rd sing. perf. tense of *orior*. Its subject is *timor*.

**vultum fingere**, to compose their countenances.

Explain the ablatives *ingentī magnitūdine*, *incredibīlī virtūte*. Can you give other instances?

*Vivā Vōce* :

1. cūius causā Caesar ad Vesontionem morātur
2. quō tūm Rōmānī occupantur? 3. ā quibus hic timor ortus est?
4. quōmodo Rōmānī timōrem significābant?
5. ubi sēsē abdēbant?
6. quid querēbantur?
7. quid miserābantur?
8. quae obsignābantur?

*Latīnē dīcite:*

1. We are about-to-come.
2. A storm is about-to-arise.
3. I have come to-find (*supine*) my friend.
4. Were you (*sing.*) not about-to-speak?
5. She intends-to-warn (*fut. part.*) us.
6. Hope in (*say 'of'*) the army (that is) about-to-set-out.
7. We shall come to-attack (*supine*) the enemy.
8. Fear is about-to-seize the soldiers.
9. Come and-help (*say 'to help'*) me!
10. The soldiers are about-to-fortify the camp.
11. The dangers which we are about-to-undergo (*sub-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum*).
12. The eagerness (*alacritās, ātis, f.*) of soldiers about-to-fight.
13. The army is about-to-storm the town.
14. The defeat that the army is about-to-receive.
15. The words, that I am about-to-speak (*loquor. 3.*), are few.

In sent. 14 and 15 'that' is the relative pronoun.

## LESSON 9.

## THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

We saw in the last Lesson that Perfect Participles are formed from the Supine Stem of verbs.

The formation consists in changing the *-um* of the supine into **-us, a, um**, *etc.*

Thus :

**in-ductus** }  
**ad-ductus** } (having been) influenced, moved.

**com-mōtus** }  
**per-mōtus** } (having been) aroused, excited.

*N.B.*—Only Passive and Deponent verbs have Perfect Participles.

Perfect Participles Deponent have, as a rule, an Active meaning (*v.* Lessons 5 and 6), but some few are used Passively, *e.g.* **oblītus**, forgetting *or* forgot ; **merītus**, deserving *or* deserved.

Thus :

**aggressus** (*aggredior*), having attacked.

**locūtus** (*loquor*), having spoken.

**cohortātus** (*cohortor*), having encouraged.

**nactus** (*nanciscor*), having met with, obtained.



The difference in use and meaning between the perf. part. pass. and the perf. part. dep. is shown by the following examples:

*Passive:*

Helvētīi, militum concursū **repulsī**, sē recēpērunt.

*The Helvētīi, having been repulsed (pass.) by the soldiers' onset, retreated.*

*Deponent:*

T. Labiēnus, hostium castrīs **potitus**, subsidium mīsit.

*T. Labiēnus, having got-possession-of (act.) the enemy's camp, sent reinforcements.*

Why cannot 'Having defeated the enemy, Caesar broke down the bridge,' be translated

Caesar, hostes **victus**, pontem rescidit?

We shall learn later on how to translate such a phrase.

1. Helvētīi, hīs rēbus **adductī**<sup>1</sup> et auctōritāte Orgetorigis **permōtī**, bellum parāre constituērunt.
2. regnī cupiditāte **inductus** coniūratiōnem fēcit.
3. frūmentī commeātūs-que inopiā **permōtus** in prōvinciam contendit.
4. hostēs, nostrōs **disiectōs** *adortī*, proelium renovārunt (= renovāvērunt).
5. hīs litteris **commōtus** Caesar duās legiōnes conscripsit.

<sup>1</sup> For the remainder of this Lesson perfect participles passive are printed in black type, perfect participles deponent in italics.

6. Helvētiī suppliciter *locūtī* flentēs pācem petunt.
7. eōs **impeditōs** et inopinantēs *aggressus* magnam  
• . partem eōrum concidit.
8. dux suis, novitāte pugnae **perturbātis** (*what case?*),  
tempore opportūnissimō auxilium tulit.
9. Cacsar, idōneam tempestātem *nactus*, tertiā ferē  
vigiliā solvit.
10. Germānī, supplicia cruciātusque Gallōrum *veritī*,  
apud Caesarem remanēre māluērunt (*preferred*).

*Latīnē reddite :*

The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions had taken-up-a-position on the left wing. They quickly drove towards (*in. acc.*) the river from the higher ground the Atrebatēs (who were) weakened (*exanim-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum*) by-running and weariness and exhausted (*con-ficiō. 3. -fēcī, -fectum*) by wounds. Having followed them up (as they were) trying (*pres. part.*) to cross, they killed a great number of them thus distressed (*imped-iō. 4. -īvī, -ītum*).

They-themselves did not hesitate to cross the river, and having advanced to (some) uneven ground put-to-flight the enemy (who were) again resisting (*pres. part.*).

VOCABULARY.

I follow-up, *in-sequor. 3. -secūtus.*

I advance, *prō-gredior. 3. -gressus.*

*Quod dē-est suppeditāte :*

1. hostēs diūturnitā— pugnae **dēfatīgāt**— proeliō  
excēdeb—.
2. lēgātus fidīs ūsus duc— ad oppidum pervēn—.
3. hostēs hōc proel— **sublātī** nostrōs laces—  
coepēr—.
4. nostrī tamen tot incommodīs **conflictāt**— resistē-  
bant.
5. Rōmānī, paulisper apud oppid— *morāt*—, agros-  
que hostium *dēpopulā*—, castra posu—.
6. quibus rēb— Caesar vehementer **commō**—  
mātūr— constituit.
7. Caesar dē terti— vigili— ē castr— *profectus* ad  
flūmen —.
8. dux Britannus dēfectiō— cīvitātis **permō**— lēgātōs  
ad Caes— mittit.
9. dux suōs nōn long— ōrātiō— *cohortātus* pugnae  
signum —.
10. tum dēm— Liscus, ōrāti— Caesaris **adduc**—,  
loquitur.

# LESSON 10.

## RECAPITULATORY.

1. *Decline in Sing. and Pl. the phrase vir pugnans.*

2. *Correct mistakes in, and then translate :*

signifer vulnerātī.	castra circumdatī.
urbs mūnītum.	barbarī nostrōs aggressae.
vōcēs audītā.	mīlītēs vulneribus confectus.

3. *Give the Gen. Sing., Abl. Pl., and Meaning of fossa, sarmentum, urbs, portus, agger, incola, cohors, vicus, frāter, caput, aestās, supplicium.*

4. *How do Deponent differ from other verbs? What participle have they which Active verbs lack? How is this an advantage?*

5. *Give the other degrees of comparison of lātus, fortissimē, facile, altissimus, male, māior, propius.*

6. *Make up two sentences each containing an abl. of Agent and an abl. of Instrument; and one sentence containing an abl. of Quality.*

7. *Conjugate in full the pres. pass. of iaciō; the fut. of videor, prōgredior, fiō; and the imperf. pass. of instruō, capiō.*

8. *Latīnē dīcite:*

wonderful to-relate.

the general intends-to-attack the town to-morrow.

they follow-up (*consector*. 1.) the retreating cavalry.

he complies (*veniam dare*. 1.) with their request,  
(say 'to them asking' (*petō*. 3).

with-swords drawn (*perf. part. pass. of dē-stringō*. 3.  
-*strinxī*, -*strictum*).

with-eyes strained (*perf. part. pass. of in-tendō*. 3.  
-*tendī*, -*tentum*).

with-strength renewed (*perf. part. pass. of redintegrō*.  
1. -*āvī*, -*ātum*).

9. Make up a sentence in which *videor* is used as the passive of *videō*, and another in which it is a Deponent verb.

10. *Anglicē dīcite:*

*fiēbam*.

*proficisciminī*.

*dēfendēmus*.

*locūta*.

*interficiētur*.

*dēfendēmur*.

*adortum* (*supine*). *prohibeor*.

*terrēris-ne?*

*secūtūrī sumus*.

*commōtus*.

*ratiō atque ūsus*

*lacrimans*.

*virī despērantis*.

*belī,*

*convocābūntur*.

*tempestās co-*

*conscribēntur*.

*oriēbātur*.

*multum in vñātiōnibus esse*.

*comitibus labōrantibus succurrēmus*.

11. *Latīnē reddite:*

1. Sabīnus, having-been-ordered to throw-away his arms, does what-is-ordered (*imperātum*, n.).
2. Meanwhile they discuss-terms (*dē condiciōnibus inter sē agere*. 3.).
3. A long speech is designedly begun (*instituō*. 3.) by  
• Ambiorix (-*igis*).
4. Sabīnus, having been gradually surrounded, is killed.
5. Then L. Cotta fighting bravely is killed with most  
(*maxima pars, rtis*) of the soldiers. •
6. The remainder retreat to the camp.
7. Of them (*say 'whom'*) the standard-bearer, having-been-surrounded by a multitude of enemies, throws the standard (*aquila*, *ae*, f.) within the stockade, (and) himself is killed fighting bravely (*superl.*) in-front-of the camp.
8. A few having-escaped (*perf. part. of lābor*. 3. *lapsus*) from the battle reach (their) winter-quarters, and inform T. Labiēnus, the brigadier, of what-has-happened (*rēs gestae*, f. pl.).

## LESSON 11.

*THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE—(Continued).**Perfect Tenses of Verbs (Passive and Deponent).*

The Perfect Participle is used with tenses of the verb *sum* to form the perfect, future perfect, and pluperfect tenses of Passive and Deponent verbs.

Thus the perf. tense of **vulneror** (I am wounded) is as follows :—

<b>vulnerātus, a, (um)</b>	{	<b>sum</b> , I have been, <i>or</i> I was	}	wounded.
		<b>es</b> , thou hast been, <i>or</i> thou		
		wast		
		<b>est</b> , he, she, (it) has been, <i>or</i>		
		was		
<b>vulnerātī, ae, (a)</b>	{	<b>sumus</b> , we have been, <i>or</i> were	}	
		<b>estis</b> , you have been, <i>or</i> were		
		<b>sunt</b> , they have been, <i>or</i> were		

*Form perfect tenses with the following words, and repeat orally with the meaning of each person :—*

**visus, a, um**, seen.

**interfectus, a, um**, killed.

**iussus, ō, um**, ordered.

**auditus, a, um**, heard.

**locūtus, a, um**, spoken

**ēgressus, a, um**, gone out

(dep.).

(dep.).

**factus, a, um**, made (perf. part. of *fiō* v. Less. 5).

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

<b>missus, a, (um)</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō, I shall have been} \\ \text{eris, thou wilt have been} \\ \text{erit, he, she, (it) will have been} \end{array} \right\} \text{sent.}$
<b>missi, ae, (a)</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus, we shall have been} \\ \text{eritis, you will have been} \\ \text{erunt, they will have been} \end{array} \right.$

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<b>fugātus, a, (um)</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eram, I had been} \\ \text{erās, thou hadst been} \\ \text{erat, he, she, (it) had been} \end{array} \right\} \text{put to flight.}$
<b>fugāti, ae, (a)</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erāmus, we had been} \\ \text{erātis, you had been} \\ \text{erant, they had been} \end{array} \right.$

1. hostēs ab nostris vīsī sunt (*videō*).
2. litterae ā duce missae erant (*mittō*).
3. lēgātus oppidum mūnīre iussus erat (*iubeō*).
4. noctū ex nōbīs plērīque vulnerātī erimus.
5. urbs obsessa est (*obsideō*).
6. castra iam mūnīta erant.
7. ancorae dē nāvibus iactae sunt (*iaciō*).
8. num vōs, militēs, hostium clāmōribus territī erātis (*terreo*)?
9. **barbārōrum** cōpiae iam fugātae erunt.
10. agmen iūmentīs impeditum est (*impedio*).
11. castra sub colle posita erant (*pōnō*).
12. tēla ē locō superiōre in nostrōs coniecta sunt (*cōnicio*).



## LECTIÖ.

*Römānī in summō periculō versantur.*

Iamque amplius hōris sex continenter *pugnābātur*, ac nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla nostris dēficiēbant, atque hostēs ācrius instābant, *rēs-que erat iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum*, cum P. Sextius Baculus, quem *Nervicō proeliō* compluribus confectum vulnerebus *diximus*, et item C. Volusēnus, vir et consili magnū et virtūtis ad ducem accurrunt atque ūnam spem salutis in ēruptione *consistere dēmonstrant*. Itaque centuriōnēs celeriter convocātī *militēs* hīs verbis certiorēs facere iussī sunt—‘paulisper intermittite proelium, ac *tantummodo* tēla missa excipite, vosque ex labōre reficite, post datō signō ex castris ērumpite, atque omnem spem salutis in virtute pōnite!’

**pugnābātur**, the battle had lasted, *lit.* ‘it was being fought’ (*v.* Less. 25).

**rēs erat ad extrēmum . . . cāsum**, matters had reached a crisis, *lit.* ‘the matter had been brought to the last emergency.’

**Nervicum proelium**, the battle with the Nervii.\*

**diximus**, we have mentioned (*dicō*. 3. *dixī*, *dictum*).

**consistere dēmonstrant**, show to consist (*v.* p. 88).

**militēs**, acc. case.

**tantummodo**, merely.

*Perfect Participle and Verb = Two Verbs.*

The perf. part. is often used with a verb where in English we use **two verbs**.

This is because Latin prefers Subordinate (or Dependent) sentences to Co-ordinate (or Principal) sentences, and has generally only one Principal verb in a sentence.

Thus 'he took and burnt the city' is expressed in Latin—

**urbem captam incendit**

*i.e.* 'he burnt the captured city, *or* the city having-been-captured.'

Similarly :—

nostrī hostēs **perterritōs** in fugam **cōniciunt**.

*our men terrify the enemy and put them to flight.*  
(*lit.* 'put to flight the terrified enemy.')

postquam Belgārum cōpiās **coactās** ad sē **venīre**<sup>1</sup>  
vīdit.<sup>1</sup>

*when he saw the forces of the Belgae collected and coming to him.*  
(*lit.* 'the forces of the Belgae having-been-collected coming.')

hostēs cōpiās ex castrīs **ēductās** **instruxerant**.

*the enemy had led-out their forces from camp and drawn them up.*  
(*lit.* 'had drawn up their forces having-been-led-out.')

<sup>1</sup> *lit.* 'saw to come': v. p. 88.

*Anglicē transferte :*

1. quī primī flūmen transierant ab equitibꝯ **circumdatī interficiuntur.**
2. dux ipse equō dēiectus fortissimē, quoad potuit, **restitit.**
3. hostēs Commium ē nāvī **ēgressum comprehēdērunt.**
4. Gallī interdum uxōrēs ignī tormentis-que **excruciātās interficiēbant.**
5. hostēs in fugam **coniectī silvās petiērunt.**
- 6. Britannōrum manūs, multitudīne nāvium **perterritae, ā litore discesserant.**
7. ea legiō ūna ex tribus erat, quās proximē **conscriptās Caesar ex Italiā trāduxerat.**
8. nuntii ad Caesarem mittēbantur, quōrum pars **dēprehensa** in conspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciatū **necābātur.**

## LESSON 12.

*FREQUENTATIVE AND INCEPTIVE VERBS.*

Frequentative verbs are those which express repeated or intenser action. Thus from

**veniō.** 4., I come, is formed **ventit-ō.** 1. **-āvi**, I come often, keep coming.

**terreō.** 2., I frighten, is formed **territ-ō.** 1. **-āvi**, I keep frightening.

**occulō.** 3., I cover, is formed **occult-ō.** 1. **-āvi**, I hide, secrete.

**concurrō.** 3., I run-together, is formed **conkurs-ō.** 1. **-āvi**, I rush about, hither and thither.

All Frequentative verbs are of the First Conj.

Inceptive (or Inchoative) verbs are those which express the beginning of an action. Thus:

**mātūrō.** 1., I ripen; **mātūrescō.** 3., I begin to ripen.

**inveterō.** I make old; **inveterascō.** 3., I grow old, become established.

Inceptive verbs end in **-sco**; are of the Third Conj.; and Intransitive.

1. Dumnorix saepe clāmitans interficitur.

2. omnēs ferē Galliae cīvitātēs dē bellō consultābant.

3. Titūrius trepidāre et concursāre incipit.

4. mercatōrēs ad Suēvōs multum ventitāre solēbant.
5. Cassivellaunus locīs impeditis sēsē occultābat.
6. iam in agrīs frūmentum mātūrescere incipiēbat.
7. tempore inveterascunt consuetūdines.
8. vīnō relanguescunt animī.
9. Belgae exercitum Rōmānum in Galliā inveterascere nōluērunt.
10. noctū hostēs in silvīs dēlituerant (*dēlitescō*, 3).

*Vivā Vōce :*

1. quid faciens Dumnorix occiditur? 2. quā parte annī mātūrescunt frūmenta? 3. ubi Cassivellaunus sēsē occultat? 4. quī ad Suēvōs ventitābant? 5. quōmodo inveterascunt mōrēs? 6. nonne vīnō relanguescit animus? 7. ubi hostēs dēlitescunt? 8. nonne fābulae liberōrum mentēs saepe territānt?

*Quod dē-est suppedītāte :*

1. vīnō remolles—— hominēs.
2. aestāt— frūmenta mātūresc—— sol— (*pres.*).
3. milites aegrī in castris relict—— mox convalesc—— (*fut.*).
4. pars hominum in castr—— ventitā——, pars in agrīs remanēbat.
5. Ambiorigis cōpi—— in insidiis sēsē occultāv—— (*plūperf.*).
6. Caesar, postquam ad sē princip—— civitātis ēvocāvit, aliōs territ—— (*pres.*), aliōs cohortāt—— (*pres.*).

## LECTIŌ.

*Britannia.*

•Cæsar quintō suō dē bellō Gallicō librō dē Britannia sic scribit—‘insula nātūrā triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad (*in*) Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc pertinet circiter milia passuum quingenta. Alterum (latus) vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia dimidiō minor, *ut existimātur*, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō *transmissus* atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. *In hōc mediō cursū* est insula quae appellātur *Mona*. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut *fert* Britannōrum opīniō, septingentōrum milium. Tertium (latus) est contrā septentrionēs, cui partī nulla est obiecta terra; sed eius lateris angulus maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc milia passuum octingenta in longitūdinem esse existimātur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitū viciēs centum milium passuum.

**ut existimātur**, as it is thought.

**transmissus**, ūs, m., a crossing; translate ‘the crossing (from Ireland to Britain) is the same distance as that from Gaul to Britain.’

**in hōc mediō cursū**, in the middle of this voyage.

**Mona**, the Isle of Man.

**fert**, asserts.

Explain the abl. *dimidiō*. How far is Caesar’s geography in the above account accurate?

*The verb consuescō.*

**consuescō**, *I accustom myself*, is principally used in the Perfect tenses with a Present meaning.

Thus **consuēvī**, 'I have accustomed myself, i.e. 'I am accustomed' (cf. *cognōvī*, perf. of *cognoscō*).

In the tenses of the Perfect Stem a syncopated (*short*) form is used :

consuestī    *for* consuēvistī.

consuestis    „    consuēvistis.

consuērunt    „    consuēvērunt.

consuērō    „    consuēverō.

consuēram    „    consuēveram.

*perf. infin.* consuesse    „    consuēvisse.

*consuescō* (like *soleō*) takes the Inf. mood.

1. victōrēs victīs stipendium impōnere consuērunt.
2. lūna plēna aestūs maximōs efficere consuēvit.
3. Britannī essedāriīs atque equitātū in proeliīs ūti consuērunt.
4. dux nāvēs paulō facit humiliōres quam quibus  
    (*those which*) ūti consuēvimus.
5. Cōrus ventus in Morinōrum finibus magnam  
    partem omnis temporis flāre consuēvit.
6. Gallī liberōs suōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt (*adolescō*.  
    3.), ad sē palam adīre nōn patiuntur.

## LESSON 13.

## THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

The construction known as the 'Ablative Absolute' is one of the commonest in Latin.

A phrase is said to be 'absolute' when it is not affected by the construction of the remainder of its sentence, or when the sentence is complete without it.

Most languages have an 'absolute' case.

In *English* the nominative is the 'absolute' case.

*e.g. He being present*, I felt safe.

*The weather being fine*, we started early.

In *French*, too, the nominative<sup>1</sup> is the 'absolute' case.

*e.g. Le général étant arrivé*, la revue commença.

*the general having arrived*, the review began.

In *Greek* the genitive is the 'absolute' case.

In Latin the ablative is the 'absolute' case, and the abl. absol. construction has many shades of meaning, expressive of **time**, **cause**, **manner**, **accompaniment**, *etc.*, which will best be understood from the examples , overleaf.

<sup>1</sup> Or perhaps the accusative.



**Temporal (Time)**

diē constitūtā.

*when a day had been appointed (on the appointed day).*

omnibus rēbus comparātis.

*when everything had been made ready (everything having been made ready).*

quiētā Galliā.

*when Gaul was quiet (Gaul being quiet).*

M. Messallā et M. Pīsōne consulibus.

*when Marcus Messalla and Marcus Pīsō were consuls (in the consulship of M. Messalla, etc.).*

N.B.—There is no verb in the last two examples. Why not? v. p. 23, note (4).

**Causal (Cause, Reason):**

tot dētrimentis acceptis.

*because so many losses had been experienced.*

sinistrā impeditā.

*as their left hands were encumbered.*

languidiōribus nostris.

*as our-men were more weary.*

**Manner:**

dēstrictis ensibus, *with drawn swords.*

equō admissō, *at full-speed (with horse let-go).*

iactis ancoris, *lying at anchor (with anchors dropped).*

**Accompaniment :**

ſē praesente, *in his presence.*

eō dēprecātore, *with him as intercessor.*

petentibus Rēmīs, *at the request of the Rēmī (the Rēmī requesting).*

**Conditional (if) :**

datā facultate, *if an opportunity were given.*

interceptā epistolā, *if the letter were intercepted.*

Sēquanīs invitīs, *if the Sēquanī were unwilling.*

It will be seen from the above examples that the ablative absolute construction consists of a noun or pronoun with another word in agreement.

This word is usually either (1) a participle (perf. part. pass. very common); or (2) an adjective; or (3) another noun.

Note also in how many different ways it is possible to translate the abl. absol. according to context :

*e.g. quō factō, after this (lit. 'which having-been-done').*

*flōrentissimīs rēbus, in a time of prosperity (lit. 'matters (being) very flourishing').*

*rēbus despērātīs, in despair (lit. 'matters having-been-despaired-of').*

*despērātā salūte, despairing of safety.*

*eā rē impetrātā, permission being given (lit. 'this thing having-been-obtained by request').*

*Verbō<sup>1</sup> reddite :*

1. corn having-been-collected (*comparō*. 1.).
2. a shelter (*testūdō*, *inīs*, f.) having-been-made:
3. our ranks having-been-thrown-into-confusion.
4. when all Gaul had been pacified (say 'all Gaul having been pacified,' *pācō*. 1.).
5. at the beginning of summer (say 'summer having-been-entered-upon,' *in-eō*, -*īre*, -*īi*, -*īum*).
6. when he had found-out this (say 'these matters having-been-found-out,' *cog-noscō*. 3. -*nōvī*, -*nītum*).
7. as this matter had been settled (say 'this matter having-been-settled,' *con-stituō*. 3. -*stituī*, *stitūtum*).
8. having accomplished a long march (say 'a long march having-been-accomplished,' *con-ficiō*. 3. -*fēcī*, -*fectum*).
9. when the mountain had been taken (say 'the mountain having-been-taken') and our-men were coming-up (*pres. part. of succēdō*. 3.).
10. when mantlets had been brought-up (*ago*. 3. *ēgī*, *actum*) to the walls, an outwork thrown-up (*iaciō*. 3.) and towers built (*con-stituō* 3.) (say 'mantlets having-been etc., an outwork having-been. etc., towers having-been, etc.').

*Anglicē reddite :*

1. Caesar *prīmum* (*equum*) *suum*, *deinde omnium equōs ex conspectū remōvit*.

<sup>1</sup> Verbally, orally.

2. sic omnium periculum aequavit, et spem fugae sustulit (*tollō*. 3.).
3. tum cohortatus suos proelium commisit.
4. milites ē locō superiōre pila miserunt, et facile hostium phalangem perfrēgerunt.
5. postquam eam (*i.e.* phalangem) disiecerunt (*dīs-iciō*. 3.), gladios destrinxerunt, et in hostēs impetum fecerunt.

Observe how Caesar combines the above sentences by means of ablatives absolute.

‘Caesar primum *suo*, deinde omnium *equis* ex conspectu *remotis*, omniumque *periculo* sic *aequatō*, et *spē* fugae *sublatā*, cohortatus suos proelium commisit. Milites ē locō superiōre *pilis missis* facile . . . perfrēgerunt. *Eā disiectā gladiis dstrictis* in hostēs . . . fecerunt.’

How many *Principal* verbs are there in the above? Which are they?

*Translate in more than one way:*

1. oppidis vicis-que exustis (*ex-urō*. 3.).
2. paucis murum defendentibus.
3. oculis intentis.
4. traditis (*trādō*. 3.) armis.

## LESSON 14.

## THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE—(Continued.)

## LECTIŌ.

*Caesar cum Britannīs bellum gerit.*

Equitēs hostium essedārii-que ācriter proeliō cum equitatū nostrō in itinere *conflīxērunt*. Nostrī tamen omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuērunt, atque eōs in silvās collēs-que *compulērunt*.

Hostium **complūribus interfectis**<sup>1</sup> nostrī cupidius insecūtī nonnullōs ex suis āmisērunt. At *illī*, **intermissō spatiō, imprudentibus nostrīs** atque **occupātis** in mūnitiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex castris eiēcērunt. **Impetū factō, nostrīs-que** novō genere pugnae **perterritīs**, per mediōs audācissimē *perrūpērunt*.

Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus militum, interficitur. Illī **plūribus submissis cohortibus** repelluntur.

**conflīxērunt**, 3rd pers. plur. perf. of *conflīgō*, 3.

**compulērunt**, „ „ „ „ *compēlō*, 3.

*illī*, i.e., hostēs as opposed to *nostrī*.

**perrūpērunt**, the subject is *illī* (understood from the previous sentence).

<sup>1</sup> Ablatives absolute are printed in black type.

*Vivā Vōce!*

1. inter quōs haec pugna facta est? 2. quī victōrēs fuerunt? 3. ex nostris quot perierunt? 4. quamobrem nostrī imprudentēs erant? 5. quā in rē occupāti sunt? 6. unde hostēs sēsē ēiciunt? 7. cūr nostrī tum perterriti sunt? 8. quī tribūnus interficitur? 9. quōmodo dēnique hostēs repelluntur?

*Verbō transferte:*

- |                                      |                                       |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. bellō Helvētiorum confectō.       | 9. L. Domitiō Ap. Claudīo consulibus. |
| 2. eā rē permissā.                   | 10. quibus rēbus perfectis.           |
| 3. Marcō Crassō consule.             | 11. occupatō oppidō.                  |
| 4. timentibus nostris.               | 12. insciente Caesare.                |
| 5. sē invitō.                        | 13. conciliō dimissō.                 |
| 6. clamōre sublātō.                  | 14. mē duce.                          |
| 7. hāc oratione ab Divitiacō habitā. | 15. eis hortantibus.                  |
| 8. rē deliberatā.                    | 16. brevī spatio interiectō.          |

In the following exercise where words are printed in *italic* type, the ablative absolute construction is to be used.

*Latīnē reddite:*

The Britons, *having learnt the Romans' plan* and *having sent forward cavalry and charioteers*, followed-up with the rest of their forces.

This method (*genus, eris, n.*) of fighting they are accustomed to-use (*ūtī*) in battle (*pl.*).

Our-men-were hampered by-this (fact), namely-that (*quod*) the ships owing-to their size could not be-formed (*constitui*) except in deep-water (*altum*, ī, n.).

Also they were fighting in-places unknown (to them), *with-their hands hindered*, and *weighed-down* by the heavy burden of their armour.

The enemy on-the-other-hand either from the dry-land (*āridum*, ī, n.) or having-advanced a-little into the water, *with-all their limbs unencumbered*, *in-places quite-familiar* (*superl. of nōtus*, a, um) boldly hurled their weapons.

Accordingly our-men did not display (*say 'use'*) the same keenness and zeal as (*say 'which'*) they were accustomed to display in foot skirmishes.

In the following exercise words in black type are to be put in the ablative absolute.

*Quod dē-est suppeditāte :*

1. Eōdem ferē temp— P. Crassus in Sontiātēs<sup>1</sup> proficiscit—.
2. Bellum in e— locīs gestūrus erat ubi pauc— ante ann— (*abl. of Time*) L. Valerius Praecōnīnus lōgātus **exercit**— **puls**— interfectus erat, atque unde L. Mallius prōconsul **impediment**— āmiss— prōfūg— (*pluperf.*).
3. Itaque r— frūmentāri— prōvis—, auxili— equitātū-que compar—, in Aquitāniam conten—.

<sup>1</sup> The Sontiātēs were a people of Aquitānia.

4. Cuius **advent**— **cognit**—, **hostēs**, **magnīs cōpi**—  
**coact**—, in itin— agmen nostr— adortī sunt.

. Primum proeli— equestr— committēbant, sed  
**equitāt**— **puls**— atque **insequent**— (pres.  
*part. of insequor*) **nostrīs** subitō pedestr—  
cōpiās, qu— in insidiīs collocāv— (pluperf.)  
ostendērunt.

6. Hī nostrōs disiect— adortī proelium renovāvērunt.

*Parse gestūrus in sent. 2.*



## LESSON 15.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Substantival Form.	Adjectival Form.
<b>aliquis.</b> m. and f., somebody <b>aliquid.</b> n., something	{ <b>aliqui, aliqua, aliquod,</b> some
<b>quis.</b> m. and f., somebody <b>quid.</b> n., something	{ <i>same as substantival, but</i> <i>very rare, some</i>
<b>quidam.</b> m., <b>quaedam.</b> f., a certain one <b>quiddam.</b> n., a certain thing	{ <b>quidam, quaedam, quod-</b> <b>dam,</b> a certain
<b>quisquam.</b> m. and f., any one. <b>quicquam</b> ( <b>quidquam</b> ). n. anything	{ <i>same as substantival, any</i>

For the declension of the above, see Grammar at end of Book. Generally speaking they are declined like **quis** or **qui**.

Of them **quis** is the *least*, **quidam** the *most* definite.

**aliquis** is as a rule only used in *affirmative* expressions.

**quis** is generally found after *sī, nisi* (*unless*), *num?* *nē* (*lest, that . . . not*, v. Less. 38 and 41).

**quisquam** is used in *negative* and *interrogative* sentences.

**nēmō**, no one, is used in the sing. only and is declined thus:—Nom. **nēmō**, Acc. **nēminem**, Gen. **nullius**, Dat. **nullī** or **nēminī**, Abl. **nullō**, **ā**, **ō**.

1. Caesar aliquem ē lēgātis suis mittit.
2. aliquid novī consilī (*something of a new plan*, i.e. *some new plan*) ā barbarīs initum est (*in-eō*).
3. sī quid gravius acciderit, nōs recipere cōgemur.
4. num quis Cicerōne fācundior erat?
5. Suēvī nihil vestītūs (*nothing of clothing*, i.e. *no clothing*) praeter pellēs habent.
6. loca, portūs, aditūs Britanniae—haec omnia Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque eis ipsis (i.e. *mercātōribus*) quicquam praeter ōram maritimam nōtum est.
7. idōneum quemdam hominem dēlēgērunt.
8. quōsdam dē hostium exercitū habēmus captīvōs.
9. refractīs portīs (*abl. absol.*) nēmō oppidum diūtius dēfendēbat.
10. nēmō mēcum sine perniciē suā contendet (*will strive*).

*Latīnē reddite:*

1. The scouts caught-sight-of some squadrons of the enemy's cavalry.
2. A certain Q. Iūnius from Spain was sent to-discuss (*supine of agō*. 3. *dē*) terms.
3. Why do you expect any-help (*say 'anything of help'*) from us?
4. If any one having-received-a-severe-wound (*abl. absol.*) fell (*pluperf.*) from his horse, his comrades surrounded (*imperf.*) him.

5. Although (*etsi*) no one follows (*fut.*) me, yet I will-go (*fut. part. with esse*) with one legion only.  
 6. Caesar will persuade a certain soldier to-take (*ut dēferat*) a letter to Cicerō.

*The 'double alius' construction.*

**alius** followed directly by another **alius** is used as follows:—

**alius aliam causam inferēbat.**

*one man alleged one reason, another another (i.e. various reasons were alleged, or different men alleged different reasons).*

**aliae aliā in parte legiōnēs resistunt.**

*some legions stand their ground in one part (of the field), some in another.*

**alius aliī subsidium ferunt.**

*one man succours one, another another (i.e. all are helping each other).*

*Verbō transferte :*

1. in senibus aliquid bonī consilī plērumque in-est.
2. quidam ē tribūnīs occīsus erat.
3. aliquid calamitātis acceptum est.
4. num quis vestrum locūtus est ?
5. nēmō resistēbat.
6. aliū aliā ex nāvī ēgrediēbantur.
7. nihil privātī agrī apud Suēvōs erat.
8. aliī aliam in partem perterritī fugērunt.
9. iamque nōn multum aestātis super-erat.

## LESSON 16.

## INDEFINITE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Indefinite pronoun **quisque, quaeque, quodque** (**quicque**), *each, every, everybody*, is declined as follows:—

Case.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quisque	quaeque	quodque ( <i>adj.</i> )
Acc.	quemque	quamque	quicque ( <i>subst.</i> )
Gen.	cūiusque ( <i>all genders</i> )		
Dat.	cuique ( <i>all genders</i> )		
Abl.	quōque	quāque	quōque

The plural is like that of **quis** with the suffix *-que* added.

**quisque** is most commonly used in close connection with (1) the possessive adj. *suus, a, um*, and (2) the reflexive pronoun.

*N.B.* **suus** and **sibi** generally stand next to **quisque**.

*e.g.* **sua quisque** miles circumspiciēbat.

*each soldier was looking over his belongings.*

**testēs stuae quisque** virtūtis habuit.

*every man had a witness of his own bravery.*

**Helvētiī cibāria sibi quemque** domō efferre iubent.

*the Helvētiī order each man to take from home  
a food supply for himself.*

\* *latrōcinia*, quae extrā finēs **cūiusque** cīvitātis fiunt, nullam apud Germānōs habent infāmiam.

*robberies, which are committed outside the boundaries of each state, are accounted no disgrace amongst the Germans.*

**quisque** with the superlative is used in universal statements:—

*e.g.* **doctissimus**<sup>1</sup> **quisque**, each (most) learned man,  
*i.e.* all the (most) learned men.

**antiquissimum quodque tempus**, all the (most) ancient times.

**sapientissimī cūiusque opera**, the works of all the wise(st) men.

Note the phrases:

**prō sē quisque**, each for himself.

{ **decimus quisque**, every tenth man.  
*e.g.* vix decimus quisque miles sine vulnere relinquitur.

*Relative.*

The Relative **quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque**, whoever, every one who, is declined like **quī** with the addition of the suffix *-cumque*.

*e.g.* omnibus, **quicumque** bellum inferunt, resistimus.  
*we resist whoever wage war on us.*

ite **quascumque** in partēs vultis!

*go wherever (into whatever directions) you wish!*

<sup>1</sup> *N.B.*—The superlative always stands first.

*Quod dē- est suppedītate :*

1. nostrī omni—, quaecumque hostēs in castrīs  
• • reliqu— (*pluperf.*), potiuntur.
2. domum su— quisque revertī (*pres. infin. of*  
*revertor.* 3.) coepit.
3. Caesar hostēs, quibuscumque rēb— poterat,  
coerc— statuit.
4. summū honōr— locum s— quisque petit.
5. quaecumque ad oppugnātiō— opus sunt, noctū  
compar— (*pres. pass.*).
6. dux obsidēs nōbilissimī cūius— poscit.

#### LECTIO.

*Gallī aggerem Rōmānum incendunt.*

Rōmānī, quī Avāricum, Gallōrum oppidum, obsidēbant, singulārī incolārum sollertiā atque virtūte iamdiū tardābantur. Tandem nostrī continentī labōre diēbus xxv aggerem lātum pedēs cccxxx altum pedēs lxxx extruxērunt. Iamque *is* hostium mūruū paene contingēbat, et Caesar consuetūdine suā ad opus *excubābat*, cum paulō ante tertiam vigiliam hostēs *cuniculō* aggerem succendunt.

Eōdem tempore tōtō mūrō *clāmōre sublātō* ab utrōque latere *turrium* ēruptiō fiēbat. Aliī facēs atque aridam māteriem dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant, picem reliquās-que rēs, quibus ignis excitātur, fundēbant. Nostrī primō perturbātī *trepidāre et concursāre*, post paulum, quia duae, semper legiōnēs prō castrīs

excubābant *plūrēs*-que erant in opere, aliī eruptionibus resistere aliī aggerem *interscindere* coepērunt.

*is*, *i.e.* agger.

*trepidāre et concursāre*, <sup>sc.</sup>

*excubō*. 1., I keep watch.

coepērunt.

*cuniculus*, 1, *m.*, a mine (*milit.*).

*plūrēs*, many, several.

*clāmōre sublāto*, what constr. ?

*interscindere*, to break down, cut gaps in.

### *Vivā Vōce:*

1. quod oppidum ā nostrīs obsidēbātur? 2. quibus rēbus nostrī tardābantur? 3. ubi Caesar excubābat? 4. quotā hōrā et quōmodo hostēs aggerem succendunt? 5. nonne facibus et pice excitātur ignis? 6. quot legiōnēs prō castrīs excubābant? 7. quārē nostrī primō perturbātī sunt?

## LESSON 17.

## THE GERUND.

The Gerund is a verbal noun (neuter) ending in **-ndum**, and corresponds to English verbal nouns ending in **-ing**.

It governs the same case as the verb from which it comes.

Thus :

- ōrandum** (*ōrō*. 1.), asking.  
**loquendum** (*loquor*. 3.), speaking.  
**mittendum** (*mittō*. 3.), sending.  
**capiendum** (*capiō*. 3.), taking.

The Gerund is formed from the Present Stem of verbs by adding **-ndum**. Verbs of the 4th and 'Mixed' conjugations affix **e** to the Present Stem before adding this ending.

Thus :

Verb.	Verb Stem.	Gerund.
pugnō. 1.	pugnā-	pugna- <b>ndum</b>
moneō. 2.	monē-	mone- <b>ndum</b>
sequor. 3.	seque-	seque- <b>ndum</b>
faciō. 3. ('Mixed')	faci-	faci- <b>e-ndum</b>
orior. 4.	orī-	ori- <b>e-ndum</b>



*Declension of the Gerund.*

The nominative of the Gerund, except in the meaning of necessity (*see below*) is supplied by the Present Infinitive ;

*e.g. currere iucundum est, running is pleasant.*

The oblique (*other than nominative*) cases of the Gerund are verbal nouns, as shown in the following table :—

Acc. **ad loquendum** aptus, *clever at speaking.*

Gen. **loquendī** facultas, *an opportunity of speaking.*

Dat. **loquendō** student, *they apply themselves to speaking.*

Abl. **loquendō** impetrant, *they gain their request by speaking.*

*Uses of the Gerund.*

The nominative of the Gerund has the meaning of necessity, and in Classical Latin is confined to Intransitive verbs.<sup>1</sup> The Agent is put in the dative case.

*e.g. nostrīs militibus (dat.) et de nāvibus dēsiliendum, et in fluctibus consistendum, et cum hostibus pugnandum erat.*

*our soldiers had to jump down from the ships, and stand in the breakers, and fight the enemy (lit. 'there was jumping down and standing and fighting for our soldiers').*

<sup>1</sup> Or Transitive verbs used absolutely, *e.g. timeō, exspectō, v. Less. 25.*

## THE OBLIQUE CASES OF THE GERUND.

(1) *The Gerund depending on Nouns:*

- • mittendī causa, *the reason of sending.*  
 ōrandī finis, *an end of beseeching.*  
 praedandī spēs, *hope of getting booty.*  
 pugnandī tempus, *fighting time.*

(2) *The Gerund depending on Adjectives:*

- bellandī cupidus, *fond of war.*  
 nāvigandī insuētus, *unused to sailing.*

(3) *The Gerund governed by a Preposition:*

ad:

- ad pugnandum alacer, *eager to fight.*  
 animus ad dimicandum parātus, *spirits ready for battle.*

in:

- militēs in metendō occupātī, *soldiers busy reaping.*  
 in quaerendō reperiēbat, *in (the course of his) search, he found out.*

(4) *Gerund after causā:*

- militēs cohortandī causā profectus est, *he set out for the sake of exhorting the soldiers.*  
 praedandī, pābulandī causā, *for the sake of getting booty, forage.*

• *Gerundial phrases are printed in black type.*

1. ad **celeritātem onerandī** nāvēs paulō humiliōrēs factae sunt.
2. nulla nostris **facultās** aut nāvēs **administrand** aut **auxiliandī** dabātur.

3. nox **finem oppugnandī** fēcit.
4. hāc ōrātiōne multō māius **studium pugnandī** exercitui iniectum est.
5. dux **loquendī finem** facit.
6. ille locus nēquāquam **ad ēgrediendum idōneus** erat.
7. Suēvis longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō **incolendī causā** nōn licuit (*licet. 2*).
8. eī, quī **frūmentandī causā** trans Mosam ierant, nondum red-ierant.

*Latīnē reddite :*

1. Galba was ordered to leave a legion to-winter (*causā with gen. of gerund*) in those parts.
2. A large part of the cavalry had been sent across the Mosa some days (*abl.*) before to-get (*causā*) booty (*gerund of praedor. 1.*) and forage (*gerund of frūmentor. 1.*).
3. Our cavalry drove the enemy headlong, and gave them no chance (*say 'nor gave them chance'*) either of standing-their-ground (*consistō. 3.*) or of jumping from their chariots.
4. Next-day according-to his custom Caesar drew-up his army (*aciēs, ēī, f.*), and gave the enemy a chance of fighting.
5. The time was unsuitable for (*ad*) harassing the enemy, and engaging-battle.
6. Caesar discovered the causes of the conspiracy (*gerund of coniūrō. 1.*).

7. When-the-camp-had-been-fortified (*abl. absol.*) the general began to bring-up (*agō. 3.*) mantlets, and to collect what (*say 'those-things which'*) was useful (*ūsuī*) for (*ad*) a siege (*gerund of oppugnō. 1.*).
8. The enemy by their hesitation and appearance (*opīniō, ōnis, f.*) of fear made our soldiers more-ready (*alacer, cris, cre*) for the fray.
9. Ropes, anchors, and the rest-of their tackle (*armā-menta, ōrum, n. pl.*) having been lost (*abl. absol.*) the ships were useless for (*ad*) sailing.
10. As no interval (*spatium, tī, n.*) was given (*abl. absol.*) for (*say 'of'*) taking arms the Germans were thrown into great confusion.

*Quod dē-est suppedītātē :*

1. pugnand- causā restitit nē—.
2. dux explōrāt— speculand— causā praemīs—.
3. spatium pīla in hostēs cōnici— nōn dabātur.
4. eques quīd— Rōmānus colloquendī — mittitur.
5. dat— sign— (*abl. absol.*) et sublāt— ancor— (*abl. absol.*) tertiā ferē vig— nāvēs solvit.
6. cālōnēs praed— causā ēgress— sunt.
7. nōbis potestātem lēgāt— mittend— date!
8. Caesar pābula— causā trēs legiōn— cum Cāiō Trebōniō lēgāt— mīs— (*pluperf.*).

For the Gerund used after such verbs as *existimō, arbitror, statuō*, etc., *vide* Less. 25.

## LESSON 18.

## THE GERUNDIVE.

The Gerundive is a verbal adjective and is formed, like the Gerund, from the Present Stem of verbs by adding **-ndus, a, um**, etc.

Only Transitive verbs have a Gerundive (v. Note p. 75).

In all its uses the Gerundive is Passive, as opposed to the Gerund, which is Active.

*Nominative of the Gerundive expressing Necessity.*

The meaning of the Gerundive in the nominative case is *Necessity* or *Obligation* (cf. nom. of the gerund).

e.g. ille vir **laudandus** est.

*that man is praiseworthy, or deserving of praise,  
or to be praised.*

illa silva **vītanda** est.

*that forest is (ought) to be avoided.*

haec carmina **legenda** sunt.

*these poems are worth reading (to be read).*

The Agent is put in the *dative* case (cf. gerund).

e.g. **nōbīs** hōc flūmen transeundum est.

*we have to cross this river (lit. 'this river is for us to-be-crossed').*

**Caesari** omnia erant agenda.

*Caesar had to do everything* (lit. 'everything was  
• for Caesar to-be-done').

*When to use the Gerundive in preference to the  
Gerund.*

Instead of the oblique cases of the Gerund, with an object in the acc. case, the Gerundive is usually substituted with the same meaning as the Gerund would have had. The object is put in the case in which the Gerund would have been, and the Gerundive, being an adjective, agrees with the object in gender, number, and case.

## Gerundive.

## Gerund.

ad eas res conficiendās.  
*for completing those things* (lit.  
'for those things to be com-  
pleted').

in consiliis capiendis.  
*in forming plans.*  
de recipiendā libertatē.  
*about recovering liberty.*  
pācis petendae causā.  
*to sue for peace.*

testudō militibus tegendis.  
*a shelter for protecting soldiers.*

ad eas res conficiendum.  
*(not found in Classical Latin).*

in consilia capiendō.  
*(very rare in Classical Latin).*  
de recipiendō libertatem.  
*(very rare in Classical Latin).*  
pācem petendī causā.

testudō milites tegendō.  
*(not found in Classical Latin).*

## LECTIŌ.

*Quae ducī agenda sunt.*

Caesarī **omnia** ūnō tempore erant **agenda**<sup>1</sup>: **vexillūm**, quod erat insigne, **prōpōnendum** (erat); **signum** tubā **dandum** (erat); **militēs** ab opere **revocandī** (erant); **eī**, quī paulō longius **aggeris petendī causā** prōcesserant, **arcessendī** erant; **aciēs instruenda** (erat); **militēs cohortandī** (erant).

Tum necessariis rēbus imperātis **ad cohortandōs militēs** dēcucurrit. Eōs nōn longā ōratiōne cohortātus **proelī committendī signum** dedit. Nōn modo **ad insignia accommōdanda** sed etiam **ad galeās induendās** scūtīs-que **tegimenta dētrūdenda** tempus dē-erat.

**vexillum prōpōnere**, to raise the flag (displayed on the general's tent as a signal for battle).

**insignia**, the ornaments or badges of distinction (worn probably on the helmet).

**tegimenta dētrūdere**, to remove the covers.

*Latīnē vertenda:*

1. Sabinus by-night secretly sets-out for-the-sake-of bringing help to Caesar.
2. The general chose a spot in-front-of the camp suitable by nature for drawing-up his army (*ad with gerundive*).
3. All (kinds of) torture (*pl.*) were to-be-endured (*perferō*. 3.) by-the Sēquani (*what case?*).
4. Caesar set-out for hither Gaul to hold (*agō*. 3.) the assizes.

<sup>1</sup> Gerundival phrases are printed in black type.

5. In forming plans (*in with abl. of gerundive*) the Gauls are changeable (*mōbilis, e*).
6. While Caesar stays (*moror. 1.*) in these places to prepare (*causā with gerundive*) ships, ambassadors come to him from-all-sides.
7. No one wished to waste (*dīmīttō. 3.*) fighting-time (*say 'time of fighting'*) by looking-for (*in with abl. of gerundive of quaerō. 3.*) his own standard (*pl.*).
8. The general left (behind) all the corn which he had brought-down (*dē-vehō. 3. -vexī*) thither to support (*causā with gerundive*) the winter.

*Verbō transferte :*

1. ad dūcendum bellum.
2. in commemorandā calamitāte.
3. commēātūs petendī causā.
4. in pāce petendā.
5. mihi idem faciendum est quod tibi.
6. bellī inferendī causā.
7. parātī ad perīcula subeunda sumus.
8. in hīs administrandīs rēbus.
9. dīmīssīs per agrōs nuntiīs.
10. dux sibi quemque consulere iussit.
11. occāsiō ulciscendī Rōmānōs.
12. quibuscumque rēbus possum, officiō meō fungor.



## LESSON 19.

THE GERUNDIVE (*continued*).

*The Gerundive depending on Nouns:*

(1) *in the genitive.*

tempus committendī proeli, *time for (of) engaging battle* (lit. 'time of battle to-be-engaged').

consilium belli renovandī, *a plan of renewing the war.*

praedae faciendae facultās, *a chance of getting booty.*

spēs regnī obtinendī, *hope of maintaining the throne.*

occāsio suī liberandī,<sup>1</sup> *an opportunity of freeing themselves.*

(2) *in the dative:*

tempus collocandīs rēbus, *time for arranging matters.*

diēs hibernīs oppugnandīs, *the day for attacking the winter quarters.*

*Anglicē transferenda:*

1. nostrī subitā eruptionē factā hostibus suī colligendī facultātem auferunt.
2. Caesar bellī gerendī facultātem propter annī tempus nōn habuit.
3. dux signum proeli intermittendī dedit.
4. nostrīs dēfessīs nē locī quidem relinquentī facultās erat.

<sup>1</sup> Not *liberandōrum*, because where the case of the noun would be gen. pl., Latin prefers the Gerund. This is perhaps due to a desire to avoid the repetition of a long termination (-ōrum), as in sent. 5 below, where *retinendī lēgātōs* would be more usual Latin.

5. ab his fit initium retinendōrum lēgātōrum.
6. occāsiō negōtī bene gerendī āmittenda nōn erat.
7. propter lātitudinem rapiditatem-que flūminis diffi-  
cultās faciendī pontis summa erat.
8. in hōc proeliō militum virtūs admodum laudanda  
fuit.

*Gerundive with cūrō, I see-to, attend to, cause to be done.*<sup>1</sup>

Caesar pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat.

*Caesar causes a bridge to be built over the Arar.*

Sabīnus hostium manūs distinendās cūrat.

*Sabinus sees to the hostile bands being kept apart.*

exercitum longīs nāvibus transportandum cūrāverat.

*He had caused the army to be transported in the  
men-of-war.*

*Note.*—The Gerundive is properly found only of such Transitive verbs as govern an accusative case (v. p. 70).

Thus such instances as *spēs oppulī potiundī*, *spēs castrōrum potiundōrum* are exceptional, and due to the fact that *potior* occasionally governs the acc., as well as the abl. and gen.

*Quod dē-est suppeditāte :*

1. propter tempestāt— militēs itineris faciend—  
facultāt— nōn habuērunt.
2. nonne • in bellō locus virtūtis su— cuique  
proband— est?
3. haec rēs ad negōtium confici— opportūnissima  
erat.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the use of *dō* with gerundive on p. 251, l. 5.

4. in tantō rērum discriminē summa diligentia duc—  
adhibend— erat.
5. ad labōr— ferendum vinō remollesc— hominēs.
6. nihil nobis temerē agen— est.
7. moriendum est omn—.
8. nostris suī recip— facultās dē-erat.

*Latīnē reddenda :*

1. I must think-over (*cōgitō*. 1.) this matter (say  
'this matter is to-be-thought-over by me').
2. Caesar sent the cavalry to pursue (*consector*. 1.)  
the fugitives (*ad* with *gerundive*).
3. Nothing ought-to-be-entrusted to those who are  
unstable in forming plans (*in* with *abl.* of  
*gerundive*).
4. The arrogance of Ariovistus seemed unbearable  
(say 'not to be borne').
5. We must not lose an opportunity of freeing our-  
selves for-ever (*in perpetuum*) (say 'an oppor-  
tunity is not to-be-lost,' etc.).
6. Aquitania is to-be-reckoned (*aestimō*. 1.) as (*ex*) a  
third part of Gaul.
7. They promised a large supply of ships to transport  
the army (*ad* with *gerundive*).
8. In-a long (*longinquus*, *a*, *um*) siege famine is to-  
be-feared.

For the Gerundive used in Indirect Discourse after such verbs as *putō*, *intellegō*, *arbitror*, *statuō*, vide Less. 25.

## LECTIŌ.

*Germānī ā Caesare fugantur.*

Militēs nostrī pristinī diēi perfidiā incitātī in Germānōrum castra irrūpērunt. *Quō locō* quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, proeliō inter carrōs impedimenta-que commissō, paulisper nostris restitērunt. At reliqua multitudō puerōrum mulierumque—nam cum omnibus *suīs* domō exierant—passim fugere coepit; ad quōs consecrandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

Germānī post tergum clāmōre audītō armīs abiectīs signisque militāribus relictīs sē ex castrīs eiēcērunt. Postquam ad confluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnērunt, fugā despērātā magnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt, atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt.

Nostrī *ad ūnum* omnēs incolumēs perpaucis vulnerātis sē in castra recipiunt.

Caesar eīs, quōs in castrīs retinuerat, discēdendi potestatem fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūs-que Gallōrum *veritī*, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre apud eum *māluērunt*.

**Quō locō**, *i.e.* in castris.

**sui, ōrum**. m. pl., their families.

**ad ūnum**, to a man.

**veritī**, fearing.

**māluērunt**, preferred (*mālō, malle, mālui, v. p. 10*).

• How many ablatives absolute are there in this passage? Name them.

*Responsa verbōdanda:*

1. quā rē nostrī incitātī sunt? 2. quī paulisper restitērunt? 3. quō locō hī proelium committunt? 4. cur mulierēs puerīque ūnā cum virīs proeliō interfuērunt? 5. quae Germānī abiciunt? 6. quae relinquunt? 7. quam in partem fūgērunt? 8. num ex nostrīs multī vulnerātī sunt? 9. quibus Caesar discēdendī potestātem fēcit? 10. quā dē causā hanc potestātem recūsāvērunt? 11. quōrum agrōs vexāverant? 12. quid facere māluērunt?

# LESSON 20.

## RECAPITULATORY.

1. *Give Gen. Sing., Acc. Pl., Gender, and Meaning of*  
 •vīnea, mūnitiō, annus, rēs, genus, pellis, calamitās,  
 vestītus, vīs, insigne, discrīmen.
2. *Conjugate (orally or on paper) the perfect tenses*  
*of fiō, cōniciō, orior;*  
*and the pluperfect tenses of consuescō, frūmentor,*  
*ēgredior.*
3. *State two ways by which Latin avoids co-ordinate*  
*sentences. If possible give instances.*
4. *Decline in the singular aliquis, quīdam; and in the*  
*plural quicumque.*
5. *Transferte:*  

proelium intermittere.	expeditīs membrīs.
initā aestāte.	vīneās agere.
mōres malī inveter-	epistula mihi scribenda
ascunt.	est.
nihil vīnī.	audācissimus quisque.
iussus est militēs	alius aliud amant.
certiōrēs facere.	
6. *What is meant by a Frequentative verb? Form*  
*such verbs from veniō, concurrō.*

Mention any Inceptive verbs you know.

7. Give the Principal Parts (infinitive, perf. tense, and supine) of *ērumpō*, *compellō*, *exstruō*, *quaerō*, *dēvehō*; and the Principal Parts (infinitive, and perf. part.) of the Deponent verbs *praedor*, *proficiscor*, *sequor*.
8. What shades of meaning has the Ablative Absolute? Give one instance of each and translate it.
9. In *linguam Latīnam vertite*:  
matters had reached a crisis (*Less. 11*).  
in the consulship of Messalla and Pīsō (-ōnis).  
to put all hope of safety in valour (*Less. 11*).  
he is about-to-wage war.  
I envy no-one.  
every tenth man.
10. Explain *agger*, *testūdō*, *turris*, *vallum*.
11. What meaning has the nominative of the Gerund and Gerundive? Give one instance of each.
12. When is the Gerundive in the oblique cases to be used in preference to the Gerund?
13. *Perse* audācissimē, cōgemur, quemquam, potitī eritis, cuique, frūmentātum, ūsūrus.
14. Give the other degrees of comparison of *diū*, *celeriter*, *maximus*, *gravis*, *multum*, *plūs*, *plēnus*, *alacrior*, *summus*, *humilis*.

## LESSON 21.

## THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

We saw in Less. 23 of my First Lat. Bk. that many Latin verbs, like their English equivalents, are followed by the Infinitive mood (*Complementary Infinitive*).

Such are

**possum**, I am able, can.

**coepī**, I began.

**dēbeō**, I ought.

**constituō**, I determine.

**soleō**, I am accustomed.

**audeō**, I dare.

Thus we say both in Latin and English

**dēbēmus rectē facere**, we ought to do right.

**potes-ne illud vidēre**, are you able to (can you) see that?

Other similar verbs are

**volō**, I wish.

**consuescō**, I am accustomed

**nōlō**, I do not wish.

(*v.* Less. 12).

**mālō**, I prefer.

**iubeor**, I am ordered.

**cōnor**, I try (*v.* Less. 6).

**dīcor**, I am said.

*Exempla verbō transferenda :*

1. id quod constituī facere cōnābor.
2. dux hostēs post tergum relinquere nōlēbat.
3. Suēvī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur.
4. primā lūce hostēs flūmen transīre cōnātī sunt.
5. nōlīte (*imperative of nōlō*) eōs dēserere, quī vestrae salūtis causā suum periculum neglexērunt!



6. *lĕgātī obsidēs Caesarī dare constituunt.*
7. *in eō locō diūtius remanēre nōn ausī sumus.*
8. *hominēs in libertāte, quamvis dūrā, permanēre quam servitūtem perferre mālunt.*

Some of these verbs take an accusative with the Infinitive:

*e.g. dux fabrōs pontem reficere iussit.*  
*the general ordered the engineers to repair the bridge.*

*sī vōs interficī nonvultis, arma pōnite!*  
*if you do not wish to be killed, lay down your arms!*

*Caesar lĕgātōs discēdere vetuerat.*  
*Caesar had forbidden the officers to depart.*

All the above verbs are used as the corresponding verbs in English, but there are many others (mostly of **saying, knowing, perceiving, and the like**) followed in Latin by the accusative and infinitive, which in English take a different construction.

*e.g. eōs ad-esse vīdit.*

*He saw that they were present (lit. 'them to be present').*

*sciō mē hōc facere posse.*

*I know that I can do this (lit. 'myself to be able to do').*

*vide Less. 22 sqq.*

The following tables of the Infinitive mood should now be studied.

• •      *Verb comparō, I get together.*

	Active.	Passive.
Pres. Infin.	<b>comparāre</b> , to get together.	<b>comparārī</b> , to be got together.
Perf. Infin.	<b>comparā(vi)sse</b> , to have got together.	<b>comparātus esse</b> , to have been got together.
Fut. Infin.	<b>comparātūrus esse</b> , to be about to get together.	<b>comparātum irī</b> , to be about to be got together.

#### ACTIVE VOICE.

doceō. 2.    dūcō. 3.    iaciō. 3.    mūnio. 4.    loquor. 3.

Pres.	esse	docēre	dūcere	iacere	mūnīre	(deponent)
Perf.	fuisse	docuisse	duxisse	iēcisse	mūnīvisse	
Fut.	futūrus	doctūrus	ducturus	iactūrus	mūnītūrus	
	esse, or fore	esse	esse	esse	esse	

#### PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres.	•	docērī	dūcī	iacī	mūnīrī	loquī
Perf.		doctus esse	ductus esse	iactus esse	mūnītus esse	locūtus esse
Fut.		doctum irī	ductum irī	iactum irī	mūnītum irī	locūtūrus esse

*Formation of the Tenses of the Infinitive mood.<sup>1</sup>*

From the Present Stem are formed (a) the pres. infin. act.  
 (b) the pres. infin. pass.  
 (c) the pres. infin. of  
 Deponent verbs.

From the Perfect Stem is formed the perf. infin. act.

From the Supine Stem are formed (a) the fut. infin. act.  
 (b) the fut. infin. pass.  
 (c) the perf. infin. pass.

From the Perf. Part. are formed the perf. and fut. infin. of Deponent verbs.

*N.B.*—(1) the pres. infin. of all Passive and Deponent verbs ends in *-ī*.

(2) Deponent Verbs have the Active Form of the fut. infin.

(3) the 'esse' of the perf. pass. and fut. act. infin. is often omitted.

(4) the fut. infin. pass. is made up as follows:—  
 the first part is the supine in *-um*, the  
 second the pres. infin. pass. of *eō*, I go.

*e.g.* *militēs ēductum irī prōnuntiāvit.*

*he announced that the soldiers would be led out* (lit. 'he announced that it is being gone to-lead-out<sup>2</sup> the soldiers').

*spērāvit cōpiās iam comparātum irī.*

*he hoped that forces would soon be got ready.*

<sup>1</sup> This page is intended more for reference than to be learnt by heart.

<sup>2</sup> Supine in *-um* expressing purpose after a verb of motion, *v.* Less. 8.

But this construction is not common, *futūrum ut* or *fore ut* followed by the Subjunctive being often used instead, and necessarily so in the case of verbs having no supine.

*Verbō transferenda :*

Supply **iubet** or **iussit** before each sentence in the following :—

1. obsidēs ad sē addūcī.
2. lēgātōs retinērī.
3. agmen sē subsequī.
4. classem convenīre.
5. nāvēs longās aedificārī.
6. nautās gubernātōrēs-que comparārī.
7. pīmam aciem in armīs esse.
8. fabrōs ex continentī arcessī.

*Latīnē reddite :*

1. He did not wish (*imperf.*) these matters to be discussed (*iactō. 1.*) in-public (*plūribus praesentibus*).
2. The Sēquanī allow (*patior. 3.*) the Hēlvētīi to go through their territory.
3. The general forbade his-men to follow-up the fugitives (*pres. part. of fugio. 3.*).

4. He ordered the cavalry to advance (*prōgredior*. 3.) to the harbour and to go-on-board (*nāvem conscendō*. 3.) and to follow him.
5. He ordered two legions to be posted on the top of the ridge (*iugum*, *ī*, *n.*), and the whole of the mountain to be occupied (say 'filled with men') and the baggage to be carried (*conferō*. 3.) to one spot.
6. Do you not, soldiers, dare to attack (*adorior*. 4.) so (*tam*) small (*exiguus*, *a*, *um*) a band?
7. Next-day he hastens (*mātūrō*. 1 ) to leave (say 'set-out from') the city.
8. Seeing this (say 'which having been seen,' *abl. absol.*) he ordered the natives to be dislodged (*summoveō*. 2.) with slings and arrows.

**coeptus sum** followed by the *Passive Infinitive*.

The verb 'began' followed by the pass. infin. is translated not by *coepī*, but by the passive, **coeptus sum**.

- e.g. lapidēs iaci **coepti sunt** (not *coepērunt*).  
 stones began to be hurled.  
 pons institui **coeptus est** (not *coepit*).  
 a bridge began to be built.

Similarly *māteria comportari coepta erat*.  
*rēs agi coeptae sunt*.

*Verbō reddite :*

He orders:—

1. the bridge to be-pulled-down (*rescindō*. 3.).
2. the cavalry to be recalled (*revocō*. 1.).
3. the camp to be fortified with a taller stockade.
4. the gates to be blocked (*obstruō*. 3.).
5. the warships to be removed a-little from the  
    transports (*nāvēs onerāriac*, *f. pl.*),
6. and to be rowed-on (say 'urged-on by oars').
7. the line-of-battle to be drawn-up.
8. the brigadier to set-out at the fourth watch.

## LESSON 22.

INDIRECT STATEMENT (*ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA*).

The following is a list of common verbs which are followed by the Infinitive mood, the **subject** of the Infinitive being put in the **accusative** case:—

<b>videō.</b> 2., I see.	<b>putō.</b> 1., I think.
<b>intellegō.</b> 3., I perceive.	<b>existimō.</b> 1., I think.
<b>sentiō.</b> 4., I perceive, feel.	<b>arbitror.</b> 1., I think.
<b>animum advertō.</b> 3. } I per-	<b>dīcō.</b> 3., I say.
<b>animadvertō.</b> 3. } ceive.	<b>negō.</b> 1., I say no, deny.
<b>cognoscō.</b> 3., I get to know.	<b>respondeō.</b> 2., I reply.
<b>sciō.</b> 4., I know.	<b>nuntiō.</b> 1. }
<b>reperiō.</b> 4., I find out, discover.	<b>prō-nuntiō.</b> 1. } I announce,
<b>inveniō.</b> 4., I find out.	<b>re-nuntiō.</b> 1. } report.
<b>dēmonstrō.</b> 1., I point out.	<b>crēdō.</b> 3., I believe.
<b>polliceor,</b> 2., I promise. <sup>1</sup>	<b>statuō.</b> 3., I determine.
<b>certiōr-em (-ēs) faciō.</b> 3., I inform.	
<b>certior fiō,</b> I am informed.	

The above list should be committed to memory.

*ōrātiō recta et oblīqua.*

Speech (*ōrātiō*), whether Direct (*recta*) or Indirect (*oblīqua*), must take one of three forms, *viz.* either Statement, Command, or Question.

*e.g. Direct Speech.*

You are doing this (Statement).

Do this! (Command).

Are you doing this? (Question).

<sup>1</sup> Usually followed by the future infinitive.

*Indirect Speech.*

• I see that you are doing this (Statement).

• I tell you to do this (Command).

I ask whether you are doing this (Question).

Indirect Statement is expressed in Latin by one of the above (or similar) verbs followed by the 'accusative and Infinitive.'<sup>1</sup>

Thus: *videō tē hōc facere.*

*I see that you are doing this (lit. 'you to be doing').*

*videō* is called the **Principal Verb**.

*facere* „ „ **Dependent** „ •

Translate the sentences in the following table, and refer those in the '*Anglicē reddenda*' to their appropriate columns:—

Principal Verb with Subject.	Dependent Verb.		
	pres. infin. with subject.	perf. infin. with subject.	fut. infin. with subject.
<i>lēgātī negant</i>	<i>sē coniūrāti- ōnem facere (act.)</i>	<i>sē coniūrāti- ōnem fēcisse (act.)</i>	<i>sē coniūrāti- ōnem factū- rōs (esse) (act.)</i>
<i>hostēs intel- lēbant</i> • •	<i>sē ā nostrīs circumdari (pass.)</i>	<i>sē ā nostrīs circumdatōs (esse) (pass.)</i>	<i>sē ā nostrīs circumdatum iri (pass.)</i>
<i>barbarī vidē- runt</i>	<i>nostrōs prō- gredi (dep.)</i>	<i>nostrōs prō- gressōs (esse) (dep.)</i>	<i>nostrōs prō- gressūrōs esse (dep.)</i>

<sup>1</sup> For Indirect Command, v. Less. 38; for Indirect Question, v. Less. 44.



*Anglicē reddenda :*

1. speculātor ad ducem accurrit, dīcit-que mōntem ab hostibus tenērī.
2. Caesar reperiēbat plērosque Belgās ortōs esse ab Germānis, Rhēnum antīquitus trāductōs esse, Gallōs-que expulisse.
3. dux hostēs in castrīs nostrīs versārī vīdit.
4. eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus est hostēs sub monte consēdisse.
5. coniūratiōnis principēs dēmonstrant sēsē nihil nisi communī consiliō actūrōs (esse).
6. Caesar suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre animadvertit.
7. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum esse negat.
8. prōnuntiat dux posterō diē primā lūcē castra mōtum irī.
9. lēgātī pollicitī sunt sē obsidēs datūrōs, atque imperāta factūrōs (esse).
10. Caesar ex captivīs inveniēbat Sabim flūmen ab castrīs suis nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse.

Write *in Latin* any five of the above sentences in the form of Direct speech.

*e.g.* in no. 1. the scout says 'mons ab hostibus tenētur.'  
in no. 7. Cotta says 'ad armātum hostem nōn ibō.'

*Quod dē-est suppeditāte :*

1. Crassus animadvertit hostem vagār— et viās  
obsid.— (*pres. infin. act.*).
2. lēgātī dixēr— nihil sē dē bellō cōgitāv— (*perf. infin. act.*), nulla hostibus auxili— mīs— (*perf. infin. act.*).
3. Caesar litterīs Labiēnī certior fi— (*imperf.*)  
omnēs Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum  
coniur— (*pres. infin. act.*).
4. Caesar memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium consul—  
occis— esse, exercitum-que cīus ab Helvēti—  
puls— esse et sub iugum — (*perf. infin. pass. of mittō*).
5. dēmonstrat sē bellō cīvitat— persec— esse (*fut infin. of persequor*).
6. dux hostēs nostrōs insequ— (*pres. infin.*) animum-  
advertit.

*N.B.*—Sentence 6 can be translated in two ways. What are they?

Notice that *animum-advertō* governs an acc. case, as if it were a single word. What does it mean literally?

### LECTIŌ.

*Caesar bellum contrā Suēvōs parat.*

Interim paucis post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēvōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere atque nātiōnibus sibi vectīgālibus auxilia peditātūs equitatūs-que imperāre. His cognitīs rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castris idōneum locum dēligit, Ubiōs pecora dēducere

*sua*-que omnia ex agris in oppida conferre iubet, sp̄rans hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs *inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs ad inīquam pugnandī condiciōnem* posse dēdūcī.

Interim explorātōrēs in Suēvōs *missī*, paucīs diēbus intermissīs, renuntiant Suēvōs omnēs cum omnibus suis sociōrum-que copiīs *penitus* ad extrēmōs finēs sē recēpisse: silvam esse ibi infīnitā magnitūdine, hanc longē *introrsus* pertinēre: ad eius initium silvae Suēvōs adventum Rōmānōrum expectāre constituisse.

**nātiō, ōnis**, f., a tribe.

**vectigālis**, e, adj., tributary.

**sua, ōrum**, n. pl., their belongings.

**inopiā** . . . **dēdūcī**, impelled by lack of provisions could be brought to fight on uneven terms.

**missī**, perf. part. pass. agreeing with explorātōrēs.

**penitus**, adv., deeply, far within.

**introrsus**, adv., inwards.

Point out the *ablatives absolute* in this passage.

What case is *nātiōnibus*, and why?

What kind of ablative is *infīnitā magnitūdine*?

What sort of Infinitive is *expectāre*?

Translate *inīquam pugnandī condiciōnem* literally.

*Vivā Vōce*:

1. ā quibus Caesar certior fit? 2. quibus Suēvī equitēs peditēs-que imperābant? 3. quibus rēbus adductōs barbarōs ad pugnandum posse dēdūcī existimābat? 4. quid explorātōrēs renuntiant? 5. ubi Suēvī Rōmānōs expectāre constituerant?

## LESSON 23.

*INDIRECT STATEMENT—continued.**PREDICATIVE DATIVE.*

In order to use the correct Tenses of the Infinitive, put each sentence *mentally* into the Direct form before translating.

*Latīnē vertenda :*

1. The Aeduī informed Caesar (that) they could not easily avert the enemy's violence from (their) towns.
2. The messengers reported (that) Ariovistus' forces were twenty-four miles distant.
3. We perceived (that) the enemy's forces had been drawn-up.
4. On-enquiry (*in with abl. of gerund*) he found (that) the Suēvī had betaken themselves to the forests.
5. The Rēmī denied (that) they had conspired (*consentiō. 4. -sensi*) with the rest of the Belgae, and that they were preparing war against the Roman people.
6. The ambassadors pointed-out to Caesar (that) nothing was left (*nihil with gen. of reliquus, a, um*) to them except the soil (*solum, ī, n.*) of (their) fields (*sing.*).

7. The enemy thought (that) owing-to the fewness of our-men they would fight in-safety (*lūtō*); nevertheless they considered (it) safer, (*neut. sing.*) to get (*potior. 4.*) the victory without any wounds (*sing.*).
8. The scouts reported (that) the camp was occupied (*teneō. 2.*) by a large-number of the enemy, (that) the legions were hard-pressed (*premo. 3.*) and almost surrounded, (that) the camp-followers, cavalry, and slingers were dispersed and fleeing (*say 'having been dispersed were fleeing'*) in-all-directions.
9. Caesar thinking (*pref. part. of arbitror. 1.*) (that) that war could be quickly finished-off (*conficio. 3.*), led (his) army thither.
10. The ambassadors said (that) they would take-back (*re-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum*) this-message (*say 'these-things'*), and would return to Caesar when - the - matter - had - been - deliberated (*abl. absol.*).

To see if you understand *oratio obliqua*, turn the following passage into Indirect Statement in English.

Notice carefully what changes are necessary in (a) the Pronouns, (b) the Tenses of Verbs.

'Ariovistus gave the following reply to the members of the embassy:—"If I had wanted anything of Caesar, I should have gone to him; therefore if he wants any-

thing of me, he ought to come to me. Moreover I dare not go without an army to those parts of Gaul which Caesar holds, nor can I collect an army without great exertions. Besides I question what business either Caesar or the Roman nation has in this part of Gaul, which I have conquered in fair fight.”

Turn the following into Direct Statement *in English* :—

‘Ariovistus briefly replied—that he had crossed the Rhine, not of his own accord, but because he had been invited by the Gauls; that it was not without great hopes of benefit that he had left both home and kindred; that settlements in Gaul had been granted to him by the Gauls themselves of their own free will; that by the laws of war he took the tribute which conquerors were accustomed to impose on the conquered; that he had not waged war on the Gauls, but they on him; that all the states of Gaul had come to attack him; and that he had routed and conquered them all in one engagement.’

*Note.*—In Latin *orātiō obliqua* the introductory verb of saying or telling, *etc.*, is frequently omitted, and has to be supplied from the context.

*e.g.* Iccius Remus nuntium ad Caesarem mittit: sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

*Iccius Remus sends a messenger to Caesar, (and says) that he cannot hold out any longer.*

## THE PREDICATIVE DATIVE.

The dative case of nouns is frequently used with parts of the verb *esse* (and some other verbs) in a predicative sense. In other words the noun in question serves as a predicate.

*e.g.* Ariovistī mors **magnō** erat Germānīs **dolōrī**.

*the death of Ariovistus was (for) a great grief to the Germans.*

cohortēs **praesidiō** castrīs relictæ sunt.

*cohorts were left for a protection to (to protect) the camp.*

*N.B.*—(1) The person or thing affected (*Germānīs, castrīs*) is also put in the dative case.

(2) This construction is limited in use. Only a few nouns occur at all frequently as predicative datives. The dative is never plural.

(3) Only adjectives denoting quantity can be used with predic. datives.

1. dux tertiam aciem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit.
2. omnium rerum, quæ ad bellum ūsuī sunt, summa in oppidō erat facultās.
3. duæ legiōnēs praesidiō impedimentīs relictæ sunt.
4. ea res mihi cūrac erit.
5. dux omnem equitatum suis auxiliō mīsit.
6. disciplina magnō ūsuī hominibus est.
7. ea, quæ sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs, ex Hispāniā adportārī iubet.
8. Caesar sagittāriōs et funditōrēs subsidiō oppidanīs mīsit.

Note the phrase **receptūī canere**, to sound the signal for retreat.

*Latīnē transferte :—*

1. I attended to that (say 'that thing was for-a-care to me').
2. The friendship of the Roman people was (for) an ornament (*ornāmentum*, ī, n.) and protection to conquered races.
3. The general began to get-together everything (*n. pl. of omnis*, e) which was useful (*dat. of ūsus*) for a siege.
4. Caesar sends-up (*submittō*, 3.) the cohorts to help (say 'for-a-help to') the cavalry.
5. T. Labienus seeing (*perf. part. of conspīcor*, 1.) this sent the tenth legion to help our-men.
6. He left the fourteenth legion to protect (say 'for-a-protection to') the baggage.
7. All-things were-lacking (*dē-sum*, -esse, -fui) which were useful (*as in 3*) for repairing ships (*ad with gerundive*).
8. The Roman shortness-of-stature was often an object-of-derision (say 'for a scorn,' *contemptus*, ūs, m.) to the Gauls, men (*what case?*) of great stature.



## LESSON 24.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs are those that have the word 'it' as subject, instead of a personal subject.

*e.g.* **constat.** 1., it is agreed, well known.

**praestat.** 1. (*dat.*), it is better, preferable.

**licet.** 2. (*dat.*), it is allowed.

**oportet.** 2., it behoves, is necessary, proper.

**placet.** 2. (*dat.*), it is pleasing.

**paenitet.** 2., it repents (foll. by gen. of thing repented of).

**videtur.** 2., it seems good (*perf.* visum est).

Similar expressions are **fās, nefās est**, it is right, wrong.

**necesse est**, it is necessary.

All these are followed by the accusative and Infinitive, except *praestat*, *licet*, and *placet*, which take the dative and Infinitive.

They are conjugated like other verbs of their respective Conjugations, but only in the **3rd pers. sing.**

Tense.	1st. Conj.	2nd Conj.			necesse est.
Present	constat	oportet	placet	licet	necesse est
Future	constabit	oportēbit	placēbit	licēbit	necesse erit
Imperf.	constābat	oportēbat	placēbat	licēbat	necesse erat
Perfect	coñstitit	oportuit	<div> <div>placuit</div> <div>placitum</div> <div>est</div> </div>	<div> <div>licuit</div> <div>licitum</div> <div>est</div> </div>	necesse fuit
Pres. Inf.	constāre	oportēre	placēre	licēre	necesse esse

e.g. oportet militēs imperāta facere.<sup>1</sup>

- it is proper that soldiers (should) obey commands
- (soldiers ought to, etc.).

dixit sēsē impediri nōn oportēre.

he said that he ought not to be hindered.

tibi domum redire licet.

you are allowed to (may) return home.

Note the phrase **per mē licet**, it is allowed as far as I am concerned, or for all I care.

*Latīnē reddenda :*

1. All agreed that they ought to winter (say 'it was agreed by-all (dat.) that it ought to be wintered') in Gaul.
2. The Britons did not think it-right (use *fās esse*) to taste (*gustō*, 1.) hare or hen or goose.
3. Whether is-it-better to defend the camp or seek safety in-flight?
4. The Gauls often form (*in-eō*, *-īre*) plans of which they will immediately repent (say 'of which it-will-repent them').
5. The Germans thought it wrong to do-violence-to strangers (*sing.*).
6. All said that they ought (use *oportet*) not to wait (any) longer.
7. Nevertheless the greater number (*pars*, *rtis*, f.) preferred (say 'it pleased the greater number') to await-the-course-of-events (*rēi ēventum experior*, 4.), and to defend the camp.

<sup>1</sup> Equivalent to 'militēs imperāta facere debent.'

8. It-is-better to be killed in battle (*aciēs, ēē, f.*) than not to recover (*reciperō. 1.*) our liberty.

*Verbō transferenda :*

1. id tibi per mē facere licet.
2. constābat barbarōs ad castra vēnisse.
3. dixit ad castra īrī oportēre.
4. ducem consilī suī nōn paenituit.
5. 'sī vultis' inquit 'hīc considerare, vōbis licet.'
6. illō diē frūmentum militibus mētīri oportēbat.
7. multa in silvā Hercyniā genera ferārum nascī constat.
8. dixit illī sēcum colloquī licēre.

Put sentences 3 and 8 into *ōrātiō recta*.

### LECTIŌ.

#### *Gallōrum deī.*

Gallī deum maximē Mercurium colunt. Hūius sunt plūrima simulācra, hunc omnium inventōrem artium *ferunt*, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad *quaestūs* pecūniāe mercātūrasque habērē vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Martem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum *initia*

trādere, Iovem imperium *caelestium* tenēre, Martem bella *regere*.

~~Ita~~ cum proeliō dīmicāre constituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquasque rēs in ūnum locum conferunt. Multīs in cīvītātibus hārum rērum *exstructōs* tumultōs locīs consecrātīs conspicārī licet, nequē saepe quisquam aut *capta* apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audet, gravissimumque eī rēi supplicium cum cruciātū constitūtum est.

**ferunt**, they reckon.

**quaestus**, ūs, m., acquisition.

**vim**, influence.

**initia**, beginnings, principles.

**caelestēs**, ium, m. pl., the heavenly powers.

**regō**. 3., I direct.

**exstructōs**, perf. part. pass. of *exstruō*, *q.v.*

**capta**, n. pl., things captured.

What kind of verb is *occultō*?

What tense is *cēperint*, and why?

## LESSON 25.

## IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS.

*Gerund and Gerundive in Indirect Statement.*

In many cases where English has a Personal subject Latin prefers an Impersonal subject.

e.g. 'the rival armies fought fiercely' would in Latin be rendered :

	<b>pugnātum est</b>	}
ācriter ab utrisque (utrimque)	<b>dīmīcātur</b>	
	<b>contendēbātur</b>	

(lit. 'it was fought fiercely by both (on both sides).')

eādē ratiōne quā prīdiē ab nostris **resistitur**.

*our plan of resistance was the same as on the previous day* (lit. 'it was resisted by our-men, etc.').

aegrē eō diē **sustentātum est**.

*with difficulty they held out that day* (lit. 'it was held out, etc.').

<b>nuntiātur</b>	} news is brought, it is announced.
<b>renuntiātur</b>	
<b>prōnuntiātur</b>	

<b>imperātum est</b> , it was ordered.
<b>cognitum est</b> , it was discovered.

**(per)ventum est**, they came.

1. ubi ad ripam fluminis ventum est, fugientes sese  
• praecipitare coeperunt.
2. commodissimum visum est (*v. p.* 98) aliquem  
linguae Gallicae peritum mittere.
3. circiter quindecim diebus in hiberna perventum est.
4. Caesar legationi quae visum est respondit.
5. equitum praefecti, ut erat imperatum, cohortes  
integras eduxerunt.
6. postero die ad locum ventum est egregie naturae  
atque opere munitum.
7. magno clamore ab utrisque concursus est.
8. inopia cibariorum, cui rei parum diligenter  
provisum erat, Gallis ad hoc consilium hortabatur.
9. nullo responsu dato (*abl. absol.*) hostes, ubi visum  
est, sese receperunt.
10. post diem quartum in Britanniam ventum est.

Thus :      **mihi nocētur**, I am injured.  
                  **tibi nocētur**, thou art injured.  
                  **illī (eī) nocētur**, he, she, it is injured.  
    etc.

- mihi persuādēbatur.  
nulli persuādēri potuit.  
rei frumentariae prospiciendum est.  
nobis ignoscetur.  
divitibus saepe invidēri solet.

## 'GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENT.

*Anglicē reddite :*

1. conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendi  
āmittendam nōn esse.
2. Caesar nōn expectandum sibi statuit, neque sine  
causā timendum (esse) putāvit.
3. hanc rem cōgitandam mihi ac suscipiendam putō.
4. quibus rēbus commōtus dux mātūrandum sibi  
arbitrātus est.
5. quam plūrimās nāvēs poterat aedificandās cūrāvit  
(v. p. 75).
6. dux magnopere sibi praecavendum existimāvit.
7. Caesar neque lēgātōs sibi audiendōs neque con-  
diciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābatur.
8. rēi frūmentāriae prospiciendum (esse) statuit.

Put any four of the above into *ōrātiō recta*.*Latīnē reddite :*

1. He decided (*statu-ō*. 3. -ī) that the enemy ought-  
to-be-punished.
2. They did not think that his advice ought-to-be-  
neglected.
3. He thought that he ought to conceal (*disimulō*. 1.)  
his intentions (say 'his intentions ought-to-be-  
concealed by <sup>1</sup> him').

<sup>1</sup> Remember that 'by' is translated by the dative case after the gerund and gerundive.

4. He attended-to (*cūrō*, with gerundive) the repair-~~of~~ the old (*vetus*, *eris*) ships.
5. When-the-German-war-was-concluded (*con-ficiō*, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, abl. absol.) Caesar for (*dē*, abl.) many reasons decided that he ought to cross the Rhine (say 'that the Rhine ought-to-be-crossed by him').
6. He thought that the brigadier ought not to fight (say 'it ought-not-to-be-fought by the brigadier') except (*nisi*) on-equal-terms (*aequō locō*).

In sentence 5 note that the Gerundive of (*trans*)eō is (*trans*)eundus, a, um.

Insert a suitable Impersonal verb in each of the following:

1. hostēs iter facere conārī — .
2. montis *ascensum* facilem esse — — .
3. Ariovistum ad occupandum oppidum contendere — .
4. — agmen prima luce itūrum (esse).
5. — Caesari hostium equitēs propius castra accessisse.
6. num tē factī — ?
7. sōlem ex oriente orīrī — .
8. morī quam indignitatēs perferre — .

• **ascensus**, ūs, m., ascent.

**ac-cēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, I approach. •

**factum**, ī, n., deed.

**oriens**, ntis, m., the East.

**indignitās**, ātis, f., insulting treatment.



*Verbō reddenda :*

1. ad arma concursum est.
2. prō castrīs pugnābātur.
3. as had been commanded (*imperō. 1.*).
4. thither, as had been arranged (*dicō. 3.*), they came  
to a parley.
5. ab quartā ferē hōrā usque ad sōlis occāsum  
pugnātum est.
6. ā nostrīs inīquō locō pugnārī nōn dēbuit.
7. ambassadors came to him, as had been agreed-  
upon (*constituō. 3.*).
8. subsidiō (*predic. dat.*) reliquīs venīrī nōn poterat.
9. hīc sine periculō nōn manētur.
10. consurgitur ex consiliō.

## LESSON 26.

## NOUNS.

**iūs iūrandum**,<sup>1</sup> n., *an oath*, and **senātūs consultum**, n., *a decree of the senate*, are thus declined:—

Nom and Acc.	iūs iūrandum	senātūs consultum
Gen. . . .	iūris iūrandī	„ consultī
Dat. . . .	iūrī iūrandō	„ consultō
Abl. . . .	iūre iūrandō	„ consultō

**senātūs consulta** is found in the nom. and acc. pl.

In **iūs iūrandum** both parts of the noun are declined (*cf.* **rēs publica**, First Lat. Bk., Less. 54).

**māteria, ae**, f., timber, has also 5th decl. forms in the nom. and acc. sing. **māteriēs**, **māteriem**.

**bīdum, ī**, n., a two-days space.

**trīdum, ī**, n., a three-days space.

**biennium, nī**, n., a two-years space.

1. Divitiacus sēsē iūreiūrandō tenērī negābat.
2. Caesar senātūs consultō certior factus delectum habēre instituit.
3. nostrī omnem māteriam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostēs collocābant.

<sup>1</sup> Also written, iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, etc.

4. datō iūre iūrاندō ab conciliō discēditur.
5. bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīttit.
6. Caesar magnam Germānōrum manum trīduō adfore (*ful. infin. of ad-sum*) reperīebat.
7. ipse hostibus tūtum iter sē datūrum (esse) iūre iūrاندō confirmāvit.
8. bīduō intermissō hostēs insequī coepit, et per cōrum finēs trīduī viam fēcit.
9. iamque ab Labiēnō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum (*when*) duās vēnisse legiōnēs cognoscunt.
10. quae gravissimē adflictac erant nāvēs, cārum mātēriā atque acre (*aes, aeris, n.*) ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eas rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comportārī iūbēbat.

In sentence 10 note that the relative precedes its antecedent. This is a common construction, and is used for *emphasis* or *variety*. The sentence would ordinarily be: 'mātēriā cārum nāvium ūtēbātur quae gravissimē adflictac erant.

*Quod dē-est suppeditate:*

1. diēs circ— in eō locō commorā— (*1st pers. pl. imperf. indic.*).
2. dux host— iusiūr— poposcit.
3. aliquantum itin— (*gen.*) prōgressī sum—.
4. captiv— ā victōre ignoscētur.
5. ex senāt— consult— Caesar triumphum ēgit.
6. alter alterī auxili— (*predic. dat.*) fuit.

*Latīnē vertite :*

1. The Aeduī were compelled to bind (their) state by an oath (that) they would neither claim (*re-petō*. 3. *-petīvī*, *-petitum*) their hostages, nor ask (*implōrō*. 1.) aid from the Roman people.
2. Dumnorix and Orgetorix give a pledge (*fidēs*, *ē*, *f.*) and oath to-one-another.
3. Though (*ut*) the spirit (*animus*, *ī*, *m.*) of the Gauls is eager (*alacer*, *cris*, *cre*) and ready (*promptus*, *a*, *um*) to-undertake-wars (*ad* with *gerundive* of *sus-cipiō*. 3.), yet (*ita*) their mind is weak (*mollis*, *e*) and little-resolute (*minimē resistens*) to-endure calamities (*ad* with *gerundive*).
4. Caesar in (his) 'Gallic War' says (that) there is timber of all (*quis-que*) kinds (*sing.*) in Britain except the beech and fir.
5. Amongst the Suēvī nothing is considered (*habēō*. 2.) more disgraceful or more unmanly (*iners*, *rtis*) than to use housings (*ephippium*, *pī*, *n.*).
6. For accomplishing (*ad* with *gerundive*) these things they thought (*dūcō*. 3.) two-years would be sufficient.
7. In-less (*minus*) than-three hours (*abl.*) the enemy completed a circumvallation (*mūnitio*, *ōnis*, *f.*) of 15 miles in circumference (*circuitus*, *ūs*, *m.*).
8. Then with a loud shout as-if (*sicut*) victory-were-already-won (*explōrō*. 1. *abl. absol.*), they began to bring-up (*agō*. 3.) towers and mantlets, and to climb the stockade with ladders (*scālae*, *ārum*, *f. pl.*).

## LECTIO.

*Caesar in Britanniam proficiscitur.*

Hīs rēbus gestis et Labiēnō in continente relictō, ipse ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit, et lēnī *Africō* prōvectus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō cursum nōn tenuit, et longius *dēlātus* aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rēmīs eam partem insulae *capere* cōnātus est, quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō ferē tempore, neque in eo locō hostis est vīsus, sed, *ut* postea Caesar ā captivīs cognōvit, magnae *manūs*, quae eō convēnerant, multitudīne nāvium perterritae, quae amplius octingentae ūnō erant vīsaē tempore, ā litore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

**Africus**, ī, m. (ventus), the south-west wind.

**dēlātus**, a, um (perf. part. pass. of *dē-ferō*, -tulī, -lātūm),  
carried down.

**capere**, to reach, make.

**ut**, as.

**manūs**, is the subject of *discesserant* and *abdiderant* below.

*Vivā Vōce*:

1. quis in continente relictus est? 2. quālī ventō Caesar prōvehitur? 3. quā parte noctis hīc ventus intermissus est? 4. cūr cursum tenēre nōn potuit?
5. quōmodo. tum insulam capere cōnābātur? 6. num primō hostēs vīsī sunt? 7. cūr nōn vīsī sunt?
8. quot nāvēs classī Rōmānae erant? 9. quō barbari sē abdiderant?

## LESSON 27.

## ADJECTIVES.

*Distributive Numeral Adjectives.*

singulī, ae, a, one each.	octōnī, ae, a, eight each.
binī, ae, a, two each.	novēnī, ae, a, nine each.
trīnī (ternī), <sup>1</sup> ae, a, three each.	dēnī, ae, a, ten each.
quaternī, ae, a, four each.	undēnī, ae, a, eleven each.
quīnī, ae, a, five each.	duodēnī, ae, a, twelve each.
sēnī, ae, a, six each.	vīcēnī, ae, a, twenty each.
septēnī, ae, a, seven each.	centēnī, ae, a, a hundred each.
etc.	

Distributive Numeral Adjectives answer the question ‘*How many each, or at a time?*’, and are declined like the plurals of adjs. in -us, -a, -um.

They are used instead of cardinal numbers (1) where a statement is made of an action happening more than once, (2) with nouns pl. in form but sing. in meaning:

e.g. **trīna castra**, three camps.  
**sēnae litterae**, six letters (*epistles*).<sup>2</sup>

singulīs puerīs singula pōma dedit.  
*He gave one apple to each boy.*  
hāc viā vix singulī carrī dūcī poterant.  
*scarcely one cart at a time could travel by that path.*

<sup>1</sup> For difference, v. note on p. 115.

<sup>2</sup> But **sex litterae**, six letters (*of the alphabet*).

cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant,  
milites transcendere in hostium nāvēs conten-  
dēbant,

*whenever two or three ships surrounded one, the  
soldiers would endeavour to board the enemy's  
ships.*

### *Diminutive Adjectives.*

These end usually in *-ulus, -ula, -ulum*.

*e.g. tantulus, a, um*, so small (*tantus*).

*parvulus, a, um*, very little, trifling (*parvus*).

*adulescentulus, a, um*, very young (*adulescens*).

hostēs proeliīs parvulis cum nostris contendēbant.

*The enemy were engaging in trifling skirmishes with  
our-men.*

erat magni periculi rēs tantulis cōpiis dīmīcāre.

*It was a very dangerous matter to fight with such  
small forces.*

**tantus . . . quantus**, as great . . . as.

**quantō . . . tantō**, by how much . . . by so much.

### *Anglicē reddenda :*

1. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulos lēgātōs prae-  
fēcit.
2. hostēs tantō spatiō nostrōs secūti sunt, quantum  
cursū et vīribus efficere potuerunt.
3. dux locum nōn-parvulō dētrimentō relinqui posse  
vidēbat.

4. nostrī tantam hostium multitudinem interfēcērunt,  
quāntum fuit diēi spatium.
5. Caesar quōs labōrantēs conspexerat, hīs subsidia  
• submittēbat.
6. apud Gallōs nonnulli annōs vicēnōs in disciplinā  
permanent.
7. tantum repentinī periculī acciderat quantum nōn  
• expectāverāmus.
8. Caesar quōrum operā (*means*) Tasgetium inter-  
fectum cognōverat, hōs comprehensōs ad sē  
mitti iubet.

In sentences 5 and 8 the relative is placed before the antecedent, *v. Less.* 26.

*Quod dē-est suppeditāte:*

1. hostēs locī praesid— frētī in palūd— confūgērunt.
2. hīs rēbus gest— fit Gallia paul— quiet—  
(*compar.*).
3. mult— maior alacritās exercit— (*dat.*) iniecta est.
4. quam max— manūs possunt cōgunt.
5. h— rēbus quam māturrimē occurrendum putā—.
6. Suēvī Ubiōs vectīgāl— sibi fēcēr—, ac mult—  
humili— (*compar.*) redēgērunt (*reduced*).
7. constābat (*impers.*) Bellovacōs plūr— inter  
Belgās val—.
8. Caesar Dumnorigem cupid— rērum nov—,  
cupid— imperī, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritā—  
esse cognōverat.



*Latīnē reddite :*

After-several-towns-had-been-stormed (*abl. absol.*), when Caesar saw (*say 'Caesar, when he saw'*) that all his great exertions (*sing.*) were spent in-vain, and that the enemy's flight could not be checked on-the-capture-of-their-towns (*abl. absol.*), nor they themselves injured (*say 'it be injured to them,' v. Less. 25*), he determined to await the fleet (*say 'that the fleet should-be-awaited,' gerundive, v. p. 104, sent. 2*).

When it came (*say 'which, when (it) came'*) and was first seen by the enemy, about 220 of their ships fully-equipped (*superl.*) set-out from harbour and took-up-their-position (*say, 'having set-out took up' etc.*) opposite to-our (ships).

The contest was one of (superior) valour (*say 'the contest was placed in valour'*), in-which our-men easily prevailed, and on-this-account (*cō*) the-more because the engagement took place (*say 'the matter was being carried-on'*) in the sight of Caesar and the entire (*omnis*) army, for all the hills and higher ground (*pl.*), whence there was a prospect over (*in. acc.*) the sea, were occupied (*say 'held'*) by the army.

## VOCABULARY.

I see, <i>intel-legō. 3. -lēcī, -lectum.</i>	I check, <i>re-primō. 3. -pressī, -pressum.</i>
exertion, <i>labor, -ōris. m.</i>	equipped, <i>ornātus, a, um.</i>
I spend, <i>sūm-ō. 3. -psī, -ptum.</i>	opposite, <i>adversus, a, um.</i>
	I prevail, <i>superō. 1.</i>
prospect, <i>despectus, ūs, m.</i>	

*Verbō transferenda :*

1. adolescentulō duce.
2. parvulis equestribus proeliis factis.
3. magnī ponderis saxa cōniciunt.
4. hominēs tantulac statūrac.
5. ancipitī (*anceps, ipitis*) proeliō pugnābātur.
6. Germānī ab parvulis labōrī student.
7. trīnīs hibernīs hiemāre constituit.
8. nonnullae nāvēs tempestāte dēperierant.
9. collis tantum in lātitudinem patēbat quantum loci  
aciēs instructa occupātūra erat. •
10. tantum Cassivellaunō ā Rōmānīs nocēbātur quan-  
tum militēs efficere poterant.

*Note.*—With nouns that have no singular (*e.g.* **castra**, **insidiae**, etc.), **ūnī** not **singulī**, and **trīnī** not **ternī** are used.

Thus: *ūna castra, one camp.*

*trīnae insidiae, three ambushes.*

## LESSON 28.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE  
CASE.

The prepositions given in this and the next Lesson are not a complete list, but purposely limited to some that are used *idiomatically* by Caesar. Their ordinary meanings, being by this time familiar, are not always given, nor does the list include many other familiar prepositions, *e.g.* **ante**, **contrā**, **in**, **inter**, **propter**, **a(b)**, **sub**, **sine**, *etc.*

**ad**, to, up to :

ad multam noctem, *till late in the night.*

ad numerum milium v, *to the number of 5000.*

ad unum omnēs incolumēs, *all safe to a man.*

*preceded by* **usque** :

usque ad vesperum, *until evening.*

usque ad castra hostium accessit.

**circiter**, about (*of time, not place*) :

circiter meridiem, *about midday.*

<sup>1</sup> It is suggested that in this and the next lesson pupils should learn by heart at least the shorter examples of the different meanings of the various prepositions.

as an *adv.* is more frequent.

*e.g.* circiter ccc nāvēs, *about 300 ships.*

circiter pars quarta, *about a fourth part.*

equitēs circiter quadringentōs colligit.

**citrā (cis)**, on this side of (*opposite of* **ultrā**):

citrā flūmen Ararim, *on this side of the river Arar.*

cis Rhēnum, *on this side of the Rhine.*

**ergā**, towards (*of feeling, conduct, etc.*):

perpetua ergā populum Rōmānum fidēs, *undying loyalty towards the Roman people.*

voluntās ergā Caesarem tōtius prōvinciae, *the good feeling of the whole province towards Caesar.*

**per**, on account of, for the sake of:

per mē (licet), *as far as I am concerned (you may), v. p. 99.*

cum primum per annī tempus potuit, *directly the time of year allowed him.*

**praeter**, except:

nihil vestītūs praeter peltēs, *no clothing except skins.*

praeter caput, *except the head.*

besides, in addition to:

praeter sē dēnī, *ten-each besides themselves.*

**past**, beyond:

praeter castra cōpias duxit, *he led his forces past the camp.*

**contrary to**:

praeter opiniōnem, *contrary to expectation.*

**secundum**, by, along:

secundum flūmen paucae equitum stationēs visae sunt.  
*along the river a few pickets of cavalry were seen.*

next to, after (*in rank, value*):

secundum ea, multae res eum hortabantur.  
*after this many things urged him.*

**sub**, up to (*with verbs of motion*):

sub aciem succedere, *to come up to the line.*

towards (*of time*):

sub noctem, vespertum, *towards night, evening.*

Notice the phrase **hōc (eō)** . . . **quod**, by this (*on this account*) . . . because (*namely that*):

e.g. hōc facilius quod; eō minus quod, *by this the more easily, because; on this account the less, namely that.*

hōc maiore spē quod, etc., *with the greater hope on this account, namely that, etc.*<sup>1</sup>

In translation the **hōc (eō)** is best rendered by 'the,' or omitted altogether:

e.g. id hōc facilius eis persuāsit quod . . .

*he persuaded them to this the more easily, because . . .*

eōrum fortuna quam reliquorum hōc erat miserior quod  
 soli queri nō audēbant.

*their lot was worse than (that) of the rest, inasmuch as they  
 alone dare not complain.*

<sup>1</sup> Why could it not be translated 'with this greater hope, etc.'?

*Anglicē vertite :*

1. usque ad castra hostium accessum est.
2. Germanī, quī cis Rhēnum incolunt, sēsē cum Belgis coniunxerant.
3. ea quae ūsuī erant prōvident, hōc māiōre spē quod multum (*adv.*) nātūrā locī confidēbant.
4. Menapii ad utramque ripam flūminis agrōs habēbant.
5. castra hōc erant angustiōra quod sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs transportāverat.
6. hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūsiurandum dant.
7. nostri inter sē cohortātī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt.
8. Helvētiī omne frūmentum, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt.
9. hostēs cō facilius sēsē recipiebant quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinebantur.
10. Caesar praesidium utrisque castris, quod (*rel.*) satis esse vīsum est, reliquit.
11. hostēs sub ipsōs urbis mūrōs aciem instruxērunt.
12. sex legiōnēs ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flūmē ductae sunt.
13. secundum deōs hominēs hominibus maximē utilis esse possunt.
14. tua ergā mē voluntās grātissima mihi est.

Parse *portātūrī* in sentence 8.

## LECTIÖ.

*Caesar in Britanniam contendit.*

Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castris idōneō captō, cohortibus x et equitibus ccc *praesidiō* nāvibus relictis, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit eō minus veritus *nāvibus* quod in litore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancoram relinqueret, et *praesidiō* nāvibus Q. Atrium praefecit.

Ipse noctū prōgressus milia passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās cōspicātus est.

Illī equitātū<sup>1</sup> atque cessedis<sup>1</sup> ad flūmen prōgressi ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsi ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum *nacti* ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnitum, unde *rārī* prōpugnābant nostrosque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant.

At milites legiōis septimae testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs adiectō locum cēpērunt eosque ex silvis expulērunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequi vetuit, *et* quod loci nātūrā ignōrābat, *et* quod magnā parte diēi consumptā mūnitiōni castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

*praesidiō*, predic. dat.

*rārī*, in small detachments.

*nāvibus*, for the ships (*dat.*).

*et . . . et*, both . . . and.

*nacti*, perf. part. of nanciscor, *q.v.*

Point out all the ablatives absolute in this passage.

<sup>1</sup> For explanation of this ablative, *v.* p. 234.

*Vīvā Vōce :*

1. quālem locum castrīs cēpit? 2. quā dē causā equitēs relinquit? 3. quotā hōrā in hostēs profectus est? 4. quālī in litore nāvēs relinquēbat? 5. num eīs verēbātur? 6. cūr nōn verēbātur? 7. quem nāvibus praeficit? 8. quot mīlia passuum prōgressus hostēs conspicātus est? 9. cūius legiōnis militēs hostēs ex silvīs expulērunt? 10. cūr Caesar hostēs longius prōsequī vetat?

*Quod dē-est suppedītāte :*

1. militēs fidem ergā imperāt—— conservāb——  
(*fut.*).
2. prae— mercātōrēs nēm— ad Britanniam venti-  
tābat.
3. reliquam part— exercitūs nōn expectandam  
statuit.
4. Caesar cum Ariovist— colloquī nōlēbat — magis  
quod insidiās verēb—— (*imperf.*).
5. Caesar per explōrāt—— certior —— quartam hos-  
tium part— citrā Rhēn— reliquam esse.
6. trīd— viam prōgressī rursus revert——.



## LESSON 29.

. . .  
*PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE*  
*CASE.*<sup>1</sup>

**cum**, with, to :

magnō cum suō periculō, *with great danger to himself.*

magnō cum periculō exercitūs impedimenta reliquit, *to the great danger of the army he left the baggage behind.*

**dē**, during, in the course of :

dē tertiā vigiliā, *during, in the third watch.*

Compounded with adjectives to form adverbial expressions :

dē integrō, *anew.*

eō dē improvīsō ventum est, *thither they came suddenly.*

**e(x)**, from, after :

gravius ex commutātiōne rerum dolēre.

*to grieve more heavily from a change in circumstances.*

facilia ex difficillimis, *easy from (being) difficult.*

ex calamitāte nōmen capere, *to acquire a name from a disaster.*

ex consulātū profectus est ad Galliam, *after his consulship he set out for Gaul.*

in accordance with, following :

ex consuetūdine cotīdiānā, *following his daily practice.*

ex usū<sup>\*</sup> accidere, *to happen advantageously (in accordance with profit).*

ē rēpublicā, *for the good of the State.*

<sup>1</sup> See paragraph at beginning of Lesson 28.

**in**, considering (*lit. in the midst of*):

- **in tantō imperiō populi Rōmānī**, *considering the mighty empire of the Roman people.*

**in tantā rērum iniquitāte**, *considering the disadvantages of their position.*

**prae**, compared with:

**brevitās nostra prae illōrum magnitudīne**, *our shortness of stature in comparison with their great size.*

**prō**, instead of, for:

**pellēs prō vēlīs**, *skins for sails.*

**aes prō nummō**, *bronze as money.*

**in** proportion to, according to, in comparison with:

**consilium prō tempore et prō rē capere**, *to form plans according to the time and circumstances.*

**prō multitudīne hominū**, *in comparison with their numbers.*

**prō suā clēmētiā**, *in accordance with his clemency (with his usual clemency).*

**in** return for:

**prō eius meritīs**, *in return for his services.*

**ea mūnera prō magnīs officiīs tribuī consuērāt.**

*those presents were usually bestowed in return for great services.*

**accēdit quod . . .**

In this phrase *accēdō* is used *impersonally*; *‘there came in addition (i.e. was added) this (reason), namely that . . .’*

*e.g. accessit (perf.) quod equitēs nondum redierant.*

*there was added the reason (consideration) that the cavalry had not yet returned.*

or *‘an additional reason was that,’ etc.*

or simply *‘moreover the cavalry,’ etc.*

*accēdebat hūc quod Dumnorix dixerat sibi ā Caesare regnum dēferri.*

*moreover Dumnorix had said that the crown was being offered him by Caesar.*

*Anglicē reddendu :*

1. hostium equitēs tēla cōniciunt et magnā cum contumeliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pugnam ēvocant.
2. dē quartā vigiliā ē castrīs ex-itur.
3. dux submittit cohortēs equitibus praesidiō.
4. Germānī celeriter ex consuetūdine suā phalangem fēcērunt.
5. barbarī coactīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvisō adoriuntur.
6. in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum id sibi et rēpublicae esse vīsum est.
7. nuntius, timōre perterritus, quod nōn vīderat prō vīsō (*as seen*) renuntiat.
8. id proelium nobīs ex ūsū accēdit.

9. Caesar Cicerōnem prō ēius meritō collaudat.  
 10. Helvētīi prō multitudīne hominū et prō glōriā  
 bellī angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur.

• •

*Latīnē vertite :*

A. *Connected.*—The influence of the state of the Venetī is by-far the greatest (*amplus, a, um*) of all the sea-board of those districts, because they both have very-many ships in-which they are accustomed to sail to Britain, and they surpass their neighbours (*say 'the rest'*) in-the knowledge and practice of seamanship. Moreover (*use 'accēdit quod'*) only a few harbours, which they themselves control (*say 'hold'*), are situated-at-intervals on (*in. abl.*) that violent and open sea. Accordingly they have (as) tributaries almost all (those) who are accustomed to use that sea.

With these (*i.e. the Venetī*) originated the plan (*say 'by these is made the beginning'*) of detaining the officers who had been sent (to them) by Caesar, because they thought that by-this-means (*say 'in-such a way'*) they would recover their own hostages.

#### VOCABULARY.

sea-board, <i>ōra maritima</i> , f.	situated-at-intervals, <i>inter-</i>
I surpass, <i>ante-cēdō</i> , 3. -cessī.	<i>iectus, a, um</i> .
practice, <i>ūsus, ūs</i> , m.	violent, <i>turbidus, a, um</i> .
seamanship, <i>rēs nauticae</i> , f. pl.	I detain, <i>re-tineō</i> , 2. -tinuī.
I recover, <i>reciper-ō</i> , 1. -āvī, -ātum.	

*R. Detached.*

1. Caesar marches unexpectedly into the territory of the Nervii.
2. The Venetī used (*imperf.*) skins for sails.     •     •
3. The general determined to-make-preparations-for (*parō. 1.*) war in-proportion-to the magnitude of the danger.
4. Gallic funerals, in-proportion-to (*pro*) the civilisation of the Gauls, are splendid (*magnificus, a, um*) and costly (*sumptuosus, a, um*).
5. To this was added (the consideration) that they lamented-for (*doleō. 2.*) their children torn (*abstractus, a, um*) from them in-the name of hostages.
6. Caesar with his usual clemency (say 'in-accordance-with his clemency') determined to spare the enemy.
7. Gaul (being) quiet (*abl. absol.*), Caesar set-out for (*in. acc.*) Italy to hold (*agō. 3.*) the assizes (*ad with gerundive*).
8. The Gauls perceived (that) that matter had turned-out (*ac-cidō. 3. -cidī*) not less advantageously (*ex ūsū*) for-Gaul (*gen.*) than for the Roman people (*gen.*).
9. The general thought he would send ambassadors with great danger to himself.
10. He wished this the less on-this-account namely-that he did not think he ought to fight (say 'it ought to be fought by him') in the absence of the commander-in-chief (say, 'the commander-in-chief being absent').

## LESSON 30.

## RECAPITULATORY.

1. Give the *Dat. Sing., Acc. Pl., and Gender* of  
agmen, rēmus, coniūratiō, pecus, aes, ūsus,  
frāter, iter, aestus, rēspública, Apollō (*sing. only*).  
Decline the Adjective lēnis, e in *Sing. and Pl.*
2. What is meant by a Complementary Infinitive?  
Give some verbs which are followed by such  
Infinitives.
3. Give the *Principal Parts* of vetō, audeō, conferō,  
dēpellō, caedō, poscō, versor, polliceor, prō-  
gredior, nascor, nanciscor, potior.
4. Correct this sentence—māteria comportārī coepit.
5. Write out the *Infinitive mood* (*pres., perf., and  
fut. tenses*) *active and passive* of the verbs relin-  
quō, audiō; also of the *deponent verbs* cōnor,  
sequor; and of the verb sum.
6. Give examples showing *idiomatic uses* of the fol-  
lowing *prepositions*:—ergā, sub (*acc.*) cum, prō.
7. *Latīnē transferte*:  
a forest of vast (*infīnitus, a, um*) size.  
owing-to the fewness of our-men.  
men of little (*tantulus, a, um*) stature.  
I dō not repent of my deed (*factum, ī, u.*).  
we must (*use oportet*) do what (*id quod*) is right  
(*fās*).  
I am persuaded.

eight cohorts were left to-guard (*predic. dat.*)  
the camp.

on this side of the river.

to go a three-days' march.

with a very-young man (as) general (*abl. absol.*).

after three days (*say 'the fourth day'*) they  
came (*impers.*) to Britain.

8. Give six Impersonal verbs with their meanings.

9. *What is meant by ōrātiō recta and ōrātiō obliqua?*  
*Write down a Direct statement in Latin, and*  
*then by prefixing a suitable verb turn it into an*  
*Indirect statement.*

10. *Anglicē vertenda:*

nautae, nāvem conscendite!	per mē licet.
paucis diēbus intermissis.	in rē publicā versor.
Venetī plūrimū valent.	lēnī Africō prōvectus.
eōs vectigālēs sibi fēcerant.	victōriā potīrī.
rē dēliberātā.	eō bellō confectō.
ubi eō ventum est.	

Iovem caelestium imperium tenēre putant.

11. *When are Distributive Numeral Adjectives used*  
*instead of Cardinal Numbers? Give instances.*

12. *Parse mōtum īrī, aegrē, cūrae, conspicātus, trans-*  
*eunda, iūriūrandō, nactī.*

## LESSON 31.

*THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (Introductory).*

The Subjunctive mood is so called because it is often 'subjjoined'<sup>1</sup> to a Principal verb.

This is the Dependent use of the Subj., *e.g.*

Principal verb.	Subjunctive.
orō <i>I pray (you)</i> imperāvit <i>he ordered (them)</i>	• faciās <i>do (it)</i> aedicārent <i>to build</i>

*N.B.*—The insertion of the conj. **ut** between the Principal verb and the Subj. mood is more usual (*v.* Less. 38).

The Subj. is also used Independently in various ways.

A. Jussive or Hortatory Subj. (*expressing a command*).

•  
rectē faciās, *do right (general command)*.  
hōc faciat, *let him do this*.  
nē hōc faciat, *let him not do this*.

<sup>1</sup> sub-iungō, 3. -iunxi, -iunctum.



*B. Deliberative Subj. (expressing a doubt or dilemma).*

quid faciat? *what is he to do?*

cūr nōn faceret? *why should he not do it?*

quō irem? *whither was I to go?*

This use of the Subj. may be regarded as an interrogative form of the Jussive Subj.

*C. Optative subj. (expressing a wish).*

sīs felix! *may you be happy!*

(utinam) nē fēcissēs! *would that you had not done it!*

Observe that in *A* and *C* the negative is generally **nē**, in *B* the negative is **nōn**.

Examples of the Subj. mood in English:

*Jussive.*

‘*pray* we likewise for the civil incorporation of this town!’

*Optative.*

long *live* the King! God *be* with you!

Other examples:

*were* the whole realm of nature mine (*conditional*).

if it *be* proved that he did it (*conditional*).

‘which refuseth to hear the voice of the charmer, *charm* he (=though he charms) never so wisely.’<sup>1</sup>

We shall learn later how to translate such sentences into Latin.

<sup>1</sup> These uses were common in early English.

## TYPES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1st Conj. and the verb *sum*.

Tense.	Active.	Passive.	Deponent.	Verb <i>sum</i> .
Present	laud-em <sup>1</sup>	laud-er	cōn-er	sim
	laud-ēs	laud-ēris(-ēre)	cōn-ēris(-ēre)	sis
	laud-et	laud-ētur	cōn-ētur	sit
	laud-ēmus	laud-ēmur	cōn-ēmur	simus
	laud-ētis	laud-ēmini	cōn-ēmini	sitis
	laud-ent	laud-entur	cōn-entur	sint
Imperfect	laudā-rem	laudā-rer	cōnā-rer	essem <i>or</i> forem
	laudā-rēs	laudā-rēris(-rēre)	cōnā-rēris(-rēre)	essēs <i>or</i> forēs
	laudā-ret	laudā-rētur	cōnā-rētur	esset <i>or</i> foret
	laudā-rēmus	laudā-rēmur	cōnā-rēmur	essēmus <i>or</i> forēmus
	laudā-rētis	laudā-rēmini	cōnā-rēmini	essētis <i>or</i> forētis
	laudā-rent	laudā-rentur	cōnā-rentur	essent <i>or</i> forent

<sup>1</sup> No meanings of the subj. are given here, as they would be misleading.

TYPES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—*Continued.*1st Conj. and the verb *sum*.

Tense.	Active.	Passive.	Deponent.	Verb <i>sum</i> .
Perfect	laudā-(ve)rim	laudatus, a, sim	cōnātus, a, sim	fu-erim
	laudā-(ve)ris	sīs	sīs	fu-eris
	laudā-(ve)rit	sit	sit	fu-erit
	laudā-(ve)rimus	laudāti, ae, simus	cōnātī, ae, simus	fu-erimus
	laudā-(ve)ritis	sītis	sītis	fu-eritis
	laudā-(ve)rint	sint	sint	fu-erint
Pluperf.	laudā-(vi)ssem	laudatus, a, essem	cōnātus, a, essem	fu-issem
	laudā-(vi)ssēs	essēs	essēs	fu-issēs
	laudā-(vi)ssēt	esset	esset	fu-isset
	laudā-(vi)ssēmus	laudāti, ae, essēmus	cōnātī, ae, essēmus	fu-issēmus
	laudā-(vi)ssētis	essētis	essētis	fu-issētis
	laudā-(vi)ssent	essent	essent	fu-issent

*Note* (1) the Subj. mood lacks the fut. and fut. perf. tenses. A future Subj. is seldom needed; when required it is formed by the fut. part. and the Subj. of the verb *sum*.

(2) The Subj. mood of Deponent verbs is similar to that of the Passive voices of their respective conjugations.

The Subj. mood of **possum** is as follows:

Present	pos- <b>sim</b> , pos-sīs, pos-sit, etc.
Imperfect	pos- <b>sem</b> , pos-sēs, pos-set, pōs-sēmus, pos-sētis, pos-sent.
Perfect	potu- <b>erim</b> , -eris, -erit, etc.
Pluperfect	potu- <b>issem</b> , issēs, -isset, etc.

*Conjugate*<sup>1</sup> the Subj. mood of the verbs **aedificō**, **parō**, **incitō**, **vagor**, **hortor**.

*Anglicē dicenda* :

1. Caesar Divitiacum rogat finem orandī **faciat**<sup>2</sup>  
(*pres. subj. of faciō*).
2. monuit eum omnēs suspiciōnēs **vītāret**.
3. triūnī suōs cohortantur equōs **incitent**.
4. imperāvit civitatibus frūmentum **comparārent**.
5. prōnuntiat dux nē militēs lātius **vagēntur**.

A good plan is for this to be done *orally*, first by the whole class together, then by individuals.

<sup>2</sup> Words in black type are in the Subj. mood.

6. monet dux 'vōs, militēs, in pugnandō cautī sītis.'
7. utinam hīc nōn **ad-essēs** !
8. virōs fortēs **laudēmus** !
9. cūr virōs fortēs nōn **laudārēmus** ?
10. Caesar Labiēnō mandat Rēmōs **adeat** (*pres. subj. of adeō*), Gerinānōs-que **prohibeat** (*pres. subj. of prohibeō*) sī per vim flūmen transīre **cōnentur**.

### Note on the meaning of the Subj. mood.

The Subj. mood is often translated by means of the English auxiliaries *may, might, could, would, let, can*, because the English Subj. is not in common use.

Such translations, however, are often misleading, because, *e.g.* 'he may fight' is often not **pugnet**, but **licet ei pugnāre**; 'he can do this,' **potest hōc facere**, etc.

Also Latin uses the Subj. in many places where we use the Indic., *e.g.* in Dependent clauses in *orātiō obliqua* (*v. Less. 36 and 37*); in clauses expressing purpose, result, etc. (*v. Less. 41-43*); in Indirect Questions (*v. Less. 44*), etc.

## LESSON 32.

*SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (Second, Third, and Fourth Conj.).*Subj. mood of a 2nd conj. verb, **contineō**.*Verb Stem, continē-.*

Tense.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Present	contine <sup>1</sup> -am, -ās, -at, -āmus, -ātis, -ant.
Imperfect	continē-rem, -rēs, -ret, -rēmus, -rētis, -rent.
Perfect	continu-erim, -eris, -erit, -erimus, -eritis, -erint.
Pluperfect	continu-issem, -issēs, -isset, -issēmus, -issētis, -issent.

Tense.	PASSIVE VOICE.
Present	contine <sup>1</sup> -ar, -āris(-āre), -ātur, -āmur, -āminī, -antur.
Imperfect	continē-rer, -rēris(-rēre), -rētur, -rēmur, -rēminī, -rentur.
Perfect	contentus sim, sis, sit, contentī simus, sitis, sint.
Pluperfect	contentus essem, essēs, esset, contentī essēmus, essētis, essent.

<sup>1</sup> Notice that the ē is shortened before a vowel.

' Subj. mood of 3rd, 'mixed,' and 4th conjugations.

### ACTIVE VOICE.

Tense.	3rd Conj. Stem <i>age-</i>	'Mixed' Conj. Stem <i>rapi-</i>	4th Conj. Stem <i>mūnī-</i>
Present	ag-am, -ās, etc.	rapi-am, -ās, etc.	mūni-am, -ās, etc.
Imperfect	age-rem, -rēs, etc.	rape-rem, -rēs, etc.	mūnī-rem, -rēs, etc.
Perfect	ēg-erim, -eris, etc.	rapu-erim, -eris, etc.	mūnī(v)-erim, <sup>1</sup> -eris, etc.
Pluperfect	ēg-issēm, -issēs, etc.	rapu-issēm, -issēs, etc.	mūnī(v)-issēm, <sup>1</sup> -issēs, etc.

### PASSIVE VOICE.

Tense.			
Present	ag-ar, -āris (-āre), etc.	rapi-ar, -āris (-āre), etc.	mūni-ar, -āris (-āre), etc.
Imperfect	age-rer, -rēris (-rēre), etc.	rape-rer, -rēris (-rēre), etc.	mūnī-rer, -rēris (-rēre), etc.
Perfect	actus sim, sis, etc.	raptus sim, sis, etc.	mūnītus sim, sis, etc.
Pluperfect	actus essem, essēs, etc.	raptus essem, essēs, etc.	mūnītus essem, essēs, etc.

<sup>1</sup> In the form mūnierim, mūniissem, etc., the **I** is shortened before a vowel.

*N.B.*—The Deponent verbs **patior**, suffer; **morior**, die; **gradior**, go (and its compounds *in-*, *ē-*, *prō-gredior*, etc.) are conjugated like the pass. of *rapiō*. But **potior**. 4., get possession of, and **orior**. 4., arise, vary between *rapior* and *mūnior*.

*Conjugate* the Subj. mood of the verbs **compleō**, **pellō**, **capīō**, **pūniō**, **morior**.

*Anglicē dicenda :*

1. Veneti lēgatiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt obsidēs **remittat**.<sup>1</sup>
2. Ubiī Caesarem ōrābant exercitum Rhēnum **transportāret**.
3. Caesar C. Volusēnō mandat explōrātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam-primum (*as soon as possible*) **revertātur**.
4. (Helvētīi dixērunt) Caesar **reminiscerētur** et veteris incommodī populi Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.
5. Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem (*indef.*) peditem ad colloquium Caesar **addūceret**; uter-que cum equitatū **venīret**.
6. Caesar ab Ariovistō postulāvit primum, nē quam multitudinem hominum trans Rhēnum in Galliam **trādūceret**, deinde nē obsidēs **redderet**, nēve Aeduōs **laccesseret**, nēve illis bellum **inferret** (*imperf. subj. of in-ferō*).

<sup>1</sup> Words in black type are in the Subj. mood.



' In the above sentences notice :

(1) that where the Principal verb is in the present tense, the verb in the Subj. is also in the present tense, and that where the Principal verb is in the past-perfect<sup>1</sup> or imperfect tense, the verb in the Subj. is in the imperfect tense;<sup>2</sup> (2) that the Subj. mood represents the imperative of *orātiō recta*. Thus in sent. 2 the members of the embassy said to Crassus, '*obsidēs remitte!*'; in sent. 5 Ariovistus proposed to Caesar, '*cum equitātū venī!*'

*In linguam Latīnam vertite :*

1. Let us, my friends, accept (*say 'follow'*) the protection of the Roman people!
2. Caesar writes to Labiēnus to-come (*pres. subj.*) to him(self) with a legion, and warns him to-march (*pres. subj. of iter faciō*) cautiously and carefully.
3. The enemy begged Caesar to-give (*imperf. subj.*) them three-days (*trīduī spatium*) to complete the business (*ad with gerundive*).
4. Caesar sent messengers to the Lingonēs (telling them) not to help (*imperf. subj.*) the Helvētīi with corn or other things (*sing.*).
5. If there is any (thing of) spirit (*animus, ī, m.*) in us, let-us-avenge (*persequor. 3.*) the death of those who have most-unworthily perished, and let-us-kill these traitors!

<sup>1</sup> For explanation of past-perfect, v. p. 144.

<sup>2</sup> But see also the rules for Sequence of Tenses in Less. 34.

6. Ariovistus demanded of ( $\bar{a}$ ) Caesar (that he should) either appoint (*imperf. subj.*) a day for-a conference, or send one (*aliquis*) of ( $\bar{e}$ ) his brigadiers to him(self).

In sent. 4 remember to translate the negative by **nē**, and 'or' by **nē-ve**.

### THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

is used Independently in Direct speech to express *prohibitions* in the *second* person.

*e.g. nē hōc fēcēris, do not do this.*

*nē salūtem despērāverītis, do not despair of safety.*

*nē vōs, mīlitēs, animō dēmīserītis, soldiers, do not be discouraged!*

But in *ōrātiō oblīqua* the pres. or imperf. subj. with **nē** is regularly used.

*e.g. (ōrat) nē salūtem despērent, do not (he entreats) despair of safety.*

*(dixit) nē sē animō dēmīterent, do not (he said) be discouraged.*

A commoner and less peremptory way of expressing prohibitions in prose is by

**nōlī**, *sing.*, **nōlīte**, *pl.* (*imperative of nōlō*) foll. by the Infīn.

*e.g. nōlī hōc facere, be unwilling to do this (i.e. do not do it).*

*nōlīte, liberī, falsa dicere, do not tell untruths, children.*

## LESSON 33.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF SOME IRREGULAR  
VERBS.

volō, I wish.

Present	vel-im, -īs, -it, -imus, -ītis, -int.
Imperfect	vell-em, -ēs, -et, -ēmus, -ētis, -ent.
Perfect	volu-erim, -eris, -erit, etc.
Pluperfect	volu-issem, -issēs, -isset, etc.

*Similarly, nōlō, I do not wish; mālō, I wish rather, prefer.*

Present	{ nōl-im, -īs, -it, etc. māl-im, -īs, -it, etc.
Imperfect	{ noll-em, -ēs, -et, etc. mall-em, -ēs, -et, etc.
Perfect	{ nōlu-erim, -eris, -erit, etc. mālu-erim, -eris, -erit, etc.
Pluperfect	{ nōlu-issem, -issēs, etc. mālu-issem, -issēs, etc.

eō, I go.

Present	e-am, -ās, -at, -āmus, -ātis, -ant.
Imperfect	ī-rem, -rēs, -ret, -rēmus, -rētis, -rent.
Perfect	ī(v)-erim, <sup>1</sup> -eris, -erit, etc.
Pluperfect	ī(v)-issem, <sup>1</sup> -issēs, -isset, etc.

<sup>1</sup> In the form ierim, iissem, etc., the I's shortened before a vowel.

**fiō**, I am made, become.

Present	fi-am, -ās, -at, -āmus, -ātis, -ant.
Imperfect	fi-rem, -rēs, -ret, -rēmus, -rētis, -rent.
Perfect	factus sim, sis, sit, etc.
Pluperfect	factus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

**ferō**, I carry, bring.

Present	fer-am, -ās, -at, -āmus, -ātis, -ant.
Imperfect	fer-rem, -rēs, -ret, -rēmus, -rētis, -rent.
Perfect	tul-erim, -eris, -erit, etc.
Pluperfect	tul-issem, -issēs, -isset, etc.

### PASSIVE VOICE OF **ferō**.

Tense.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Present	feror, ferris, fertur, ferimur, ferimini, feruntur	fer-ar, fer-āris, (-āre), fer-ātur, fer-āmur, fer-āminī, fer-antur
Future	fer-ar, -ēris, (-ēre), -ētur, etc.	
Imperfect	ferē-bar, -bāris, (-bāre), -bātur, etc.	fer-rer, -rēris, (-rēre), -rētur, etc.
Perfect	lātus sum, es, etc.	lātus sim, sis, etc.
Fut. Perfect	lātus erō, eris, etc.	
Pluperfect	lātus eram, erās, etc.	lātus essem, essēs, etc.
Infinitive mood	ferri ( <i>pres.</i> ); lātus esse ( <i>perf.</i> ); lātum iri ( <i>fut.</i> ).	

## LECTIŌ.

*Indutiomarī mors.*

Indutiomarus, ūnus ē Trēverōrum principibŭs, iam diŭ certāmen contrā Labiēnum, Caesaris lēgātum, sustinēbat. Iamque māiōre in diēs contemptiōne ad castra Labiēni, colloquendi aut territandi causā, accēdēbat. Equitēs eiŭs tēla cōniciunt, et magnā cum contumēliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pugnam ēvocant. Nullō ab nostris datō responsō sub vesperum discēdunt.

Subitō Labiēnus omnem equitātum ēmittit; *praecipit ūnum* omnēs peterent Indutiomarum, *neu quis quem prius vulneret quam* illum interfectum viderit; magna prōpōnit eiŭs qui occiderint praemia.

*Comprobat* hominis consilium *fortūna*, atque Indutiomarus in *ipsō* flūminis vadō dēprehensus interficitur, caputque eiŭs in castra refertur.

**praecipit**, he instructs (prae-cipiō. 3. -cēpī, -ceptum).

**ūnum**, alone, only.

**neu quis . . . quam**, and that no one was to wound any (of the enemy) until. . . .

**comprobat fortūna**, the result justifies.

**ipsō**, very, actual.

*Vivā Vōce:*

1. quis erat Indutiomarus? 2. quōmodo Rōmānōrum contemptiōnem significābat? 3. quid equitēs eius faciēbant? 4. quae praecepta Labiēnus suis dat? 5. quibus praemia prōpōnit? 6. ubi dēprehenditur Indutiomarus? 7. quō refertur caput?

• What sort of verb is *territāre*?

Explain the tense of *vīderit*, *occiderint*.

*Quod dē-est suppeditāte :*

1. tertiā vigiliā proficisc— (1st pers. pl. fut. indic.).
2. nāvēs — ancoram dēligāt— erant.
3. tua erg— mē fidēs grāt- est.
4. quam māturrinē s— proficiscendum putā—.
5. quam minimum spatī Rōmānīs ad sē armand—  
dat— est.
6. hostēs — equitātū repulsī — (fut. perf. indic.).

*Verbō reddenda :*

1. quantō cum labōre superāvimus !
2. impetus dē imprōvisō fit.
3. prō suis in eum beneficiīs.
4. propter frigora sub pellibus manētur (*impers.*).
5. rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē comparātā.
6. hōc dētrimentum vōbis, milites, aequō animō  
ferendum est.

## LESSON 34.

PRIMARY AND SECONDARY TENSES—  
SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

Of the six tenses of the Indicative mood, those that refer to present *or* future time are known as Primary; those that refer to past time are known as Secondary *or* Historic.

The Primary Tenses are :

- (1) *Present*, *ōrō*, I ask *or* am asking.
- (2) *Future*, *ōrābō*, I shall ask *or* shall be asking.
- (3) *Future Perfect*, *ōrāverō*, I shall have asked *or* shall have been asking.
- (4) *Present Perfect*,<sup>1</sup> *ōrāvī*, I have asked *or* have been asking.

The Secondary (Historic) tenses are :

- (1) *Imperfect*, *ōrābam*, I was asking *or* I asked.
- (2) *Pluperfect*, *ōrāveram*, I had asked, *or* had been asking.
- (3) *Past Perfect*,<sup>2</sup> *ōrāvī*, I asked.

*N.B.*—The form of the ‘Present’ perfect in Latin is the same as that of the ‘Past’ perfect.

<sup>1</sup> Also called the Perfect ‘with have.’

<sup>2</sup> Also called the ‘Aorist’ Perfect.

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

The time of a verb or verbs in a Dependent clause is usually assimilated to that of the Principal verb. Thus a Primary tense in the Principal clause is generally followed by a Primary tense or tenses in the Dependent clause, and a Secondary tense in the Principal clause is generally followed by a Secondary tense or tenses in the Dependent clause.

This is known as the *Sequence of Tenses*.

Primary tenses of the Subjunctive follow the present, future, future perfect, and present perfect tenses of the Indicative mood, and the Imperative mood.

Secondary tenses of the Subjunctive follow the imperfect, pluperfect, past perfect, and usually the historic present (*v. p. 146*) tenses of the Indicative mood.

## EXAMPLES OF THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

*Primary Time.*

Principal Verb.	Dependent Verb.	Meaning.
orō	faciās	<i>I ask you to do it.</i>
orābō	faciās	<i>I shall ask you to do it.</i>
orāverō	faciās	<i>I shall have asked you to do it.</i>
orāvi	faciās	<i>I have asked you to do it.</i>
orā	faciat!	<i>ask him to do it!</i>



*Secondary Tense.*

Principal Verb.	Dependent Verb.	Meaning.
ōrābam	facere	<i>I was asking (or asked) you to do it.</i>
ōrāveram	facere	<i>I had asked you to do it.</i>
ōrāvī	facere	<i>I asked you to do it.</i>

*Historic Present.*

The pres. Indic., used in narrative for vividness instead of the past perf., is generally followed by a secondary tense of the Subj.

*e.g.* praecipit omnes **peterent** Indutiomarum (Less. 33).  
*he instructs (i.e. instructed) all to make for*  
*Indutiomarus.*

monent nē sē **despiceret**.

*they warn (i.e. warned) him not to despise them.*

The rules for the Sequence of Tenses apply, with modifications which will be duly noted, to all kinds of Dependent Clauses (Final, Consecutive, etc.), to the subj. in *orātiō obliqua*, Indirect Questions, etc.

*Latīnē reddite :*

1. After the death of Orgetorix (-igis, m.) the Helvētīī none-the-less try to do what (*id quod*) they had resolved-on, (namely) to-leave (say 'that (ut) they may leave') their territory.
2. They persuade their neighbours to set-out (say 'that (ut) they may set-out') along-with them.

3. The road was so narrow and difficult that (*ut*) scarcely one cart at-a-time (*v. Less. 27*) could-be-pulled (*imperf. subj. pass. of dūcō. 3*).
4. Duinnorix persuaded the Sēquanī to-allow (*as in sent. 1 and 2*) the Helvētīi to go through their territory, and to exchange hostages.
5. He exhorted the soldiers to-remember (*as in sent. 1, 2, and 4*) their former valour, and-not (*nēve*) to-be-disturbed.
6. The general will have ordered the troops not-to (*nē*) plunder on the march.
7. The German women began with outstretched hands to implore their husbands (*vir, ī, m.*) not-to (*nē*) deliver them to the Romans.
8. Caesar commanded (*hist. pres.*) Volusēnus to return to him as-soon-as-possible, when he had examined (*explōrō. 1*) everything (*say 'all things having been examined'*).
9. Urge-on (your) horses, cavalry, in-order-that (*ut*) you may overtake the fugitives.
10. The leaders of the natives had proclaimed (*prō-nuntiō. 1*) that-no-one (*nē quis*) should leave his place.

## LECTIO.

• *Rōmānī Gergovium oppugnant.*

Consecūtus id quod animō prōposuerat Caesar receptū canī, tōtiusque exercitūs signa constitutū iussit. Legiōnis decimae milītēs quod iussī sunt faciunt; at reliquārum legiōnum milītēs, nōn exauditō sonō tubae,

'quod satis magna vallēs intercēdēbat, tamen 'ab tribūnīs militum lēgātisque, ut erat ā Caesare praeceptum, *retinēbantur*. Sed elātī spē celeris victōriæ et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundīs proeliis, nihil adeō arduum sibi esse existimāvērunt quod nōn virtūte consequī possent, neque finem *prius* sequendī fēcērunt *quam* mūrō oppidī portisque appropinquārunt. Tum vērō ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clamōre, quī longius aberant repentinō tumultū perterritī, *cum* hostem intrā portās esse existimārent, sēsē ex oppidō eiēcērunt. Matrēs familiae dē mūrō vestem argentumque iactābant, et pectore nūdō prōminentēs passīs manibus obtestābantur Rōmānōs ut sibi parcerent *neu* mulieribus atque infantibus nocērent: nonnullae dē mūrō per *manūs* dēmissae sēsē militibus trādēbant.

**receptui canere**, *v.* Less. 23.

**signa constituere**, to halt (lit. 'to pitch standards').

**retinēbantur**, the imperf. tense here expresses endeavour.

'The officers were trying to restrain the men, but . . .'

**prius . . . quam**, until (often written as one word—*priusquam*).

**cum**, as, because.

**neu**, and not (= *nēve*).

**manūs**, *sc.* amīcōrum.

What would be the longer form of *appropinquārunt* in l. 7 above?

## LESSON 35.

## • THE LOCATIVE CASE—PLACE AND TIME.

## THE LOCATIVE CASE.

The mother language from which Latin was derived had a special case for denoting position (*locus*) in place or time.

This case ended in *-ī* and was called the Locative. Relics of it survive in the words **domī**, at home; **herī**, yesterday; **vesperī**, in the evening; and possibly **ibi**, there; **ubi**? where?

In Classical Latin the locative often looks like a genitive, dative, or ablative; and the ablative is often used instead.

*Rule.* In the 1st and 2nd declensions the locative, looking like the genitive, is used for names of Towns in the sing.; the ablative is used for names of Towns in the pl. In the 3rd decl. the dat. and abl. cases are used for names of Towns both in the sing. and pl.

*e.g.* 1st decl. **Rōmae**,<sup>1</sup> at Rome (*sing.*); **Athēnīs**, at Athens (*pl.*).

2nd decl. **Corinthī**, at Corinth (*sing.*); **Philippīs**,  
• • at Philippi (*pl.*).

3rd decl. **Karthāginī**, or **-e**, at Carthage (*sing.*).  
**Gādibūs**, at Gādēs (*Cádiz*) (*pl.*)

Of 4th decl. nouns no locative is found.

<sup>1</sup> Originally Rōmāi.

\* In the 5th decl. the locative ends in **-ē**, *e.g.* **hodiē**, to-day; **postrīdiē**, the next day; **prīdiē**, the day before.

The following are common locatival phrases: -

**humī**, on the ground.

**belli, militiae**, at the war (*opp. to domū*).

**rūri**, in the country (*rūs, rūris*, n.).

**terrā marique**, by land and sea.

**foris**, out of doors.

### PLACE.

#### Place where

is denoted (a) by the ablative with the preposition **in**.

*e.g.* is **vīcus in valle positus est**.

*that village lay in a valley.*

**dum haec in Venetis geruntur**.

*while this was going on among the Venetī.*

**hostēs in insidiis latēbant**.

*the enemy were lying-hid in ambush.*

(b) by the ablative without a preposition.

(1) frequently with nouns which are qualified by adjectives.

*e.g.* **Britannī nōtissimīs locīs pugnābant**.

*the Britons were fighting in places very familiar to them.*

**apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs constituit**.

*he drew up the ships on an open and level shore.*

regularly, when **tōtus** is used.

*e.g.* **tōtis trepidātur castris**.

*the whole camp was in a state of confusion.*<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Literally, 'it was agitated (*impers.*) in the entire camp.'

exsulēs tōtā Galliā conveniēbant.

*exiles throughout Gaul were assembling.*

(2) common in Caesar with the verb *contineō*.

*e.g.* dux exercitum castrīs, vallō continuit.

*the general kept his army in camp, within the stockade.*

(3) This ablative is also found of physical attributes.

*e.g.* animō perturbor, *I am disturbed in mind.*

(c) by the locative of names of Towns (v. p. 149).

Corcȳrae, *at Corcȳra*; Brundisī,<sup>1</sup> *at Brindisi*, etc.

### Place whither (*to where*)

is denoted by the accusative with a preposition.

*e.g.* Caesar ad Galliam proficiscitur.

•Rhēnus in mare influit.

Alexander in Aegyptum pervēnit.

*N.B.*—*ad*, as opp. to *in*, means ‘towards,’ as opp. to ‘right into.’  
ad Galliam, *to the frontier of Gaul*; in Galliam, *to some place in Gaul*.

### Exceptions.

Names of towns, small islands, and the words **domum**, *to home, homewards*; and **rūs**, *to the country*, are not preceded by a preposition.

*e.g.* Capuam, *to Capua (town)*; Minturnās, *to Minturnae (town)*; Dēlum, *to Dēlos (small island)*.

<sup>1</sup> Or Brundisiū. The loc. of nouns in -ium varies.

**Place whence** (*from where*)

is denoted by the ablative with a preposition, except in the words given in the exceptions to 'place whither.'

*e.g.* ex Asiā transīs in Eurōpam.

*from Asia you cross into Europe.*

*but* Chiō profectī diē quartō Corinthum pervēnimus.

*We reached Corinth on the fourth day after leaving Chios (small island).*

also **domō**, *from home*; **rūre** *from the country*.

*N.B.*—Where towns or small islands are preceded by prepositions, *e.g.* **ad**, **apud**, **ex**, the preposition means 'to, in, or from the neighbourhood of.'

**Extent of space**

is put in the accusative case.

*e.g.* fossa quindecim pedēs lata, *a trench 15 feet broad.*

circiter milia passuum quattuor prōgressus est.

*he advanced about four miles.*

**TIME.**

**Duration of Time**

is expressed by the accusative case.

*e.g.* complūrēs annōs Rōmac habitābam.

*I lived at Rome for several years.*

diēs continuōs quinque Caesar cōpiās ēduxit.

**Time at which** (*point of Time*)

is expressed by the ablative case.

*e.g.* primā lūce, *at dawn*; sōlis occāsū, *at sunset*.

*secundā vigiliā ē castris ēgressi sumus.*

*Latīnē dīcēnda :*

1. Queen Victoria died (*ē vitā ex-cēdō*. 3. -*cessī*) aged 81  
• years.
2. About midnight a letter was brought (*dē-ferō*,  
*ferre*, -*tulī*, -*lātum*) to Caesar.
3. Periclēs ruled (*prae-sum*) Athens (*dat.*) for 40  
• years.
4. The enemy do not keep themselves in-their position.
5. Shouts (*sing.*) arose (*imperf.*) throughout-the entire  
town.
6. The leader of the Britons concealed (*occultō*. 1.)  
himself in-places woody and difficult-of-passage  
(*impeditus*, *a*, *um*).
7. Some (writers) have written (that) in Britain at-  
the-time-of (*sub. abl.*) the winter-solstice (*brūma*,  
*ae*, *f*.) there is night for 30 days in-succession  
(*continuus*, *a*, *um*).
8. Horātius, the famous poet, once (*olim*) journeyed  
from Rome to Brundisium with a friend. From  
Rome they went first to Arīcia (*ae*, *f*.), from  
Arīcia to Forum Appī, thence (*inde*) to Anxur  
(-*uris*, *m*.), from Anxur to Formiae (-*arum*, *f*.),  
from Formiae to Capua, thence to Caudium, from  
Caudium to Beneventum, from Beneventum to  
Canusum, thence to Rubī (-*orum*, *m*.), from Rubī  
to Brundisium.



## LESSON 36.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

IN *orātiō obliqua*.

As a general rule the Subj. is used instead of the Indic. in Subordinate clauses in *orātiō obliqua*.

The rules for the Sequence of Tenses apply; a Primary tense of the subj. being used if the tense of the indic. is Primary, and a Secondary if Secondary.

*e.g.* reperiēbat montēs, quī **impendērent**, ab hostibus tenērī.

*he found out that the mountains, which overshadowed, were held by the enemy.*

(*orātiō recta*, impendent).

certior factus est eōs, quī nūper sē **dēdidissent**, iterum inter sē coniūrāre.

*he was informed that those who had recently surrendered were again conspiring together.*

(*orātiō recta*, dēdidērunt).

The Indicative is used when the *fact* is emphasised.

*e.g.* Labiēnō scribit ut eis legiōnibus, quae **sunt** apud eum, nāvēs instituat.

*he writes to Labienus to prepare ships with those legions that are with him.*

*N.B.*—Sometimes the actual tense of the Indic. in the *recta* is kept in the Subj. of the *obliqua*, in spite of the rules. In the subjoined instances 1, 3, and 5 are general truths; 2 and 4 are graphic.

*Anglicē reddenda:*

1. cognōvit Germānōs, quī eis Rhēnum **incolant**, dēfēcisse.
2. dixit eis licēre, quascumque in partēs **velint**, proficisci.
3. dixit consuesse deōs immortālēs secundiōrēs interdum rēs eis concēdere quōs **velint**.
4. hīs dux respondit licēre, sī **velint**, in Ubiōrum finibus considere, quōrum **sint** lēgātī apud se et ā sē auxilium **petant**.
5. dēmonstrat Caesar vērū (*proper*) nōn esse cōs, quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn **potuerint**, aliēnōs occupāre.
6. speculātōrēs Caesarī renuntiāverunt pulverem, māiōrem quam consuētūdō **ferret**, in eā partē vidērī in quam legiō iter **fēcisset**.

*Quod dē-est suppedītate:*

1. reperiēbat Gallōs, quī ea loca incol—, ā Belg— **expulsōs** esse.
2. mōs est Suēvōrum mercātōr— vendere ea quae bell— cōp— (*perf. indic.*).
3. animum advertit dux magn— hostium cōpi— **instructās** esse.

4. hōc proeliō Nerviōrum gens prope ad interneci—  
redact— est (*red-igō. 3. -ēgī, -actum*).
5. ab eō loc— circiter milia pass— septem prōgress—  
sumus.
6. Caesar quōrum oper— lēgātum interfect— esse  
sciēbat eōs comprehend— iussit (*rel. before its  
antecedent*).

*Verbō reddite :*

1. omnēs sanctissimō iūreiurandō adactī sunt  
(*adigō. 3*).
2. consilia dē bellō in-cantur !
3. omnia in virtūte posita existimārent !
4. Rhodanus nonnullis locīs vadō trans-itur.
5. circum-itis hostium castris.

Note in sent. 2, 4, 5, that **eō**<sup>1</sup> and its compounds can be used in the passive voice.

### LECTIŌ.

*Ambiorix victōriā sublātus Nerviōs sollicitat.*

*Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorix statim cum equitatū in Aduātucōs, quī erant eius regnō finitimī, proficiscitur ; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditātumque subsequī iubet. Aduātucis concitātis posterō diē in Nerviōs pervēnit, hortāturque nē suī in perpetuum liberandī atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs prō eis, quas*

<sup>1</sup> Only impersonally, e.g. *itur, ibātur, irētur, irī, itum*.

accēperint, iniuriis occāsiōnem *dimittant*: lēgātōs duōs interfectōs esse magnamque partem exercitūs *interisse* dēmonstrat; nihil esse *negōtī* subitō oppressam legiōnem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interficī; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem.

Facile hāc orātiōne Nervius persuādet.

**victōriā**, the one referred to was that gained by Ambiorix, one of the chiefs of the Eburōnēs, over two of Caesar's *lēgātī*.

**nē . . . dimittant**, not to let slip.

**interisse**, for *interisse* perf. infin. act. of *inter-eō*, -ire, -iī.

**negōtium**, tī, n., difficulty, trouble.

**adiūtōr**, ōris, m., helper.

Put from *lēgātōs duōs . . . adiūtōrem* into *orātiō recta*.

Explain why *accēperint* and *hiemet* are in the subj. mood.

*Vivā Vöce*:

1. quōrum Ambiorix princeps erat? 2. quibus verbis ūsus Nervius incitat? 3. quot legiōnēs cum Cicerōne hiemābant? 4. quā ratiōne (*plan*) ūsus Ambiorix eum superāre in-animō-habēbat (*intended*)?

## LESSON 37.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

IN *orātiō obliqua*—(continued).

After Secondary tenses of the Indic. the pluperf. Subj. in *orātiō obliqua* regularly represents the fut. perf. Indic. of *orātiō recta*.

e.g. *polliciti sunt quae imperasset factūrōs esse.*

*they promised to do what he ordered.*

(*recta*, faciemus quae imperāveris.)

*barbarōrum ducēs dixerunt illis reservātum iri quaecumque Rōmāni reliquissent.*

*the leaders of the natives said that whatever the Romans left would be reserved for them.*

(*recta*, vōbīs reservābuntur quaecumque . . . relīquerint.)

*dicīt<sup>1</sup> sē eōs hostium numerō habitūrum, nisi iussa fēcissent.*

*he says he will treat them as enemies if they do not obey his orders.*

(*recta*, egō vōs . . . habebō, nisi fēceritis.)

After Primary tenses of the Indic. the perf. Subj. is used.

e.g. *nisi obsidēs dederint, sēsē cīvitātem bellō persecūtūrum dēmonstrat.*

*he points out that unless they give hostages, he will make war on their state.*

(*recta*, nisi obsidēs dederitis . . . persequar.)

<sup>1</sup> Historic Present.

*Latīnē reddite:*

The Gallic race (*genus, eris, n.*) is (one) of great ingenuity, and very-ready (*aptus, a, um*) at-imitating (*ad* with *gerundive*) and making anything (*n. pl. of omnis, e*) which is imparted by-anybody (*ā quōque*). Accordingly they undermined our outwork the more skilfully because (*r. Less. 28*) there are large iron-mines in-their-country (*apud eos*), and every kind of mine (*pl.*) is known and familiar (to them). Moreover they had furnished the entire wall with towers in all directions, and had covered them with hides. Then by frequent sorties day (*adj.*) and night (*adj.*) they were either setting-fire-to the outwork or attacking the soldiers engaged in (*in. abl.*) the work (*opus, eris, n.*). In-addition (*praeterea*) they delayed (the completion of) our mines by (thrusting in) stakes burnt and sharpened at the ends, and by melted pitch and by stones of great weight.

## VOCABULARY.

ingenuity, *sollertia, ae. f.*

I impart, *trā-dō. 3. -didī, -ditum.*

I undermine, *cunīculis sub-trahō. 3. -traxī, -tractum.*

skilfully, *scienter (compar. -ius).*

familiar, *ūsitātus, a, um.*

I furnish (with boards), *contabulō. 1.*

in all directions, *ex omni parte.*

burnt at the ends, *praeustus, a, um* } note the force of  
sharpened . . . *praeacūtus, a, um* } the *prae.*

*Anglicē reddite:*

## Direct Speech.

## Indirect Speech.

Helvētiōrum lēgātī cum  
Caesare agunt:

- (1) sī pācem populus Rō-  
mānus cum Helvētiīs  
faciet, in eam partem  
ībunt atque ibi erunt  
Helvētiī ubi eōs tū  
constitueris atque esse  
volueris: \*

- (2) sin bellō persequi per-  
sevērābis reminiscere  
(*2nd sing. imperative of  
reminiscor*) et veteris  
incommodi populī Rō-  
mānī et pristinae vir-  
tūtis Helvētiōrum:

- (3) quod (*as to the fact that*)  
imprōvisō ūnum pāgum  
adortus es, nē ob eam  
rem aut tuae virtutī  
magnopere tribueris  
aut nōs despexeris:

- (4) (nōs) ita ā patribus  
didicimus ut (*that*)  
magis virtūte quam  
dolō contendāmus.

Helvētiōrum lēgātī cum  
Caesare ēgērunt:

- (1) sī pācem populus Rō-  
mānus cum Helvētiīs  
faceret, in eam partem  
itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs  
Helvētiōs ubi eōs  
Caesar constituisset  
atque esse voluisset:

- (2) sin bellō persequi per-  
sevērāret, reminiscerē-  
tur et veteris . . .  
Helvētiōrum:

- (3) quod imprōvisō ūnum  
pāgum adortus esset,  
nē ob eam rem . . .  
tribueret, aut ipsōs  
despiceret:

- (4) sē ita . . . didicisse ut  
magis virtūte  
contenderent.

Carefully compare the two forms of the above passage and note the changes in mood and tense.

Point out two fut. perf. tenses in the indic. which are represented in *orātiō obliqua* by the pluperf. subj.

*Quod dē-est suppeditāte :*

1. eō quam frequent—— (*superl. of frequens*) con-  
venerunt.
2. —— noctem nāvēs solvit.
3. circum oppid—— trin—— hibernis hiemāre con-  
stit——.
4. quis libertāt—— (*acc.*) quam serviꝝ—— condiōnēs  
nōn mallet ?
5. negat sē iter per fin—— suos dat—— (*fut. infin.  
act. of dō*).
6. (imperāvit) si sē interfic—— nollent, arma pōn——.
7. omnem sp—— salutis in celeritāt—— positam  
existim—— ! (*2nd pl. imper. act.*).
8. Galba militēs certiōr—— facit sē ex labōre refic——  
(*imperf. subj. act.*), post dat—— sign—— (*abl. absol.*)  
ē castr—— erump—— (*imperf. subj. act.*).



## LESSON 38.

## INDIRECT COMMAND AND PETITION.

*General Rule :*

Verbs of *commanding, asking, beseeching, advising, persuading* and the like, are followed by **ut(i)** (*affirmative*), **nē** (*negative*) with the subjunctive.

## Such are :

<b>ōrō.</b> 1., I ask, beg.	<b>imperō.</b> 1., I command ( <i>dat.</i> ).
<b>rogō.</b> 1., I ask ( <i>a question</i> ).	<b>mandō.</b> 1., I order ( <i>dat.</i> ).
<b>petō.</b> 3., I beseech.	<b>cōgō.</b> 3., I compel.
<b>postulō.</b> 1., I demand.	<b>moneō.</b> 2., I advise. ,
<b>impetrō.</b> 1., I obtain ( <i>by asking</i> ).	<b>hortor, cohortor.</b> 1., I encourage.
<b>persuādeō.</b> 2., I persuade, advise ( <i>dat.</i> ).	

The above are very common and should be learnt by heart. **cōgō** often takes the acc. and infin., as **iubeō** always does,

*e.g. iubeō tē hōc facere,*  
*but imperō tibi ut hōc faciās.*

*Note.*—(1) The rules for Sequence of Tenses apply in all cases.

(2) **ut(i)** is sometimes omitted, especially after **ōrō**, **rogō**, **moneō** (*v. Less. 31, 34*).

*Anglicē transferte :*

1. Caesar lēgātis imperāvit ut quam plūrimās possent  
• nāvēs aedificārent.
2. dux prōnuntiārī iussit nē quis ab locō discēderet.
3. postulāvit Ariovistus nē Caesar bellum Aeduīs  
inferret.
4. lēgātum, ad eum mittit rogātum ut sibi militibus-  
que parcat.
5. Britannī ā Caesare ut sibi ignosecret petiērunt.
6. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātur ut suōs  
magnīs praemiīs excitent. •
7. Ambiorix Sabinum monet et ōrat ut suae ac  
militum salūtī consulat.
8. Caesar Cassivellaunō, Britannōrum ducī, imperat  
nē sociīs noceat.
9. Nervii finitimīs suis persuāserant ut eandem bellī  
fortūnam experīrentur.
10. hostium lēgātī ā Caesare impetrāvērunt ut sibi  
agrisque suis parceret.
11. Caesar per litterās Trebōniō mandāverat nē per  
vim oppidum expugnārī paterētur.
12. dux Nervii imperābit ut maiōrēs nātū mulieres-  
que ab iniuriā prohibeant.

*Latīnē reddenda :*

1. The enemy beseech Caesar to use clemency towards them.
2. The general ordered (*mandō*. 1.) the spies to find-out Ariovistus' plans, and to report (*referō*) them to him.
3. They could not be persuaded (*v.* Less. 25) to delay (any) longer.
4. The Helvētīi thought (that) they would forcibly (*per vim*) compel the Allobrogēs to suffer them to go through their territory.
5. The general will encourage his soldiers to fight bravely.
6. The Aeduī ask (*petō ā*) Vercingetorix (*-igis, m.*) to impart (to them) the plans of campaign (*bellum gerendum*).
7. Caesar saw that the Germans were with-difficulty persuaded (*impellō*. 3.) not to come into Gaul.
8. They earnestly (*magnopere*) besought him not to advance (any) further.

*LECTIŌ.*

*Orgetorix Helvētīs, ut ē finibus suis exeat, persuādet.*

Apud Helvētīos longē nōbilissimus fuit et vītissimus Orgetorix. • Is, M. Messallā et M. Pūpiō Pisōne consulibus, regnī cupīditāte *inductus* cīvitatī persuāsīt ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: (dixit) *perfacile* esse tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī.

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētīi continentur.

Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent. Prō multitūdine autem hominum finēs eōrum angustōs esse dēmonstrāvit.

Hīs et tālibus *rationibus* adductī finēs suōs relinquere statuērunt. •Orgetorix dux dēlectus Casticō Sēquanō persuādet ut regnum in cīvitatē suā occupāret, *itemque* Dumnorigī Aeduō (persuādet) ut idem cōnārētur.

**dītissimus**, superl. of dīs (dīves), rich.

**inductus**, tempted (usually in a bad sense, as opp. to adductus).

**ratiō, ōnis**, f., reason.

**item**, also, besides.

**Dumnorigī**, the nom. is Dumnorix.

What word shows that *persuādet* in l. 14 is historic present?

## LESSON 39.

*QUĪN AND QUŌMINUS followed by the Subjunctive.*

The word **quīn** has two uses :

- (1) An interrogative and a negative = *why not?*

*e.g. quīn conscendimus equōs?*

*why not mount our horses?*

It then becomes a mere conjunction, as **quīn etiam**, *moreover, nay even.*

- (2) A relative and a negative, used in the meaning of 'who not,' 'but,' 'that,' 'but that,' 'without,' etc., after

- (a) negatives, *e.g. nēmō, nihil, nullus*; quasi-negatives,

*e.g. vix*, scarcely; or questions equivalent to a negative.

- (b) negative<sup>1</sup> clauses of doubt or hesitation\* (**nōn dubitō, nīl dubium est, dubitārī nōn potest**); or hindrance (**nōn retineō, nōn dēterreō**); or refusal (**nōn recūsō**); or waiting (**nōn expectō**).

- (c) such phrases as **nōn longē abest**, it is not far from (*always impers.*); **facere nōn possum**, I cannot help.

*e.g. nēmō est quīn hōc sciat.*

*there is no one who does not know this (here*

*quīn = quī nōn.<sup>2</sup>)*

<sup>1</sup> After affirmative clauses the Infin. is used.

<sup>2</sup> **quīn** = **quae non**, or **quod non** is less common

*e.g. nulla erat civitās quīn (= quae nōn) Caesarī pārēret.*

quis v~~est~~rum est **quĭn** amīcō succurreret?

*who is there of you who would not help a friend?*

facere nōn potui **quĭn** ad tē scriberem.

*I could not help writing to you.*

*Anglicē vertite :*

1. dixit nīl esse dubium quĭn tōtīus Galliae Helvētīi  
plūrimū possent.
2. Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō quĭn  
ipse sibi mortem consciverit (*consciscō*. 3.)
3. nīl dubium erat quĭn dē captīvīs hostēs grav-  
issimum supplicium sūmerent.
4. Germānī retinērī nōn poterant quĭn in nostrōs tēla  
cōnicerent.
5. dux dubitandum sibi nōn existimābat quĭn ad  
hostēs proficiscerētur.
6. nōn longē aberat quĭn nāvēs parātae essent.

**quōminus**, *from* (= **ut eō minus**, *in order that by this the less*, v. Less. 42) is used after verbs of refusing, or hindrance (**recūsō**, **impediō**, **prohibeō** etc.).

e.g. nōn recūsāmus **quōminus** sub imperiō populī  
Rōmānī sīmus.

*we do not refuse to be (lit. 'by which the less we may be') under the sway of the Roman  
• people.*

nāvēs ventō tenēbantur **quōminus** in portum  
venīre possent.

*the ships were kept by the wind from making  
harbour.*

*Latīnē vertenda :*

1. In this crisis no-one was so brave that-he-was-not (*quīn*) frightened.
2. The mere thought (*expectātiō*, f.) of death cannot hinder men from (*quōminus*) rushing (*irrupō*, 3.) bravely on (their) foes.
3. He said that it could not be doubted that (*quīn*), if they were conquered (*what tense and mood?*), they would lose (*āmittō*, 3) their liberty.
4. Who would-refuse (*imperf. subj.*) to (*quōminus*) die for his country?
5. The war-ships were nearly ready for launching (say 'it was not far (multum) distant but-that the war-ships could be launched').
6. We do not refuse to (*quīn*) fight (*armīs contendō*, 3) if we are attacked (*pres. subj.*).
7. When news of this battle arrived (say 'this battle having been heard') the greater part of Aquitania voluntarily (*ultrō*) sent hostages to the conqueror.
8. He could not prevent (*dēterr-eō*, 2. -*vi*) his friend from (*quīn*) facing (*sub-eō*, -*ire*, -*ī*) the danger along with him.

*Quod dē-est suppeditāte:*

1. eōs hortātus est — in eā sententiā perman——.
2. nilīl in agrīs frūment— erat quīn succ-  
(3rd sing. pluperf. subj. pass. of succīdō).
3. respondērunt militēs sēsē nōn recūs— quōminus  
sum— pericul— occur—.
4. quid t— impediit quōm—— ad mē venī——?
5. milit—— persuādē— (fut. indic. act.) utī arma  
capi— et in hostēs contend——.
6. pax exspect—— (gerundive) nōn est ab eīs qu—  
ultrō bellum inferunt.
7. nēmō in oppid— fuit quīn vulner—— ess—.
8. dīcebant omnēs exspectā— diūtius nōn oportēre  
qu— ad castra irē— (3rd sing. imperf. subj.  
pass. of eō).

*Note.*—The Infin. is often used (instead of the *quōminus* constr.) after verbs of refusing or hindrance.

*e.g.* Belgae Cimbrōs intrā finēs suōs *ingredī* prohibuērunt.

hostēs nostrōs nāvibus *ēgredi* prohibent.

quid est quod hōc fieri impediāt?

quis prō patriā mori recūsāret? (*cf.* sent. 4, p. 168).



## LESSON 40.

## RECAPITULATORY.

1. *Decline in Sing. and Pl. princeps, nōbilis, hōmo.*
2. *Give the Acc. Sing., Gen. Pl., Gender, and Meaning of contumēlia, nāvis, prae'mium, fremitus, eques, mons, numerus, mōs, commeātus.*
3. *How is the perf. subj. used in Independent clauses?*
4. *Give the 3rd pers. sing. and 2nd pers. pl. of the imperf. subj. act. of postulō, cō, lacessō, and nōlō, and give in full (either orally or on paper) the pres. subj. pass. of amittō, ferō; and the pluperf. subj. of colloquor and reminiscor.*
5. *How many kinds of Independent uses of the subj. do you know? Give an instance of each.*
6. *Give the Principal Parts of deferō, reperiō, dēdō, scribō, ulciscor, intereō, adoriō, irrumpō.*
7. *Give the rules for expressing Place Whither, and Place Whence. What exceptions are there?*
8. *Give an example of the use of (1) the supine in -ū; (2) quōminus; (3) paenitet; (4) a verb governing the dat. in the act. being used impersonally in the pass.*

9. *Anglicè transferte:*

quam primum.	cis Rhenum.
omnibus rebus comparatis.	in animo habere.
omnes ad ripam Rhodani	nolite id facere!
convenient!	
territandi causam.	quina castra.
domi militiaeque.	plurimum posse.

 10. *What is meant by (a) the Sequence of Tenses;  
(b) the historic present?*

 11. *Latine reddite:*

1. Cicero replied that they must send hostages.
2. The Germans said they could be useful friends to the Romans, if they (*illi*) wished-for (*pres. subj. of volo*) (their) friendship.
3. The general ordered that provisions should be brought without delay.
4. They suffered-to-elapse (*inter-mittō*. 3. -*mīsī*) no time throughout (*say 'of'*) the whole winter without (*quā*) stirring-up the states, promising money (*pl.*), (and) sending ambassadors across the Rhine.

 12. *Account for the oblique cases in*

1. Gādibus annos quinque habitābam.
2. Capua Rōmā milia passuum circiter cxx abest.
3. vĕre agrōs arāmus.

 13. *Parse nollet, mallētis, potuerit, ferris, circumitīs.*

## LESSON 41.

## FINAL CLAUSES.

Clauses expressing **purpose or intention** (Lat. *fīnis*, *is*, *m.*, *an aim*) are expressed in various ways.

- (a) by the supine in *-um* after verbs of motion,  
v. Less. 8.
- (b) by the gerundive with *ad*, *causā*, v. Less. 18 and 19.
- (c) less frequently by the gerund with *ad*, *causā*,  
v. Less. 17.
- (d) by **ut**(ī), *that, in order that* (affirmative), **nē**, *in order that not, lest* (negative), and by **relative pronouns** and **relative adverbs**, all foll. by the Subj.

It is of (d) that this Lesson and the next treat.

e.g. *fabrōs praemittit* { ut  
quī *mūrōs subruant.*

*he sends forward engineers to (in order that they may) undermine the walls.*

*mulierēs cum implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem trāderet.*

*the women implored him not to (in order that he might not) deliver them into slavery. •*

This Final Subj. is an extension of the use of the Jussive Subj. (Less. 31). Thus:

he sends forward engineers . . . let them undermine.  
the women implored him . . . let him not send.

*Fill in the spaces in the following table, following the rules for the Sequence of Tenses :*

fabrōs praemittit ut (quī) mūrōs subruant.  
 fabrōs praemittet ut (quī) mūrōs ——.  
 fabrōs praemīsīt (*pres. perf.*) ut (quī) mūrōs ——.  
 fabrōs praemīsīt (*aor. perf.*) ut (quī) mūrōs ——.  
 fabrōs praemīserat ut (quī) mūrōs ——.

*Anglicē dicendū :*

1. Caesar prope hostēs castra posuit cō consiliō ut frūmentō eōs interclūderet.
2. magnīs itineribus contendit nē quid spatī ad sē colligendōs hostibus dētur.
3. barbarī ut turpitūdinem pristinae fugae dēlerent fortissimē pugnābant.
4. speculātōrēs dīmīttit explōrātum quō commodissimē itinere vallem transire possit.
5. lēgātum mīsīt quī provinciae praeesset.
6. aliū castrīs locum, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, dēlēgit.
7. Ariovistus milia hominum xvi quī nostrōs mūnitiōne prohibērent mīsīt.
8. castella dux constituit ibi-que tormenta collocat nē hostēs suōs circumvenīre possent.

*Parse explōrātum in sent. 4.*

*Latīnē reddenda :*

1. Labiēnus was left on the continent in order that he might guard the harbours.
2. Ambassadors came to him to (*quī*) promise to give (*fut. infin.*) hostages.
3. Caesar commands (*imperō*) the enemy not-to (*nē*) injure his allies.
4. The ambassadors said they would return on the third day; meanwhile they begged (*petō*. 3) him not-to move his camp nearer (them).
5. There were no other ships in-which the army could be taken-back (*reportō*. 1).
6. The general sent (men) to the officers to (*quī*) announce that-they-should-not (*nē*) attack-the-enemy (*hostēs proeliō lacessere*. 3).
7. He spoke in a louder (*clārus*, *a*, *um*) voice with this intention (*consilium*, *ilī*. *n.*) that most (*maxima pars*) of the soldiers might hear.
8. The Germans have no private land (say 'nothing of private land') lest they become-eager (*studeō*. 2) to-amass (*infin. of parō*. 1) broad territories, (and) lest the more powerful expel from-their properties the more humble.
9. Caesar sent-forward the archers and slingers to dislodge the enemy from (their) position.
10. Labiēnus had been ordered by Caesar not-to engage-battle.

## LECTIŌ.

*Rōmānī cum Belgīs conflīgunt.*

Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī transirent hostēs expectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impedītōs aggrederentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs *contendēbātur*. Ubi *neutrī* transeundi initium faciunt, Caesar pulsīs hostibus suōs in castra reduxit.

Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen *Axonam* contendērunt. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō consiliō ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent pontem-que interseinderent; sī *minus* potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant.

**sī**, to see if (after expectābant).

**contendēbātur**, *impers.*, *v.* Less. 25.

**neutrī**, neither side (nom. pl. masc. of neuter, *tra*, *trum*).

**Axona**, the modern Aisne, a tributary of the Seine (Sēquana).

**minus**, here = nōn.

Mention all the Final clauses in this passage.

What instances are there of (a) the gerund, (b) the gerundive, (c) the abl. absol.?

Explain the dat. *magnō ūsuī*.

*Vivā Vōce :*

1. quid inter hostēs ac Rōmānōs erat? 2. quae hostium pugnae ratiō erat? 3. quae nostrōrum? 4. quōmodo contendebātur? 5. quō nōmine Axona flūmen hodiē appellātur? 6. quō consiliō hostēs Axonam transire cōnantur? 7. quā dē causā Belgae Rēmōrum agrōs populārī voluērunt?

*Quod dē-est suppedītate :*

1. Caesar ut hostēs ulcisc— proficisc— constituerat.
2. cohort— quinque mittuntur qu— sociōs nostrōs obsidiōn— liberā—
3. dux su— imperāvit nē qu— tēlum in hostēs reic-
4. Germānī respondent sēsē nōn recūsa— quīn, sī laccessantur, armīs contend—.
5. Ariovistus sēdecim milia hominum, quī nostrōs mūnitiōn— prohibērent, mī—.
6. Caesar tribūn— militum monuit ut paulā— sēsē legiōnēs coniung—.

## LESSON 42.

FINAL CLAUSES (*continued*).

In clauses of purpose containing a comparative, **quō** is used instead of *ut*.

*e.g.* dux suōs cohortātur **quō māiōre** animō contendant.

*the leader exhorts his-men, so that they may fight with greater spirit.*

magnīs itineribus contendēbat **quō celerius** ad oppidum perveniret.

*he was hastening by forced marches in order that he might reach the town quicker.*

*cf.* quōminus, Less. 39.

The relative adverbs **ubi**, where; **quō**, whither; **unde**, whence; **quemadmodum**, how; are followed by the Subj. of purpose.

*e.g.* locum idōneum dēlegit **ubi** castra **pōneret**.

*he chose a suitable place to (where he might) encamp.*

nōn habuērunt **quō sē reciperent**.

*they had not (a place) whither they might retreat.*

in locum superiōrem prōgressi sunt **unde** tēla facilius **mitterent**.

*they advanced to higher ground whence they might discharge their weapons more easily.*



*Anglicè vertite :*

1. lēgātī ad Caesarem mittuntur quī doceant sēsē parātos esse dē iniūriīs satisfacere.
2. nonnullae cohortēs longiōre itinere circumductae erant nē ab hostibus conspicerentur.
3. irātō duce nīl dubium est quīn captīvī gravissimō suppliciō adficiantur.
4. quam acquissimō locō potest castra pōnit.
5. nōn habuērunt barbarī quemadmodum sē dēfenderent.
6. castella commūnit quō facilius hostēs prohibēre possit.
7. satis causae esse arbitrābatur quārē eum pūnīret.
8. Venetōrum nāvium carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium factae erant, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent.

*Latīnē reddenda :*

By-this battle the war with (say 'of') the Veneti and the whole sea-board (*gen.*) was finished. For both (*cum*) all the young-men, and all of maturer-years (*gravior aetās, ātis*, f.) in whom there was some(thing of) resource and rank had assembled there (*eō*), and (*tum*) they had collected "into one spot all their ships. When-these-were-lost (*abl. absol.*) the remainder had no place to retreat-to (say 'neither whither they might retreat') nor means of defending (say 'how they might defend')

their towns. Accordingly they surrendered to-Caesar. He decided that they ought to be more-severely punished in order that for-the-future the rights (*sing.*) of ambassadors might be observed more-carefully by natives. Having therefore killed all their senate (*abl. absol.*) he sold the rest as-slaves (*sub coronā*<sup>1</sup>).

## VOCABULARY.

rank, *dignitās, ātis, f.*

I surrender, *mē dē-dō*. 3. *-didī, -ditum*.

severely, *graviter*.

for the future, *in reliquum tempus*.

I observe, *conservō*. 1.

I kill, *necō*. 1.

*Quod dē-est suppeditate :*

1. nōn cunctand— si — existimāvit quā proeliō dēcert—.

2. Caesar suis imperāvit nē qu— tēla in hostēs mitt—.

3. hostēs eum magnoper— ōrābant nē longius prōgred—.

4. ipse tōt— hiem— illīc manēre dēcrēverat.

5. consuetūdine su— Caesar sex legiōnēs expedit— dūcēbat.

6. Rōm— di— septimō vērī.

7. is homo summ— audāci— (*abl.*) fuit.

8. ea, quae ad reficiend— nāv— ūsui<sup>•</sup> erant, comportārī ius—.

<sup>1</sup> coronā, ae, f. *lit.* a chaplet of flowers, because captives for sale were so crowned.

## LESSON 43.

## CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

Clauses expressing **result** or **consequence** (Lat. *consequor*. 3. -*secūtus*) are, if affirmative, translated by **ut**(ī), *so that*; if negative, by **ut . . . nōn**, *so that 'not*.

In both cases the mood is the Subjunctive.

Consecutive clauses are introduced by such words as

**sic, ita, tam, adeō** ; *so*.

**is, ea, id**, *such* ; **ēiusmodī**, *of this kind* ; **tantus**, *so great, such* ;

and by such verbs as

**efficiō**. 3., *I effect, bring about* ; **accidit**. 3., *it happens or happened* ; **fit, factum est**, *the result is, was* ;  
**futūrum est**, *the result will be*.

*e.g.* hostēs **tantam** virtūtem praestant **ut** vix fugentur.

*the enemy show such bravery that they are with difficulty put to flight.*

oppidum nātūrā locī **sic** mūnītum est **ut** facile dēfendī posset.

*the town was so fortified by its position that it could be easily defended.*

**ea** praesentia animī militum erat **ut** nēmo locum relinqueret.

*such was the soldiers' presence of mind that no one left his place.*

The relative *quī, quae, quod*, meaning ‘*such that*,’ often preceded by such words as **complūrēs**, *several*; **ūnus**, *one, only*; **sōlus**, *alone*, is used consecutively.

*e.g.* repertī sunt **complūrēs quī** scūta manibus revelerent.

*there were found several to (so that they) tear the shields apart with their hands.*

Belgae **sōlī** erant **quī** nōs prohibuerint.<sup>1</sup>

*the Belgae were the only people to check us.*

*v.* also p. 210 *Lectio*, l. 5; p. 256, l. 3, 15, 19; p. 258, l. 5.

*Anglicē dīcenda:*

1. eā celeritāte atque eō impetū militēs iērunť ut hostēs consistere nōn audērent.
2. sed tam celeriter discēdunt ut fugae similis discessus videātur.
3. secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent.
4. erant ēiusmodī sitūs oppidōrum ut in extrēmīs prōmūnturiīs pōnerentur.
5. Helvētiī dixerunt sē ita ā patribus suis didicisse ut magis virtūte quam dolō contenderent.

<sup>1</sup> The *pluperf. subj.* is very rare in consecutive clauses; otherwise we might have expected *prohibuissent*.

6. 'ūnus sum' inquit 'quī addūcī nōn potūerim ut obsidēs darem.'
7. 'non sum is' inquit 'quī mortis periculō terrear.'
8. tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nulla nāvis cursum tenēre posset.
9. collis tam silvestris erat ut nōn facile introrsus (*to within*) perspicī posset.
10. Ariovistus dixit sē nōn tam barbarum esse ut ea ignōrāret.
11. accidit ut ex tantō nāvium numerō nulla omnīnō nāvis dēsiderārētur.
12. dixit futurum esse ut legiōne primā pulsā reliquae consistere nōn audērent.
13. dixit nōn sine causā fierī ut Gallia omni nōbilitate spoliārētur.
14. in tantō rērum discrimine accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut milītēs ab signīs discēderent.

*Latīnē reddenda :*

1. So frightened were the enemy that they did not cease from flight until they reached (*pluperf. subj.*) their own camp.
2. The nature of the place was of such-a-kind (*ēiusmodī*) that weapons could be hurled (*ad-igō. 3.<sup>o</sup>-ēgi, -actum*) from above.
3. They threw such a number (*multitūdō. inis. f.*) of arms (*arma, ōrum. n. pl.*) over (*dē*) the wall that they reached (*adaequō. 1.*) its summit.

4. So-great a calm suddenly ensued (*ex-sistō. 3. -stiti*) that the ships could not move.
5. Such was the temper of the whole army that no one despaired of (*dē*) victory.
6. So-great an appearance of fear did Sabīnus manifest, that the enemy dared to come-up-to . (*accēdō. 3.*) the very stockade.
7. Storms of-such-a-kind supervened (*sequor. 3.*) that the work was necessarily suspended.
8. Our-men rushed at the enemy so fiercely and they (*i.e. the enemy*) fled (*prō-currō. 3. -currī*) so quickly, that time (*spatium, tī, n.*) was not given for (*say 'of'*) throwing weapons.
9. It-happened on the same night that there was a full moon.
10. The Suēvī by daily training bring-about that their beasts of burden are (capable) of great exertion (*labor, ōris, m.*).

### LECTIŌ.

#### *Prīmipilus.*

In legiōne Rōmānā, ut in primō nostrō librō suprā diximus, circiter tria mīlia sescentī militēs erant. Legiō in cohortēs decem, cohors in manipulōs trēs, manipulus in centuriās duās divīsus est. Itaque circiter sexāgintā militēs in centuriā erant. Centuriīs praeerant centuriōnēs, quōrum cohortī sex, legiōnī sexāgintā erant. Ad proelium committendum

legiō Rōmāna saepissimē aciē triplici instruebatur. Prīma aciēs ex quattuor, altera ex tribus, tertia item ex tribus cohortibus consistēbat. Centuriōnum omnium princeps 'prīnipīlus' appellābatur. Hōc nōmen ab antiquiōribus temporibus sumptum est, cum tertia aciēs, quam triāriōs tum vocābant Rōmānī et tōtius exercitūs maximō in honōre habēbant, in pilōs prō manipulis divisa est. Decem legiōnis summī centuriōnēs, quōrum singuli in singulis cohortibus erant, 'prīmī ordinēs' vel 'prīmōrum ordinum centuriōnēs' appellābantur.

The word *prīnipīlus*, i, m., is formed from the words **prīmus**, first, and **pīlus**, a division of the *triārii*. Hence *prīnipīlus* is short for **prīmī pīli centuriō**, which is sometimes written in full.

e.g. P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī pīli centuriō.

Such a person was sometimes said '**primum pīlum dūcere**.'

*Vivā Vōce:*

1. circiter quot milites in legione erant? 2. legioni quot manipuli erant? 3. quot centuriae? 4. qui centuriis praeerant? 5. quomodo plerumque acies Rōmāna instruēbatur? 6. qui erant triarii? 7. quō nōmine centuriōnum princeps appellābatur? .

## LESSON 44.

## INDIRECT QUESTION.

The verbs in indirect questions are always put in the Subj. mood, the rules for Sequence of Tenses being followed.

Direct Question.	Indirect Question.
<p>quis es ? <i>who are you ?</i></p> <p>quis hōc fēcīt ? <i>who has done (did) this ?</i></p>	<p>rogō quis sīs. <i>I ask who you are.</i></p> <p>rogāvi quis sīs. <i>I have asked who you are.</i></p> <p>rogābō quis sīs. <i>I shall ask who you are.</i></p> <p>rogāverō quis sīs. <i>I shall have asked who you are.</i></p> <p>rogō quis hōc fēcērit. <i>I ask who did (has done) this.</i> <i>similarly—rogābō, rogāvi, rogāverō</i> <i>quis hōc fēcērit.</i></p> <p>rogābam quis hōc faceret. <i>I was asking who did (was doing) this.</i></p> <p>rogāvi quis hōc faceret. <i>I asked who was doing (did) this.</i></p> <p>rōgāvi quis hōc fēcisset. <i>I asked who had done this.</i></p>



*e.g.* quid suum consilium **sit** ostendit.  
*he shows what his plan is.*  
 eius rei quae causa **esset** quaesiit.  
*he asked what was the reason of that.*  
 (*direct*—huius rei quae causa est?)

‘whether’ is expressed by **num** or **-ne**.

‘or’ is expressed by **an**.

‘whether’<sup>1</sup> . . . or’ is expressed by

<b>num</b>	} . . . <b>an</b> ( <i>same as direct</i> ).
<b>utrum</b>	
<b>-ne</b>	

‘or not’ is expressed by **nec-ne** (*direct*, **an nōn**).

*e.g.* dubitabant **num** captivum igni necarent **an** in  
 aliud reservarent (*or* dubitabant captivum-**ne**  
 igni, etc.).

*they were in doubt whether to kill the captive by  
 fire or reserve him for some other fate.*

pater filium interrogavit **utrum** fecisset **nec-ne**.

*the father asked his son whether he had done it or  
 not.*

*Anglicē dicenda vel scribenda :*

1. Caesar ex captivis quaerit quamobrem Ariovistus proelio nōn decertet.
2. ab Rēmis postulavit quae quantae-que civitatēs in armis essent.
3. dux exploratoribus mandavit ut quae facerent hostēs cognoscerent.

<sup>1</sup> The ‘whether’ is sometimes omitted altogether, and **an** or **-ne** with the second clause expresses the whole of the double question.

4. propter arborum multitudinem quid in quaque parte fieret perspicī nōn poterat.
5. flūmen tantā lēnitāte fluit ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iudicārī nōn possit.
6. praemittit (mīlītēs) quī videant (*v. Less. 41*) quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant.
7. quantō in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārentur cognōverat.
8. tum dēmum barbarī intellegēbant quantam calamitātem cīvitātī suae intulissent.

Put any four of the above into the form of Direct question,  
*e.g.* in No. 1 Caesar asks 'quamobrem . . . nōn decertat?'

*Latīnē reddite:*

1. Caesar places guards over-Dumnorix (*dat.*) in order that he may know what he does, (and) with whom he talks.
2. Our-men by their speedy attack do not give the enemy an opportunity of finding-out what is happening (*fīō*).
3. The general did not know what plan of battle the enemy would adopt (*insistō. 3*).
4. He tells the messenger what he wishes (to be) done.
5. They could not see what (*say 'what of a thing'*) was happening.
6. The Gauls compel travellers to say (*prōnuntiō 1*) from what districts they come and what is happening there.

7. He reached the enemy's camp before the Germans could (*imperf. subj.*) perceive what was happening.
8. The-latter (*hī*) hesitated (*dubitō. 1*) whether it-were-better (*praestat, v. Less. 24*) to defend the camp, or to seek safety in flight.
9. Caesar having summoned (*vocō. 1*) merchants (*abl. absol.*) from-all-sides, yet could not discover how large Britain was (*say 'how-great was the size of Britain'*) nor what tribes inhabited (it), nor what system (*ūsus, ūs, m.*) of war they had, nor what customs (*institūtum, ī, n.*) they observed (*say 'used'*).

### LECTIŌ.

*Quōmodo Venetōrum nāvēs factae sunt.*

Venetōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armatae-que erant: prōrae admodum erectae atque item puppēs ad magnitudinem fluctuum accommodatae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad *quamvis* vim perferendam; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreis catēnis revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis sive propter linī inopiam sive eō, quod est magis *vērī simile*, quod magnās tempestātēs vēlis sustinērī nōn posse arbitrābantur.

Tanta autem nāvium firmitūdō erat ut eīs *rostrō* nocērī nōn posset. *Accēdebat* ut et tempestātēs facilius quam nāvēs nostrae ferrent, et in vadīs tūtius consisterent, et ab aestū relictæ *nihil* saxa et cautēs

timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostris nāvibus cāsus erat extimescendus.

**rōbur, -oris**, n., oak.

**quamvis**, however great (*lit.* 'what you please'), acc. sing.  
fem. of *quī-vis*.

**vērī simile**, probable (*lit.* 'like the truth').

**rostrum**, i. n. ram (of a ship).

**accēdēbat**, impers., *v.* Less. 29.

**nihil**, not at all (adverbial use).

**cāsus, ūs**, m., chance, occurrence.

What kind of subj. is *posset*? What case is *nostris nāvibus*, and why? Would *nāvēs nocērī nōn possent* be correct here? If not, why not?

### *Vivā Vōce:*

1. nonne Venetōrum nāvēs magnae firmitūdinis erant? 2. ex quō nāvēs factae sunt? 3. quā dē causā? 4. quamobrem Venetī pellibus prō vēlis ūtēbantur? 5. num fūnibus ancōrae revincīrī solēbant? 6. quae nostris nāvibus erant extimescenda?

*Caution.*—Do not think that Indirect Questions must necessarily be introduced by a verb of *asking*. The construction required by Indirect Question is found after many other verbs, *e.g.* **doceō**, **dēmonstrō**, **ostendō**, **nuntiō**; **cognoscō**, **dubitō**, **intellegō**, **constituō** (settle), **iūdicō**, **videō**, **prōvideō**, **prōpōnō** (show), **praecipio**, *etc.*

*v.* also p. 255, l. 27; p. 256, ll. 1, 2, 3.

## LESSON 45.

## SOME USES OF THE GENITIVE CASE.

## A. The genitive after Adjectives.

insuētus nāvigandī, *unaccustomed to sailing.*

imperītus rērum, *unskilled (in things).*

plēnus vinī cadus, *a cask full of wine.*

cupidus rērum novārum, *eager for a revolution.*

## B. The genitive after Nouns.

nōmen insāniae, *the name (of) folly* (Definition).

aeris librā, *a pound of bronze* (Material).

vir magnae virtūtis, *a man of great bravery*  
(Quality).

*N.B.*—The gen. of Quality always has an adjective in agreement (*cf.* the abl. of Quality, *civitās magnā auctoritāte*).

C. The genitive with **est**=it is a mark of, it comes under the heading of.

summī labōris est, *it is a (matter of) great difficulty.*

dignitātis est, *prestige demands (it comes under the heading of prestige).*

## D. The genitive after Verbs.

obliviscor. 3.

memoriam-dēpōnō. 3. } I forget.

reminiscor. 3.

memoriam-retineō. 2. } I remember

paenitet, *it repents* (*v. Less. 24*).

## E. Partitive genitive.

The gen. is used of that of which a part is taken.

- *mīlitum pars, some of the soldiers.*
- *nonnulli nostrum, some of us.*
- *aliquid detrīmentī, some (thing of a) loss.*

## F. Possessive genitive.

*militis arma, the soldier's armour.*

*But liber meus, my book;* the nom. of the possessive adjectives being always used.

The phrase **Rōmānōrum timor** may mean either

- (1) fear of somebody else felt by the Romans, where the Romans are *subjects* of fear (*possessive gen.*); or
- (2) fear of the Romans felt by somebody else, where the Romans are *objects* of fear (*objective gen.*).

The Possessive and Objective genitives are often united.

*e.g. veterēs Helvētiōrum iniūriae populi Rōmānī.*  
*the ancient wrongs done by the Helvētīi (pos-*  
*sessive) to the Roman people (objective).*

G. The genitive of Value.<sup>1</sup>

*Indefinite* value is expressed by the words **parvī, magnī, tantī, plūris, minōris, etc.**

*e.g. magnī, parvī interest, it is of great, small im-*  
*portance.*

<sup>1</sup> Some prefer to regard these genitives as locatives.

magnī intererat manus hostium distinēri, *it was of great importance that the hostile bands should be kept apart.*

hunc equum plūris quam tū tuum ēmī.

*I bought this horse for more than you bought yours.*

*Definite value is put in the ablative (cf. Less. 55).*

villam trigintā talentis ēmī.

*I bought an estate for thirty talents.<sup>1</sup>*

*Anglicē dīcenda :*

1. Venetī rērum nauticārum peritissimī erant.
2. omnium Germaniae flūminum maximus est Rhēnus.
3. sine ullō exercitūs periculō victōriā potītī sumus.
4. tantī apud mē grātia tua est ut tibi ignoscam.
5. is homō magnae auctōritātis habitus est.
6. magnī interesse arbitrābatur auctōritatem suam quam plūrimum valēre.
7. barbarī dixērunt sē nostrae consuetūdinis imperitōs bellum fēcisse.
8. duo summae spei adolescentēs obsidēs missī sunt.
9. est hōc Gallicae consuetūdinis ut mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat.

<sup>1</sup> A talent was about £240.

10. exspectare dum (*until*) hostium cōpiae augērentur summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat.
11. (*dixit*) nē veteris contumēliae obliviscerētur, nēve recentium iniūriarum memoriam dēpōneret.
12. Labiēnus militēs cohortātus est ut suae pristinae virtūtis et secundissimōrum proeliōrum memoriam retinērent.

*Quod dē-est suppeditiō:*

1. summ— potenti— adulescens erat.
2. eius auctōritās magn— habēbatur.
3. rēs erat mult— labōr—.
4. docet quantō opere id rēipublic— commūnisque salūtis inter—.
5. Rhēnum nāvibus transire neque suae neque popul— Rōmān— dignitā— arbitrātus est.
6. sapient— est pauc— loquī.

#### LECTIŌ.

*Quā prīmō irrident postrēmō maerēbunt.*

Ubi hostēs *turrim* procul ā Rōmānīs constitui vidē-  
runt, prīmum *irrīdēre* ex mūrō atque *increpitāre* vōcibus  
quod tanta māchinātiō *ab* tantō spatiō instrueretur:  
*quibusnam* mānibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim  
hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque hominibus  
Gallis prae magnitudīne corporum suōrum brevitas  
nostra contemptū est) tantī oneris *turrim* in mūrōs  
sēsē *collocātūrōs* confiderent?



Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre mūrīs vīdērunt, novā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī sunt: nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine *ope* dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēditūrōs (esse).

**turrim**, acc. sing. of *turris*, is, f.

**irridēre**, **inreplitāre**, are called 'Historic' Infinitives, and are often used in narrative instead of a finite verb in the imperfect tense. Translate 'began to scoff and jeer.'

**ab**, at (a distance of).

**quibusnam** (abl. pl. of *quī-nam*, *quae-nam*, *quod-nam*), by what, pray? used sarcastically.

**collocātūrōs**, verbs of *hoping* and *trusting* are usually followed by the fut. infin. (v. p. 198, l. 3, and p. 207, l. 5).

**ope** (abl. sing. of *ops*, *opis*, f.<sup>1</sup>), help, assistance.

<sup>1</sup> The nom. sing. is not found except as the name of a goddess.

## LESSON 46.

## CAUSAL CLAUSES.

Causal clauses are those that express cause *or* reason  
(*Lat. causa, ae, f.*).

*General Rule.*

If a real reason is stated, the verb is put in the Indic.,  
if an imaginary reason *or* one given by some one else  
than the writer is stated, the verb is put in the Subj.

*e.g.* magister discipulōs pūnīvit quod ignāvī **fu**erant.

*the master punished the pupils because (as a fact)  
they had been idle.*

*but* magister discipulōs pūnīvit quod ignāvī **fu**issent.

*the master punished the pupils because (as he had  
been told) they had been idle.*

*N.B.*—If a causal clause expressing real reason (and  
therefore in the Indic.) is put into *orātiō obliqua*, the Indic.  
is, by the rules given in Less. 36 and 37, changed to the  
Subj.

The Subj. is used in *negative* causal clauses when the  
reason is *imaginary*.

*e.g.* nōn quia linum nōn **habe**ant, sed quia satis forte nōn  
est.

*not because they have no flax, but because it is not  
sufficiently strong.*

Causal clauses are introduced by

**quod, quia, propterea quod, quoniam, cum,** all meaning *since* or *because*.

*N.B.*—**cum**, *since*, always takes the Subj.

*Anglicè vertenda :*

1. oppidum eō facilius dēfendī poterat, quod flūmine paene cingēbātur.
2. hōc proeliō hostēs sublātī sunt quia quingentīs equitibus magnam multitudinem prōpulerant.
3. Aeduī cū sē suaque dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium.
4. frūmentō utī nōn poterat, propterea quod hostēs eum illō prohibēbant.
5. hostēs repentinō Rōmānōrum adventū perterriti sunt, cum id, quod ipsi vix diēbus xx confēcērant, eōs unō diē fēcisse intellegerent.
6. Caesar, bellum ut conficerētur, sibi mātūrandum statuit, praesertim cum hiems appropinquāret.
7. quoniam lēgātum suum obsidiōne liberātum (*esse*) sciēbat, sēcūrus dum (*until*) reliquae cōpiae pervenirent expectābat.
8. hostēs, cum diūtius nostrōrum impetum sustinēre nōn possent, terga vertērunt.
9. Dumnorix Helvētiūs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimonium duxerat.
10. Aeduī ad Caesarem vērērunt questum quod Harūdēs finēs suōs populārentur.

From this Lesson onwards to the end of the Book the *Lectiōēs* are in the form of a continuous narrative dealing with certain events in Gaul at the end of the year 54 B.C.

After Caesar's return to Gaul from his second expedition to Britain in that year he found it necessary, owing to scarcity of corn, to distribute his legions among several states. One legion under Q. Cicerō was sent to winter among the Nervii (*modern Hainault*), and 15 cohorts under Sabīnus and Cotta were dispatched to a place called Aduātuca, in the country of the Eburōnēs (*near modern Liège*).

Here Sabīnus and Cotta with their army were cut to pieces by the Eburōnēs under Ambiorix; and the latter elated by his victory persuaded the Aduātuci and Nervii to help him to attack Cicerō.

What happened is told in the next and following '*Lectiōēs*.'

#### LECTIŌ.

##### *Cicerō in Nervii obsidetur.*

Barbari quam maximās manūs possunt cōgunt et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hiberna *advolant*, nondum ad eum fāmā dē Sabīnī morte *perlūtā*. Huic quoque accidit ut nonnulli militēs, qui lignatiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās *discessissent*, repentinō equitum adventū interciperentur.

Eis circumventis, magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervii, Aduātuci atque hōrum omnium socii et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. Aegrē is diēs

'sustentātur, proptereā quod omnem spem' hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant, atque hanc *adepti* victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs confidēbant.

**advolō.** 1., I run to (*lit.* 'fly to'): historic pres.

**perlātā,** perf. part. pass. of per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.

**huic,** *i.e.* Cicerōnī.

**discessissent** is in the Subj. because it refers to a word (*militēs*) which is in a subordinate clause.

**adepti.,** perf. part. of adipiscor. 3. *q.v.*

*Vivā Vōce:*

1. quae nātiōnēs Cicerōnis hiberna oppugnant?  
2. ā quō ut haec facerent adducti sunt? 3. quōs Ambiorix nūper (*recently*) superāverat ūnā cum exercitū eōrum? 4. quārum rērum causā nonnulli milītēs Cicerōnis castra reliquerant? 6. cūr barbari tam celeriter rem conficere studēbant (*were eager*)?

## LESSON 47.

## CAUSAL CLAUSES—(continued).

*Latīnē reddite :*

1. He hastened into Illyricum because (*cum*) he wished to find-out-about (*cognoscō*. 3) those districts.
2. The Aquītānī are very-skilful in mining, because there are mines (*auraria*, *ae*, *f*.) in-their-country (*apud eos*).
3. The Ubiī are more-civilised than the-rest (*ceterī, ōrum*, *m*. *pl*.) of the same race, because merchants come-frequently to them.
4. Caesar ordered the ambassadors to return to him at the beginning of summer (*abl. absol.* *v*. *p*. 52) because he was hastening to Italy.
5. As (*cum*) the fortifications were not completed, the soldiers worked with the greater zeal.
6. As Crassus perceived that he had-to-wage-war (*gerundive*) on-uneven-terms (*iniquō loco*), he decided to use great caution (*diligentia*, *ae*, *f*.)
7. The chiefs of Britain perceiving (*say 'since they perceived'*) that the Romans lacked (*say 'there was-lacking to the Romans'*) cavalry, ships, (and) corn, thought it to be a good opportunity to (*say 'of'*) resume-hostilities (*rebelliōnem facere*; *gen. of gerundive*).

8. It was perceived that this kind of fight was dangerous to our cavalry, because the enemy for-the-most-part retreated designedly. . . .
9. Themistoclēs used-to-walk (*imperf.*) at-night because (as he said) he could (*indic. or subj.?*) not sleep (*somnum capiō. 3*).
10. Sōcratēs was accused (*accūsō. 1*) because (as was alleged) he corrupted (*corrumpō. 3*) young-men.

A causal clause is often replaced by a participle.

*e.g.* longius prōsequi **veritus**.

*because he feared to pursue further.*

omnia frustra **expertī**.

*as they had tried everything in vain.*

*Quod dē-est suppeditāte:*

1. nostrī hostēs circumvent— interfic— (*imperf. indic. act.*) vel perterr— in fug— cōniciēbant.
2. sentiēbat quantum auctōrit— (*gen.*) hostēs hōc ūn— proeliō consecūti ——— ‘ ‘
3. hostēs, signō datō dēcurr— (*historic infin.*), lapidēs in vallum cōnic— (*historic infin.*).
4. quinque cohortēs frūment— (*supine*) missae erant.

## LECTIÖ.

*Quōmodo sē dēfendit Cicerō.*

Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim ab Cicerōne litterae, magnis prōpositis praemiis, sī *pertulissent*; *obsessīs* omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctū ex māteriā quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant turrēs admodūm centum xx excitantur incredibili celeritāte; quae dē-esse operi vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō māiōribus coactis cōpiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent.

Eadem ratiōne, quā pridie, ab nostris *resistitur*. Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātis facultas quietis datur. Quaecumque ad proximū diēi oppugnātiōnem *opus* sunt noctū comparantur: multae *praeustae* sudēs, magnus *mūrālium pilōrum* numerus instituitur; turrēs contabulantur, *pinnae lōricae*-que ex crātibus attexuntur.

Ipsē Cicerō, *cum* tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquēbat, ut *ultrō* militum *conkursū* ac *vōcibus* sibi parcere cōgerētur.

*pertulissent*, sc. nuntii (understood from the context).

*obsessīs viis*, as the roads were beset (*causal*).

*resistitur*, impers.

*opus*, a necessity.

*praeustus*, a, um, hardened (by fire) at the end.

*pila mūrālia*, javelins hurled at the enemy from the walls.



**pinna**, ae, f., a pinnacle.

**lōrica**, ae, f., a parapet. What is its commoner meaning?

**cum**, although.

**ultrō**, against his wish.

**conkursū āc vōcibus**, *lit.* 'by the running-together and voices,' *i.e.* by the entreaties of the soldiers who assembled in a body.

Point out in this passage (1) an abl. absol., (2) a consecutive clause, (3) a historic pres., (4) an abl. of Quality.

*Vivā Vōce:*

1. quam ob causam cum litteris missi intercepti sunt? 2. quā valētūdine erat Cicerō? 3. num eō magis sibi parcēbat? 4. quid igitur fecerunt milites?

## LESSON 48.

## TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

Temporal clauses show the time (*Lat. tempus, oris, n.*) of events described in the Principal sentence.

*General Rule.*

They are in the Indic. if they merely denote *time*, but in the Subj. if they imply an idea of *purpose*, *doubt*, *cause* or *intention*.

They are introduced by

ubi	} when	simul ac (atque),	} as soon
cum .		cum primum,	

post(eā) quam, after, when.

priusquam <sup>1</sup>	} before	quoad, as long as, until.
antequam <sup>1</sup>		dum, while, until.

**cum**, when, takes the imperf. and pluperf. Subj.; in other tenses the Indic.

e.g. **haec cum fēcisset**, abiit.

when he had done this, he went away.

**haec cum fēceris**, abi!

when you (shall) have done this, go away!

<sup>1</sup> Often separated, e.g. *Rōmam prius pervēni quam expectāvi.*

When the clauses are *inverted*, **cum** takes the Indic.  
*e.g.* iam vēr appetēbat cum Caesar ex hibernīs discessit.  
*spring was already approaching when Caesar left*  
*his winter-quarters.*  
*(i.e. Caesar left when spring, etc.)*

*vide* also p. 42, *Lectiō*, l. 4; p. 63, *Lectiō*, l. 7; p. 108, l. 9.  
**(dum, while, takes the Indic.<sup>1</sup> (usually the pres. tense even of past time).**

*e.g.* dum haec **geruntur**.

*while this was happening.*

*v. also* p. 259, l. 1.

**dum, until, takes the Subj.**

*e.g.* exspectā dum **redeam**.

*wait until I return!*

*Anglicē reddenda:*

1. Helvētiī, ubi iam sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, proficiscī mātūrant.
2. Caesarī cum id nuntiātum esset, mātūrandum sibi statuit.
3. Helvētiī, ubi de ēius adventū cortiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt.
4. Caesar postquam in eum locum pervēnit, obsidēs poposit; quī dum conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nonnullī ex hostibus salutem fugā petiērunt.
5. neque prius fugere destitērunt (*dē-sistō. 3. -stitī*) quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt.

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes even in *ōrātiō obliqua*.

6. Caesar, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit.
7. dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nuntiātum est hostēs accēdere.
8. Ariovistus, cum lēgātōs apud sē conspexisset, conclāmāvit: quid ad sē venīrent? num speculandī causā?
9. priusquam<sup>1</sup> quicquid cōnārētur, Divitiacum ad sē vocārī iubet.
10. imperāvit tribūnīs sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.
11. postridiē Caesar, priusquam<sup>1</sup> sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, exercitum iterum in eōs duxit.
12. dum reliquae nāvēs convenīrent, in ancorīs expectābat.

*Latīnē transferenda:*

1. When (*ubi*) Caesar perceived that Ariovistus kept himself in camp, he determined to challenge (*ēvocō*. 1) him to battle.
2. While this was happening amongst (*in abl.*) the Venetī, Sabīnus was in winter-quarters.
3. When (*cum*) Caesar was in Gaul, many (*crēber, bra, brum*) rumours reached (*say 'were brought to'*) him (that) the Belgae were conspiring against the Roman people.

<sup>1</sup> This use of *priusquam* with the Subj. implies 'purpose prevented.'

4. Therefore he thought he ought (*use oportet*) to divide (*partior. 4. dep.*) his army before more states should conspire (*why subj.?*).
5. Caesar determined to stay (*moror. 1*) in Gaul until (*quoad*) he knew (*imperf. subj.*) that the legions had been posted and the winter-quarters fortified.
6. As-soon-as the time of year allowed him (*see p. 117*) he returned to Gaul.
7. He was informed that the Suēvī, after they had discovered (*why subj.?*) that a bridge was being built (*say 'made'*), had sent messengers in all directions.

## LECTIŌ.

*Colloquium inter Nerviōs et Cicerōnem.*

Tunc ducēs principesque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem *sermōnis aditum* causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne *habēbant*, colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. *Factā potestāte* eadem quae Ambiorix cum Sabīno *ēgerat* commemorant: omnem esse in armīs Galliam; Germānōs Rhēnum transisse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hiberna oppugnari. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam praesidi ab eīs spērent quī suis rēbus diffidant; sēsē tamen *hōc esse* in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum *animō* ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsant; licēre *illīs* incolumibus *per sē* ex hibernīs discēdere et quascumque in partēs velint sine metū proficisci.

Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit: nōn esse consuētūdinem populi Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiōnem: sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre prō eius iustitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.

**sermōnis aditum habēre**, *lit.* 'to have access of speech,'  
*i.e.* to be on friendly terms.

**factā potestāte**, when permission was granted (*abl. absol.*).

**ēgerat**, had related, discussed (*agō. 3. ēgī, actum*).

**eōs**, *i.e.* Cicerō and his soldiers.

**hōc animō esse**, *lit.* 'to be of this mind,' *i.e.* to be so  
(well) disposed.

**illis**, *i.e.* Cicerō and his soldiers.

**per sē**, *v. pp.* 99 and 117.

Put from 'nōn esse consuētūdinem' to the end into  
*ōrātiō recta*.

For what two reasons is *recūsent* in the Subj.?

## LESSON 49.

## TEMPORAL CLAUSES—(continued).

Clauses expressing Indefinite Frequency (*whenever*) may be either Primary or Secondary.

In Primary time the verb in the Subordinate clause is in the perf. Indic., and the verb in the Principal clause is in the pres. Indic.

*e.g.* magistrātūs multitudinī **prōdunt** quaecumque ex  
    ūsū iūdicāvērunt.

*the magistrates reveal to the people whatever they  
    consider expedient.*

(*vide* also p. 101, ll. 3-6.)

In Secondary time the verb in the Subordinate clause is in the pluperf. Indic., and the verb in the Principal clause is in the imperf. Indic.

*e.g.* sī quī equō **dēciderat**, comitēs eum **circumsistē-**  
    **bant,**

*if any one fell from his horse, his comrades would  
    (used to) stand round him.*

(*vide* also p. 112, top; p. 257, ll. 22, 23, 25, 27.)

*Anglicē dicenda :*

1. ubi hostēs nostrōs ex nāvī ēgredientēs conspexerant, impeditōs adoriēbantur.
2. Britānōrum aurīgae cum sē inter equitum turbās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedib⁹s proeliantur.
3. sī quandō Venetī fortūnīs suis despērāre coeperant, sē in proxima oppida recipiēbant.
4. quotiens quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus hostium numerus cadēbat.
5. Germānī cōs, quī hospitēs ad sē vēnērunt, ab iniūriā prohibent.

*Latīnē reddite :*

This command (*praeceptum*, *i*, *n.*) being carefully (*superl.*) obeyed (*observō*. 1.), as (*cum*) each cohort attacked, the enemy would speedily (*superl.*) flee. And whenever they began to return to that place whence they had started (*ē-gredior*. 3., *-gressus*), they would be surrounded both by those who had retired and by those who stood (*pluperf.*) nearest.

Nevertheless they stood-their-ground, and though the-battle-last-ed (*say* 'it was fought') from dawn to the eighth hour, they did nothing unworthy of themselves. T. Balventius, a brave man and (one) of great influence, had both thighs pierced by a javelin; Q. Lūcānius fighting bravely (*superl.*) is killed while (*cum*) assisting his son who had been surrounded; L. Cotta, the brigadier, is wounded full in the face by a (shot from a) sling while-exhorting (*pres. part.*) the cohorts.



## VOCABULARY.

though, *cum* (*subj.*).

I do (l. 10), *com-mittō*. 3. *-mīsī*, *-missum*.

unworthy, *indignus*, *a*, *um* (*abl.*).

**T.** Balventius . . . javelin, say 'both thighs (*sing.*) to

T. Balventius are pierced' (*trā-iciō*. 3. *-icēī*, *-iectum*).

I assist, *sub-veniō*. 4. *-vērī*, *-ventum* (*dat.*).

full in the face, *in adversum ōs*.

## LECTIŌ.

*Quae ab hostibus parantur.*

Ab hāc spē repulsī Nervii vallō pedum ix et fossā pedum xv hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum *consuētūdine* ab nōbīs cognōverant et quōs clam dē exercitū habēbant captīvōs *ab eīs* docēbantur; sed *nullā* ferrāmentōrum *cōpiā* quae esset ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs circūcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire vidēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cognoscī potuit: nam minus hōrīs tribus *mīlium* in circuitū iii mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt; reliquisque diebus turrēs ad altitudinem vallī, *falcēs* testūdinesque, quās *īdem* captīvī docuerant, parāre āc facere coepērunt.

**consuētūdō**, *inis*, *f.*, habit, practice.

**quōs** . . . *ab eīs*, relative before its antecedent.

**nullā cōpiā**, *zbl.* *absol.*

**mīlium**, *sc.* *passuum*.

**falx**, *cis*, *f.* a hook (used for pulling down walls).

**īdem**, *nom.* *pl. masc.* (contracted for *eidem*).

What kind of abl. is *hōrīs tribus? reliquīs diēbus?*  
 Why is *esset* in the Subj.?

• •  
*Vivā Vōce:*

1. quōmodo Nervii mūniendī ūsum cognōverant?
2. quae ad vallum fossamque efficiendam dē-erant?
3. quōmodo hostēs caespitēs circumcīdebant?
4. quae rēs docet hostium multitūdinem magnam  
 fuisse?
- 5. quot hōrīs mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt?
6. ā quibus falcium testūdinumque ūsum didicerant?

## LESSON 50.

## RECAPITULATORY.

1. *Give the Acc. and Abl. Sing., Gender and Meaning of flūmen, adventus, spēs, vēr, terror, finis, vulgus, lēnitās, nōmen, condiciō.*
2. *Give the other degrees of comparison of facilis, diūtissimē, prae, minus, celerrimē, longior, plānus, magnopere, similior.*
3. *What word is used instead of ut in final clauses containing a comparative? Give an example.*  
Does **ut nēmō** mean 'in order that no one'?
4. *Decline together in Sing. and Pl.:*  
proelium equestre.  
locus silvestris.
5. *Give the 3rd pers. sing. and 1st pers. pl. of the imperf. subj. of volō, fiō, praesum, oriōr; and the 1st pers. sing. and 3rd pers. pl. of the pres. subj. of cōnor, sequor, ūtor.*
6. *Explain Possessive and Objective genitive. Give an instance of the two combined in one phrase.*
7. *Give the Principal Parts of prōpellō, adipiscor, accēdō, fleō, dō, videō, loquor, resistō, proelior, pāreō.*
8. *Mention some verbs and adjectives that are followed by the genitive case.*
9. *Anglicē vertite:*  
1. nōn longē aberat quīn calōnēs nostrī interciperentur.

2. brève spatium intēricitur vix ut rēbus admini-  
strandis tempus darētur.
3. quoniam civitatī consulere nōn posset, sē  
Caesarī dēdere maluit.
4. haec cum flens ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius  
dextram prendit.
10. Give examples illustrating the difference in use  
between *dum*, *while*, and *dum*, *until*.
11. Verbō reddite :  

mōre suō.	magnī interest.
aliquid spatī.	ā nostrīs resistitur.
carinae aliquantō plāniōres.	
12. Explain rostrum, prīnipilus, aciēs triplex.
13. Latīnē vertenda :  
  1. The next day he sent (men) to follow-up those  
who had fled.
  2. He returned to Italy early in order that he  
might not be prevented (*exclūdō*. 3.) from  
sailing (*noun*) by (*per*) the time of year.
  3. He points-out that it is very-easy to carry out  
his attempts (*cōnāta*, *n. pl.*).
  4. The general waited until the reserves should  
arrive.
  5. This will be very-useful (*predic. dat.*) to  
• you (*pl.*).
  6. As-soon-as he heard of Caesar's arrival, he went  
to-meet (*supine*) him.
14. Parse paene, factū, rogātum (2 ways), fore, ope,  
poposceritis (2 ways).

## LESSON 51.

*CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.*

Conditional clauses are usually introduced by **sī**, if; **nisi**, **sī nōn**, if not, unless.

They are followed by either the Indic. or the Subj. mood.

The 'if' clause is known as the **Protasis**, the principal clause as the **Apodosis**.

*e.g.* If I have anything (*protasis*), I give it (*apodosis*).

*Regular* condit. clauses are always consistent, *i.e.* if the Indic. is used in the protasis, the Indic. must be used in the apodosis also; and if the Subj. is used in the protasis, the Subj. must be used in the apodosis also.<sup>1</sup>

It is convenient to class condit. clauses according as they take

- (1) the Indic.
- (2) primary tenses of the Subj.
- (3) secondary tenses of the Subj.

- (1) When the Indic. is used, it implies that the statements made are regarded as facts, but leaves it uncertain whether they actually occur or not.

<sup>1</sup> *Irregular* condit. clauses will not be treated here.

*e.g.* sī quid habeo, dō, *if I have anything, I give it.*

sī quid habeo, dabō, *if I have anything, I shall give it.*

sī quid habebō, dabō, *if I shall have anything, I shall give it.*

sī vis, dabō tibi testēs, *if you like, I shall call you witnesses.*

sī poterō, sextā hōrā redībō, *if I am (shall be) able, I shall return at the sixth hour.*

- (2) Where Primary tenses of the Subj. are used, we treat not of facts but of **imaginary suppositions**, which, as they refer to **future time**, may be realised.

*e.g.* sī quid habeam, dem.

*if I should have anything (in the future), I should give it.*

id sī facere cōnēris, nōn prōficiās.

*if you were to try to do that, you would not succeed.*

When the 2nd pers. is used *indefinitely*,<sup>1</sup> the protasis is often understood.

*e.g.* maestī (crēderēs victōs) in castra redeunt.

*downcast (one would have supposed them conquered) they return to camp.*

id fierī nōn posse crēdās.

*you (i.e. one) would not believe it possible.*

- (3) Where Secondary tenses of the Subj. are used, we treat of imaginary suppositions which refer to **present** or **past** time, but cannot in either case be realised.

<sup>1</sup> *i.e.* you = one.

- (1. *if I had anything now, I would give it* (implies **nōn habeo**, *I have nothing*).  
*e.g. sī quid habērem, darem.* } 2. *if I had been having anything, I would have been giving it* (implies **nōn habēbam**, *I was not having*).<sup>1</sup>

*sī quid habuissem, dedissem.*

*if I had anything, I would have given it* (implies either **nōn habuī**, *I have not had* (pres. perf.) or **nōn habuī**, *I had not* (aor. perf.).

Thus the four types of regular condit. sentences are :

- (a) **sī quid habeo, do** (possible condition in pres. time).
- (b) **sī quid habeam, dem** (imaginary and possible supposition in fut. time).
- (c) **sī quid habērem, darem** (imaginary and impossible supposition in pres. (or past) time).
- (d) **sī quid habuissem, dedissem** (imaginary and impossible supposition in past time).

*Anglicē dicenda :*

1. *sī hostēs proeliō contendere velint, eis potestās nōn dē-sit.*
2. *sī quid tē volam, ubi eris ?*
3. *noctū, puer, sī in silvam eās, nonne ferās vereāris ?*
4. *sī barbarī flūmen transīre cōnatī essent, ā nostrīs repulsī essent.*

<sup>1</sup> *nōn habeo* is more often implied than *nōn habēbam*.

5. nisi ex finibus meis discēdēs, tē prō hoste habēbō.
6. nisi quid in tē auxiliī erit, hīc manēre nōn  
poterimus.
7. sī quid mihi accidat, domum redeam.
8. Ariovistus Caesari respondet: 'sī quid mihi ā tē  
opus esset, ad tē venīrem; sī quid igitur tū mē  
vis, ad mē venī.'
9. sī quid gravius acciderit, milites ā duce ratiōnem  
reposcent.
10. sī valēs bene est; ego quidem valeō.<sup>1</sup>

## LECTIŌ.

*Quae septimō diē facta sunt.*

Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē maximō coortō ventō hostēs ferventēs fūsilī ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tectae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt, et ventī magnitudīne in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt.

Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sicutī partā iam atque explorātā victoriā, turrēs testudinēsque agere et scālīs vallum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta militum virtūs atque ea praesentia animi fuit, ut, cum ubiquē flammā torrērentur maximāque telōrum multitudīne premerentur suaeque omnia impedīmenta atque omnes fortunās conflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo demigrandī causā

<sup>1</sup> The regular greeting of Romans to each other in their correspondence.



dē vallō dēcēderet nēmo, sed paene nē respicēret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerimē fortissimēque pug-  
nārent.

Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit, sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, *ut* sē sub ipsō vallō constipāverant, recessumque primīs ultimī nōn dabant.

**fūsili ex argillā**, (made) of softened clay.

**casa**, ae, f., a hut. The Romans being in winter-quarters were in huts, not 'under canvas.'

**distulērunt**; the obj. is ignem.

**partus**, a, um, perf. part. pass. of pariō. 3. *q.v.*

**ea**, such (*v. Less. 43*).

**cum**, although (foll. by Subj. *v. Less. 54*).

**fortūnae**, ārum, f. pl., possessions.

**ut**, as, seeing that.

Point out (1) an abl. of Time; (2) an abl. of Instrument; (3) an abl. absol; (4) an acc. and Infin. after a verb of perception.

What kind of Subj. is (1) dēcēderet; (2) vulnerārētur?

*Vivā Vōce:*

1. septimō diē quid coortum est? 2. quālis erat glans? 3. quālī modō casae tectae erant? 4. quōmodo milites virtutem atque animi praesentiam significābant? 5. quem ēventum nostrīs hic diēs habuit? 6. quā dē causā tanta hostium multitudō eō diē vulnerāta est?

## LESSON 52.

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES—*Continued.*

*Anglicē dicite :*

1. respondet Caesar: 'vōbiscum pācem faciam, sī obsidēs ā vōbīs dabuntur et sī dē iniūriīs mihi satisfaciētis.'
2. frūmentum comparārī potest sī hostium agrōs populāmur.
3. rēs facilis sit, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent.
4. 'sī Gallī' inquit 'cum Germānīs consentiant, spēs nostra in celeritātē ūnā pōnātur.'
5. magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur sī modo insulam adisset (*pluperf. subj. = fut. perf. indic. of oratio recta*).
6. dicit Ariovistus: 'parātus sum dēcertāre, sī Rōmānī iterum experīrī volunt; sī stipendium ab eīs remittētur, populī Rōmānī amicitiam nōn recūsābō.'

*Latīnē transferte :*

A. *Connected.*—On that day both-sides kept their positions (*say 'keep themselves in-their place'*), the Gauls because they were waiting for reinforcements which had not-yet arrived, Caesar to-see-if (*sī*) he could (*imperf. subj.*) by a pretence of fear entice the enemy to his position, in-order-that he might fight in-front-of

the camp on-this-side of the valley, (but) if he could not manage (*efficiō*. 3.) that, in-order-that (*why not ut?*) he might cross the valley with less danger. At dawn the enemy's horse approached the camp and engaged-battle with our cavalry. Caesar orders (*imperō*. 1.) his cavalry to retire to the camp, and at the same time orders (*iubeō*. 2.) the camp to be fortified with a taller stockade and the gates to be blocked, and that this should be done (*say 'this to be done'*) with a great pretence of fear.

## VOCABULARY.

both-sides, *use nom. pl. masc. of uter-que*.

reinforcements, *ampliōrēs cōpiae*.

pretence, *simulatiō, onis, f.*

I entice, *ē-liciō*. 3. *-licuī, -licitum*.

*B. Detached:*

1. Unless reinforcements arrive, we shall be compelled to raise (*solvō*. 3.) the siege. (*a*)<sup>1</sup>
2. If the storm had not arisen, the ships would have reached harbour safely. (*d*)
3. If you were to ask me who I am, I should reply. (*b*)
4. If I had any(thing of) money, I would give it to that poor (man). (*c*)
5. Unless you arrived before the eighth hour, you would arrive too-late (*sērō*). (*b*)

<sup>1</sup> The letters in brackets at the end of the sentences refer to the four types of *condit. sentences* given on p. 216.

6. If you wish-for my friendship, you must (*use oportet*) deserve it. (*a*)
7. If the scouts had not caught-sight-of the enemy, the whole army would have come into extreme (*summus, a, um*) danger. (*d*)
8. If Caesar were (now) living, he would be accounted (*haberi*, 2.) a great (*superl.*) general. (*c*)
9. The slaughter would have been greater, had not our-men fought in-small-companies (*rārī*). (*d*)
10. The priests said that the army would not be victorious, if they fought (*pluperf. subj.*) before the new moon.

*Quod dē-est suppeditāte:*

1. nil dubium est — Caesar summus imperātor —.
2. quid tē prohibuit quōm— domum redī—?
3. quō (*adv.*) cum Caesar pervēn— (*pluperf. subj.*), castra mūn— instituit.
4. cum paulō ā castr— prōcess— (*pluperf. subj.*), suōs ab hostibus premī animadv—.
5. in Ītaliā proficis— ad conventūs agen—.
6. e- rēs L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō consul— accidit.
7. equit—, imperat ut quam lātissimē poss— vag—tur.
8. quae pars civitātis calamit— populō Rōmānō (*dat.*) intul— (*pluperf. indic. of inferō*), ea princeps poenās persolv—. (*of what constr. is this sentence an example?*)

## LECTIO.

*Oppugnātiō gravior fit.*

Quantō erat *in diēs* gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō, et maximē quod magnā parte militum confectā vulneribus *rēs ad paucitātem dēfensōrum pervēnerat*, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nuntiūque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehensa in conspectū nostrōrum militum cum cruciātū necābatur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius, nōmine *Verticō*, locō *nātus honestō*, quī *ā primā obsidiōne* ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat, suamque eī *fidem praestiterat*. *Hīc* servō spē libertātis magnisque persuādet praemiis ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō inligātās effert, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ullā suspiciōne versātus ad *Caesarem* pervēnit. Ab eō dē periculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque *cognoscitur*.

*in diēs*, from day to day (used in compar. clauses instead of *cotidiē*, cf. Less. 3, p. 7).

*rēs . . . pervēnerat*, the number of defenders was reduced, *lit.* 'the matter had reached a scarcity of defenders.'

*Verticō*, this is the nom. case.

*locō nātus honestō*, a man of good position (abl. of Specification, *v.* p. 235).

*ā primā obsidiōne*, from the beginning of the siege.

*fidem praestiterat*, had manifested fidelity, given proof of loyalty.

*hīc*, *i.e.* *Verticō*.

*Caesarem*, Caesar was apparently at *Samarobriva* (Amiens).

*cognoscitur*, *impers.*

## LESSON 53.

## SOME USES OF THE DATIVE CASE.

A. The Dative is the case of the person interested in an action."

*e.g.* frumentum militibus comparatur.

*corn is collected for the soldiers.*

legionibus naves instituit.

*he prepares ships for the legions.*

According as the action is for the good or harm of a person, this dative is known as the dat. of Advantage (*dativus commodi*), or as the dat. of Disadvantage (*dativus incommodi*).

*e.g.* hoc reipublicae commodē contigit. (*dat. of advantage*).

*this turned out advantageously for the republic.*

is dies gravissimus nostris fuit. (*dat. of disadvantage*).

*that day was most critical to our-men.*

B. The Dative is the case of the Indirect object.

*e.g.* quis tibi pulchrum illum librum dedit?

*who gave you that beautiful book?*

*Verbs governing the dative.*

(a) All compounds of **sum**, except *possum*, e.g.; *ad-sum*, *dē-sum*, *in-sum*, *prae-sum*, etc.

(b) Verbs compounded with the prepositions.

**ab**, **ante**, **ad**,  
**in**, **inter**, **dē**,  
**sub**, **super**, **ob**,  
**con**, **post**, **prae**.

e.g. **ad-propinquō**, I approach; **sub-veniō**, I come to assist; **ob-temperō**, I obey; **i(n)-gnosco**,<sup>1</sup> I pardon; **in-videō**, I envy.

(c) Verbs compounded with **re**, **bene**, **male**, **satis**.

e.g. **re-sistō**, I hold out against; **male-dicō**, I revile; **satis-faciō**, I satisfy.

Many of these verbs take also an acc. of the Direct object.

e.g. *Caesar barbaris bellum infert*, *Caesar wages war on the natives.*

*tibi divitiās nōn invidē, I do not envy you your wealth.*

The verbs **imperō**, **prae-ficiō**, and **prae-pōnō** are commonly used with the acc. and dat.

e.g. *obsidēs hostibus imperat*, *he levies hostages on the enemy.*

<sup>1</sup> *noscō* was originally *gnosco*.

**Labiēnum** castris praefecit *or* praeposuit, *he put Labienus in command of the camp.*

In the passive of such verbs the dat. is kept.

*e.g. barbaris ā Caesare bellum infertur.*

*obsidēs hostibus imperantur.*

*Labiēnus castris praepositus est.*

(d) Also the following<sup>1</sup>:

**dō.** 1., I give.

**crēdō.** 3., I believe, trust.

**mandō.** 1. } I command.  
**imperō.** 1. }

**confidō.** 3., I trust (*also takes*  
*abl., v. p. 119, sent. 3.*).

**parcō.** 3., I spare.

**persuādeō.** 2., I persuade.

**noceō.** 2., I injure.

**consulō.** 3., I look-to, consult  
the interest of.

**pāreō.** 2., I obey.

### C. The dative after Adjectives and Adverbs.

The dat. is used after adjectives and adverbs implying nearness, fitness, likeness, help, kindness, trust, obedience.

*e.g. Atrebatēs Nervii finitimī sunt, the Atrebatēs are neighbours of the Nervii.*

*castris idōneus locus, a place suitable for the camp.*

*convenienter nātūrae vivāmus! let us live conformably with nature!*

Similarly **amicus**, friendly; **propinquus**, near; **fidēlis**, faithful; **congruenter**, agreeably.

<sup>1</sup> This list is not exhaustive.



D. The dative of Possessor (usually with *esse*).

*e.g.* mihi amīcī multī sunt, *I have many friends.*

E. The dative of Agent.

with gerund and gerundive (*v.* Less. 17, 18, and 19).

*e.g.* mihi pugnandum erat, *I had to fight.*

ea rēs omnibus prōvidenda est, *all must attend to that matter.*

*N.B.*—Remember that the Passive of intransitive verbs that govern the dat. can be used *impersonally* only (*v.* Less. 25, p. 103).

*Anglicē dīcenda vel scrībenda :*

1. Caesar legiōnī decimae maximē confidēbat.
2. legātī ōrābant ut sibi propter imprudentiam ignoscerētur.
3. in tantō rērum discrimine dux salutī commūnī nōn dē-erat.
4. tum dēmum tribūnī ut sibi quisque consuleret prōnuntiāvērunt.
5. Caesar hibernīs Labiēnum, classī Decimū Brūtū prae-fēcit.
6. ducem cautum rēbus militāribus nōn solum interesse sed etiam prae-esse oportet.
7. nostrīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur nōn poterat.
8. militibus imperat ut quam maximum hostibus terrōrem inferant.
9. id cum animadvertisset Crassus, quī equitatui

prae-erat, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostris  
subsidiō mīsīt.

10. amīcōrum alter alterī auxiliō salutīque fuit, ut  
iūdicārī nōn posset uter utrī virtūte antefendus  
vidērētur.

*Latīnē reddite :*

1. The enemy trusted much in the nature of the place.
2. That he might not encounter (*occurrō*. 3.) a more serious (*gravis*, *e*) war, Caesar set-out earlier than he was accustomed.
3. He sends a brigadier to see-to (*cūrō*. 1. v. p. 75) the dispersal of the native troops (*manus*, *ūs*, *f.*).
4. The enemy look-to their belongings (*fortūnae*, *ārum*, *f. pl.*) that they may not be plundered by the Romans.
5. Crassus did not place much reliance on (*say 'trust'*) the auxiliaries.
6. Caesar promised that he would attend-to that business (*v.* p. 96, sent. 4).
7. The Romans often used-to-spare (*imperf.*) the-conquered (*victus*, *a*, *um*).
8. He sent an ambassador whom he believed to be very-faithful to him.
9. There-were among the enemy some who were very-friendly to the Romans.
10. All night the soldiers worked strenuously, in order that nothing might be-lacking for the siege.

## LESSON 54.

## CONCESSIVE CLAUSES—VERBS OF FEARING.

Concessive clauses are introduced in English by the word *although*, and in Latin by the following conjunctions, all meaning *although* :—

**quamquam**, followed by the Indic.

**quamvis**

**ut**

**cum**

**etsi**

**tametsi**

} followed by the Subj.

{ followed by the Indic. of *fact*,  
by the Subj. of *imagination*.

*Note*.—*quamvis* (*lit.* ‘*as you please*’) is also used to qualify adjectives :

*e.g.* *quamvis pauci*, *however few*.

*malī lēgibus, quamvis iustis, nōn pārent.*

*the wicked do not obey laws however just.*

*v. also p. 82, l. 3.*

*Anglicē dīcenda :*

1. Caesar, etsi sine ullō periculō legiōnis proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat.
2. hostium aciēs, cum ā sinistrō cornū pulsa esset, ā dextrō (cornū) vehementer nostrōs premēbat.

3. nostri, tametsi ab duce et a fortunā dēserēbantur,  
tamen omnem spem salutis in virtūte pōnēbant.
4. hostēs intellegēbant, ut omnia contrā opīniōnem  
acciderent, tamen sē plūs quam Rōmānōs nāvibus  
posse.
5. dux, etsi hostium consilia nondum cognōverat,  
tamen id quod accidit fore suspicābātur.
6. quamquam nōn venit ad finem tam audax in-  
ceptum (*plan*), tamen haud omnīnō vānum fuit.
7. Caesar, etsi prope exacta iam aestās erat, tamen  
exercitum in Morinōs duxit.
8. nostri, quamvis ab hostibus gravissimē premērentur,  
inceptō (*v. sent. 6*) nōn dēsistēbant.

### VERBS OF FEARING.

The verbs **timeō**. 2., **metuō**. 3., **vereor**. 2. (*dep.*), *I fear*,  
are followed by **nē** or **nē nōn** (**ut**) with the Subj.:

*e.g.* vereor nē veniat, *I am afraid he will come.*

vereor nē-nōn (ut) veniat, *I am afraid he will  
not come.*

These verbs when not followed by a clause take the acc.  
of the Direct object.

*e.g.* inopiam frumentī veritus, *fearing a deficiency of corn.*

*Anglicē dicēda:*

1. Caesar nē hīs rēbus sociōs offenderet verēbātur.
2. hostēs nē armīs traditis (*abl. absol.*) supplicio  
adficerentur timuērunt.

- 3. rem frumentariam timēbat ut supportari posset.
- 4. veritus nē ab omnibus dēsereretur Indutiomarus  
lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit.
- 5. dīcit Ariovistus verērī nē per insidiās ā 'Caesare  
circumveniātur.

*Latīnē reddendu :*

1. He feared not the enemy, but an ambush.
2. Although Caesar perceived this, yet he addressed  
(*appellō*. 1.) the ambassadors very-mildly  
(*mītissimē*).
3. The enemy fearing they would be surrounded  
(*circum-cō*, -*īre*) fled.
4. He feared a rising in (*say 'of'*) Gaul, if he-himself-  
were-absent (*abl. absol. v. p. 25*).
5. Though the column (*agmen, invīs, n.*) was very far  
off, the smoke (*pl.*) of its fires could be plainly seen.
6. The Belgae were afraid that when all Gaul was  
pacified (*abl. absol.*) our army would be led  
against them.
7. Although this plan (*say 'which plan although'*)  
was not to-be-blamed (*gerundive*) in an occur-  
rence of-this-kind, yet it turned-out (*accidō*. 3.)  
disastrously.
8. Caesar said he was not afraid of the deceit of the  
enemy, but (feared) that reinforcements would  
not arrive in-time (*ad tempus*).
9. Were you (*sing.*) afraid that I would not keep-my-  
promise? (*fidem servō*. 1.).

## LECTIO.

. *Caesar, litteris commōtus, auxilia undique arcessit.*

Caesar, acceptis litteris hōrā circiter undecimā diēi, statim nuntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum *quaestōrem* mittit, cūius hiberna aberant ab eō milia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nuntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebatum finēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, sī rēi publicae *commodō* facere posset, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviorum venjat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter quadringentōs ex proximis hibernis colligit.

**quaestōrem**, the quaestors were officers who had control of the commissariat and pay department.

**commodum**, ī, n., *lit.* 'convenience.' Translate 'without detriment to.' The abl. is 'attendant circumstances,' *v.* p. 232.

## Vivā Vōce:

1. quōtā hōrā nuntii ad Caesarem perveniunt?
2. quid facit ille?
3. quot milia passuum Crassī castra aberant?
4. quae eī mandat?
5. nonne statim Caesarī pāret?
6. ad quem et quibus cum mandātis (*orders*) Caesar alterum nuntium mittit?
7. cūr reliquās cōpiās nōn exspectandās putat?
8. unde equitātum colligit?

## LESSON 55.

## SOME USES OF THE ABLATIVE CASE.

## A. The ablative of Separation

is used with or without a preposition after verbs and adjectives of *removing, depriving, wanting*, especially when such verbs are compounded with the prepositions **ab, dē, ex**.

*e.g.* cōnātū dēsistere coactī sunt.

*\* they were compelled to desist from the attempt.*

hostēs (ex) finibus suis excesserant.

*the enemy had left their territories.*

Gallia omnī nōbilitate spoliatur.

*Gaul is bereft of all her nobles.*

pāne egeō.<sup>1</sup>

*I want bread.*

urbs nūda praesidiō.

*a city naked of defence.*

B. The ablative of Attendant Circumstances.<sup>2</sup>

plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōluit.

*he did not wish those matters to be discussed when  
several people were present.*

multō diē cōpiās reduxit.

*late in the day he led-back his forces.*

<sup>1</sup> egeō often takes the gen., *e.g.* auxili egeamus, *we want help.*

<sup>2</sup> This use of the abl. is closely connected with the abl. of Manner, and the abl. absolute (v. Less. 13 and 14).

## C. The ablative of Instrument.

(1) barbarī saxīs iaculisque sēsē dēfendunt.

*the natives defend themselves with stones and javelins.*

civitatēs dōnīs pollicitatiōnibusque sollicitat.

• *he inveigles the states by gifts and promises.*(2) **opus** and **ūsus**,<sup>1</sup> signifying *need* or *want*, are used either

• (a) with the Instrumental abl.

e.g. opus est mihi pecūniā.

*I want money (lit. 'there is work for me with money').*

or (b) opus is used as a predicate to the thing needed.

e.g. opus est mihi pecūnia.

*(lit. 'money is a work for me.')*

quaecumque opus sunt comparantur.

*whatever is needed is got-ready.*Compare sī **quid** mihi opus esset } *if I should want*  
with si **quō** mihi opus esset } *anything.*

(3) The five Deponent verbs

**fungor.** 3. *I perform.***fruor.** 3. *I enjoy.*• **utor.** 3. *I use.***vescor.** 3. *I feed-on.***potior.** 4. *I get possession of.*<sup>2</sup>

are followed by an Instrumental abl.

<sup>1</sup> ūsus is very rare in Classical prose.    <sup>2</sup> potior also takes the gen.



*e.g.* Suēvī lacte atque carne vescuntur.

*the Suēvī feed on (lit. 'feed themselves with')  
milk and flesh.*

omnibus in vitā commodis fruimur.

*we enjoy all the advantages of life.*

(4) The abl. of Accompaniment without **cum**, used in *military* phrases, may be regarded as an Instrumental ablative.

*e.g.* Britannī equitātū atque essedīs prōgressī sunt.

*the Britons advanced with cavalry and chariots.*

subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis.

*he followed-up with all his forces.*

*v. also p. 246, 3rd line of Lectiō.*

D. The ablative of Cause.

levitāte animī novīs rēbus student.

*because of their instability of mind they are  
revolutionary.*

hostēs diūturnitāte pugnae dēfessī sunt.

*the enemy were exhausted by the long continuance  
of the battle.*

E. The ablative of Price.

vectīgālia parvō pretiō redempta habuit.

*he contracted for the taxes for a small price.*

F. The ablative of Quality (with epithet<sup>1</sup>).

mons magnā altitudīne.

*a mountain of great height.*

immānī corporum magnitudīne hominēs.

*men of huge size.*

<sup>1</sup> A genitive can take the place of the epithet, *e.g.* vallum vīginti pedum altitudīne.

## G. The Ablative of Manner.

oppidum nātūrā ac manū mūnītum erat.

*the town had been fortified by nature and hand.*

barbāri cōpiās paribus intervallis instruxerunt.

*the natives drew up their forces at regular intervals.*

This abl. has generally an adjective in agreement—otherwise **cum** is used.

e.g. summā celeritāte	} vēnit.
but cum celeritāte	

## H. The Ablative of Specification

denotes that in respect of which something is or is done.

sciētiā rērum nauticārum praestant.

*they excel in knowledge of seamanship.*

Caesar valētūdine prosperus erat.

*Caesar was sound in health.*

pedestribus valent cōpiīs.

*they are strong in infantry.*

Such ablatives as

mōre suō, according to his (their) custom.

institūtō suō, according to his (their) design.

may be referred to either Attendant Circumstances or Manner.

*Translate the following orally and refer the ablatives to their respective kinds :*

1. summā virtūte adulescens.
2. flūmen incredibilī lenitāte fluit.
3. vir summō locō nātus.
4. classis omnibus rēbus parāta.
5. māior nātū.
6. consuetūdine suā.
7. hostēs itinere prohibēbantur.
8. militibus frūmentō opus est.
9. hostium castris potitī sumus.
10. quot talentis hōc ēmistī ?

LECTIŌ.

*Labiēnus, Trēverōs veritus, Cicerōnī succurrere  
nōn potest.*

Hōrā circiter tertiā ab *antecursōribus* dē Crassī adventū certior factus, eō diē milia passuum xx prōcēdit. Crassum Samarobrivae praeficit legiōnemque attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs civitātum, *litterās* publicās, frūmentumque omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus, *interitū* Sabīnī et caede cohortium cognitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hibernis fugae similem profectionem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, *praesertim* quōs recentī victoriā

*efferrī scīret*, litterās Caesarī remittit: quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernīs ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscribit; docet omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum tria milia passuum longē ab suis castris consēdisse.

**antecursōrēs**, m. pl., the advance guard.

**litterae**, ārum, f. pl., documents.

**interitus**, ūs, m., destruction.

**cum**, since, because.

**praesertim quōs efferrī scīret**, especially as he knew that they were elated.

**equitātūs . . . Trēverōrum**, the forces of the Trēverī (*Possessive gen.*) consisting of cavalry, etc. (*gen. of Definition*).

## LESSON 56.

## SOME USES OF THE ABLATIVE CASE—Continued.

## LOCATIVAL ABLATIVE.

## A. Ablative of Amount of Difference.

Cāius Marcō tribus annīs iūnior est.

*Caius is younger than Marcus (abl. of Comparison)  
by three years (abl. of Amount of Difference).*

with the verbs **abesse**, **distāre**.

is locus aequō ferē spatiō ab utrisque castrīs aberat.

*that place was almost equidistant from both camps.*

utriūque aequō ferē spatiō ab urbe distābant.

*both sides were about the same distance from the city.*

cf. legiōnem passibus ducentīs ab hostibus constituit.

*he drew up the legion two hundred paces from the  
enemy.*

## B. Place whence (v. Less. 35).

## C. Time within which (v. also Less. 35).

hīs paucīs diēbus, *in these few days.*

tribus hōris Aduātucam venīre potestis.

*within three hours you can reach Aduātuca.*

patrum, hominum memoriā, *within the memory of  
our fathers, mankind.*

## D. The ablative after Adjectives.

- (1) those that denote *fullness, abundance, etc.*, e.g. **plēnus**, full<sup>1</sup>; **praeditus**, endowed-with, possessed-of.

<sup>1</sup> Also takes the gen., e.g. **domus plēna argenti**, a house full of silver plate.

e.g. fossa sarmentis plēna, *a trench full of brushwood.*  
 plēna domus ornāmentis, *a house full of furniture.*  
 vir singulārī audāciā praeditus, *a man endowed*  
*with unparalleled daring.*

(2) **dignus**, worthy; **indignus**, unworthy; **frētus**, relying-on.

e.g. iuvenēs patre dignī, *young men worthy of their father.*  
 hostēs, multitūdine solā frēti, *instant, the enemy,*  
*relying on numbers alone, press on.*

*Latīnē dicenda vel scribenda :*

1. Life is full of pleasure.
2. Whereupon (say '*which having been done*') all were full of excessive (*summus, a, um*) joy.
3. The Numidae used-to-feed (*imperf.*) mostly on milk and flesh.
4. Relying-on your (*pl.*) assistance, I shall endeavour to perform my duty to the republic.
5. The inhabitants of a city naked of defence (*v. p. 232*) cannot hold-out long, however brave they may be.
6. Amongst the ambassadors was a young-man of high birth (*v. p. 236, sent. 3*).
7. I judge (*existimō. 1.*) you unworthy of every honour.
8. Caesar crossed the river with the archers and slingers.

9. According to their custom the Suēvī held a council (of war).
10. It was reported that the Germans were men of huge size and of incredible valour.

*Quod dē-est suppeditāte:*

1. dolorem capit— sentiō.
2. ill— inceptum memori— dignum videtur.
3. in hōc proeliō interfic— Pīsō Aquitānus, ampliss— gener— nātus.
4. haec patr— memoriā ēvēr—.
5. Helvētīi reliqu— Gallōs virtū— praecedunt.
6. noctū consuetūd— su— Rōmānī castra mūni—.
7. magnā — multitudine hominum bellum ger— instituit.
8. proxim— diē Caesar instit— suō cōpiās ēducit.
9. puer— mulier—que mōre su— passīs manib— pācem petiērunt.
10. hostēs contrā Caesar— duōrum milium spatī— consēd— (*perf.*).

### LECTIŌ.<sup>1</sup>

*Caesar ad Cicerōnem pervenit: Nervīi obsidiōnem relinquunt.*

Caesar, consiliō eius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās redierat, tamen ūnum com-

<sup>1</sup> Most of this Lectiō has been given in an easier form in Less. 4, p. 13.

mūnis salātis auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Venit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum finēs. Ibi ex captivīs cognoscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in periculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnīs praemiis persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc *Graecīs* conscriptam *litterīs* mittit, nē interceptā epistulā nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur. Sī adire nōn possit, mōnet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligatā intrā mūnitiōnem castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scribit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortātur ut pristinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit neque ab nostris biduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam milite conspicitur, dempta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlectam in conventū militum recitat, maximāque onnēs laetitiā adficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit. Gallī rē cognitā per explorātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus copiis contendunt.

*ēius*, i.e. Labiēni; v. last *Lectiō*.

*opiniōne dēiectus redierat*, disappointed in his expectation had been reduced to (come down to).

*Graecīs litterīs*, probably in the Greek language, not in Greek characters, because Caesar tells us elsewhere that the Gauls were acquainted with the latter.

Explain why *gerantur*, *dēferat*, and *abiciat* are in the Subj. mood.



Point out a negative Final clause, and an Indirect Question.

*Vivā Vōce:*

1. quā in rē Caesar omnem spem salūtis pōnēbat?
2. cui persuādet ut epistulam ad Cicerōnem dēferat?
3. ad quid epistulam dēligāre Gallum iussit? 4. quae in litteris scribit?
5. quot diēs trāgula ad tūrrim adhaerens latēbat?
6. Caesaris adventū quid faciunt Galli?

## LESSON 57.

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD—*Passive and Deponent Verbs.*

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

The Imperative pass. of **amor** is as follows :Sing. 2nd pers. **amā-re**, **amā-tor**, be thou loved !3rd „ **amā-tor**, let him be loved !Pl. 2nd „ **amā-mini**, be ye loved !3rd „ **ama-ntor**, let them be loved !*Note :*

(1) the 3rd pers. is antiquated or poetic.

(2) the Imperative pass. is rare, its place being taken by the Subjunctive.

*'e.g. sis amātus, mayest thou be loved !**amētur, let him be loved !*

Similarly :

	2nd conj. doce-ō, teach.	3rd conj. duc-ō, lead.	4th conj. audi-ō, hear.
Sing. 2nd	{ doce-re doce-tor,	{ duc-e-re duc-i-tor	{ audi-re audi-tor
„ 3rd	doce-tor	duc-i-tor	audi-tor
Pl. 2nd	doce-mini	duc-i-mini	audi-mini
„ 3rd	doce-ntor	duc-u-ntor	audi-u-ntor

The Imperative mood of Deponent verbs<sup>t</sup> is similar to that of Passive verbs of their respective conjugations.

*e.g.* Imperative mood of **hortor**. 1.

Sing. hortā-re (*exhort!*) or hortā-tor, hortā-tor.

Pl. hortā-mini (*exhort!*), hortā-ntor.

Imperative mood of **pator**. 3.

Sing. pate-re or pati-tor, pati-tor.

Pl. pati-mini, pati-u-ntor.

*Give orally with the meanings of each person the Imperative mood of the verbs:*

**moror**. 1., stop; **tueor**. 2., protect; **sequor**. 3., follow;  
**experior**. 4., try.

*Verbō reddite:*

1. milites, signa sequimini!
2. miserere (*miserere*. 2.) pauperum amicorum!
3. boni discipuli laudantur!
4. castra muniuntur!
5. ducem coram adesse arbitrāmini!
6. semper, puer, recte facere conare!
7. e navi egredimini!
8. semper officio tuo fungere!
9. hoc me a te impetrare patere!
10. aequis, captivi, pacis condicionibus utimini!  
(*accept!*)

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective verbs lack some tenses or parts of tenses.

Amongst the commonest are the following:

**āiō**, *I say*.

Pres. Indic. āiō, ais, ait,<sup>1</sup> āiunt.

Imperf. Indic. āiē-bam, -bās, etc.

Pres. Subj. āiat.

Pres. Part. āiens.

**inquam**, *I say*.

Pres. Indic. inquam, inquis, inquit, inquit, inquit, inquit.

Fut. Indic. inquit, inquit.

Imperf. Indic. inquit.

Perf. Indic. inquit, inquit, inquit.

Imperative. inquit (*sing.*), inquit (*pl.*).

**meminī**, *I remember*,<sup>2</sup> and **ōdī**, *I hate*,<sup>2</sup> are perfect in form but have a present meaning (cf. cognōvī, *I know*); consuevī, (*I am accustomed*).

Of them the following forms are found:

**meminī**, *I remember*.

Perf. Indic. memin-ī, -istī, etc., *I remember*.

Fut. Perf. Indic. memin-erō, -eris, etc., *I shall remember*.

Pluperf. Indic. memin-eram, -erās, etc., *I remembered*.

Perf. Subj. memin-erim, -eris, etc.

Pluperf. Subj. memin-issem, issēs, etc.

Perf. Infin. memin-isse, *to remember*.

Imperative. mementō (*sing.*) mementōte (*pl.*), *remember!*

<sup>1</sup> Also used as a perfect, 'he said.'

<sup>2</sup> Not, of course, defective in the same sense as āiō and inquam, but in that they lack tenses of the Present Stem.

**ōdī, I hate.**

Perf. Indic.	ōd-i, -istī, etc., <i>I hate.</i>
Fut. Perf. Indic.	ōd-erō, -eris, etc., <i>I shall hate.</i>
Pluperf. Indic.	ōd-eram, -erās, etc., <i>I hated.</i>
Perf. Subj.	ōd-erim, -eris, etc.
Pluperf. Subj.	ōd-issem, -issēs, etc.
Perf. Infin.	ōd-isse, <i>to hate.</i>
Perf. Part.	ōsus, <i>hating.</i>
Fut. Part.	ōsūrus, <i>about to hate.</i>

*Verbō reddite :*

1. mementōte malōs (hominēs) extimescendōs esse !
2. petō ut meae ergā tē amicitiae memineris !
3. nonne hominēs nātūrā servitūtis condiōnem  
ōdērunt ?
4. Dumnorix Caesarem et Rōmānōs ōderat quod  
eōrum adventū ipsīus potentia dēminūta sit.
5. dux aliō sē in hīberna consiliō vēnisse meminerat.

### LECTIŌ.

*Cicerō obsidiōne liberātur : Caesaris grātulātiō.*

Biduō post Caesar ipse cum hostibus congressus magnam clādem eīs infert, atque eōdem diē omnibus suis incolumibus cōpiīs ad Cicerōnem peryēnit. Institūtās turrēs, testūdīnēs, mūnitiōnēsque hostium admīrātur! Legiōne prōductā, cognoscit non *decimum quemque* esse reliquum *mīlitem* sine vulnere. Ex eīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum periculō et quantā cum virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō

ēius meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs *singillatim* tribūnosque militum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtutem testimoniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. De cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae *certius* ex captivīs cognoscit. Posterō diē contiōne habitā rem gestam *proponit*; milītēs *consolatur* et confirmat: *quod dētrimentum* culpā et temeritatē lēgātī sit acceptum, *hōc* aequiōre animō ferendum docet, *quod* beneficiō eōrum immortālium et virtute eōrum expiātō incommodō neque hostibus diūtina laetatiō neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquatur.

**admirātur**, he sees with surprise (*historic pres.*).

**decimum quemque militem**, v. p. 62.

**singillatim**, one by one.

**certius**, with more certainty (*compar. of certē*).

**prōponit**, he relates.

**quōd dētrimentum**, the disaster which.

**hōc . . . quod**, on this account . . . because, v. p. 118.

Point out 3 ablatives absolute, a historic pres., and an Indirect Question.

*Vivā Vōce:*

1. quid facit Caesar postquam ad Cicerōnem pervēnit? 2. nōne eōs, quī singulārem virtutem praestiterant, collaudat? 3. ā quibus Sabīnus et Cotta superātī erant? (v. p. 197). 4. quā dē causā dētrimentum acceptum erat? 5. quōmodo Caesar milītēs hortatur nē sē animō dēmittant?

## LESSON 58.

## RECAPITULATORY.

1. Give the *Acc. Sing.*, *Gen. Pl.*, *Gender*, and *Meaning* of *palūs*, *funda*, *oppugnātiō*, *ēventus*, *ager*, *fūmus*, *clāmor*, *stīpendium*, *nox*, *mons*, *domus*, *mulier*.
2. Decline together in *Sing.* and *Pl.*  
*hīc fortis adulescens.*  
*audax illud inceptum.*
3. Mention some verbs and adjectives that govern the *abl. case*.
4. Give the *Gen. Sing.* and *Acc. Pl.* (all genders) of *quisquam*, *hīc*, *uter*, *ullus*, *nēmō* (*Sing. only*).
5. What are the four types of regular conditional sentences?
6. Give the *Principal Parts* of *dēferō*, *differō*, *effērō*, *inferō*, *torreō*, *queror*, *necō*, *perfugiō*, *fungor*, *patior*, *expellō*, *dēsistō*, *dēserō*, *consīdō*.
7. What constructions follow the verbs *ōrō*, *iubeō*, *nōn dubitō*, *recūsō*, *vereor*? Give an instance of each.

8. *Anglicē reddite* :

1. aestās prope exacta erat.
2. eā virtūtē erat ut nunquam cēderet.
3. tibi fidem praestō.
4. mōre Gallicō.
5. sicutī partā iam victōriā.

 9. *Give the other degrees of comparison of* *ultrā*, *audax*, *ācritēr*, *lātius*, *vehementissimē*, *propior*, *magis*.

 10. *Give instances of verbs, compounded with prepositions, which take a dative case.*

 11. *Make up sentences to show the use of* *quān* and *quōmīnus*.

 12. *Latīnē reddite* :

1. from the beginning of the siege.
2. in the middle of the voyage (*cursus*, *ūs*, *m.*).
3. day by day the siege became fiercer (*gravis*, *e.*).
4. try, soldiers, to frighten the enemy as much as possible.
5. we all must die.
6. the departure was like a flight.
7. the enemy stand-their-ground with great bravery.

 13. *Write out in full, with meanings of each person, the Imperative mood of* *adorior*. 4. *I attack*.



14. *Explain the cases of the words in italics in the following:*
1. hōc *mihi* ex ūsū accidit.
  2. lēgātus *castrīs* praeficitur.
  3. id *parvī* ēmī.
  4. *paulō* longius aberat.
  5. *ducī* iter faciendum est.
  6. militī *gladiō* opus est.
  7. Balbus *Caiō* minor *nātū* est.
  8. ventus *nāvigātiōnī* idōneus.
  9. hīc *illī virtūte* antefendus est.
  10. tria *mīlia* passuum prōgressus sum.
  11. cohortem labōrantibus suis *subsidiō* mīsīt.
  12. *hōrā* circiter *sextā* profectus est.
15. *Parse oportēret, consulēs (2 ways), eō (4 ways), adhaesit, cāsū (2 ways).*

## LATIN PASSAGES

THE following extracts from Caesar (B. G. v. chaps. 24-37, omitting certain portions) recount a disaster which in the year 54 B.C. befell Q. Titūrius Sabīnus, and L. Aurunculēius Cotta, two of Caesar's *lēgātī*, and the fifteen cohorts under their command.

They had been sent to keep order in the country of the Eburōnēs (in modern Belgium), whose chiefs were Ambiorix and Catuvoleus.

These passages are meant to be read rapidly in Latin, with no conscious attempt at translation into English. The main object should be to get the general drift of the events narrated, with a view to sustaining interest in the story as a whole. The meanings of unfamiliar words are given in the footnotes.

The reading should be done in class, pupils successively reading short passages. It is most important that they should show by their manner and tone of voice that they have a general notion of what they are reading about. This may be tested by oral questions.

Attention should be paid to correct pronunciation. Passages to be learnt by heart and said in class may be set for homework.

1. Subductīs<sup>1</sup> nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae<sup>2</sup> peractō, quod eō annō frumentum in Galliā propter siccitatēs<sup>3</sup> angustius<sup>4</sup> prōvēnerat,<sup>4</sup> coactus est<sup>5</sup> legiōnēs in plūrēs civitatēs distribuere. Ex quibus unam in Morinōs ducendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nervios Q. Cicerōnī,

<sup>1</sup> having been beached.

<sup>2</sup> loc. case.

<sup>3</sup> drought.

<sup>4</sup> had thriven scantily.

<sup>5</sup> sc. Caesar.

tertiam in Esubiōs L. Rosciō, quartam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in confiniō<sup>1</sup> Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit. Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trans Padum<sup>2</sup> conscripserat, et cohortēs v in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars maxima est inter  
 5 Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Ambiorigis et Catuvolci erant, misit. His militibus Q. Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculeiū Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit.

2. Diēbus circiter xv, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentinī tumultūs ac dēfectionis<sup>3</sup> ortum est ab  
 10 Ambiorige et Catuvolcō; quī cum<sup>4</sup> ad finēs regnī suī Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō<sup>5</sup> fuissent<sup>5</sup> frūmentumque in hiberna comportāvissent, Indutiomari Trēveri nuntiīs impulsī suōs concitāvērunt<sup>6</sup> subitoque oppressis lignātōribus<sup>7</sup> magnā manū ad castra oppugnanda vērērunt. Cum celeriter nostrī  
 15 arma cēpissent vallumque ascendissent atque unā ex parte Hispānis equitibus ēmissis equestri proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, despērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne reduxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt, uti aliqui<sup>8</sup> ex nostris ad colloquium prōdīret<sup>9</sup>: habēre sēsē, quae dē rē commūni dicere  
 20 vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minui<sup>10</sup> posse spērārent.<sup>11</sup>

3. Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris<sup>12</sup> Q. Titūrī, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quidam, quī iam ante missū<sup>13</sup> Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitāre consuērat; apud quōs Ambiorix ad hunc modum  
 25 locūtus est: sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrimū<sup>14</sup> eī confitēri<sup>14</sup> dēbere, quod eius operā stipendiō liberātus esset, quod Aduātucis finitimis suis pendere consuesset, quodque

<sup>1</sup> confines, borders.<sup>2</sup> The river Po.<sup>3</sup> rebellion.<sup>4</sup> though.<sup>5</sup> they had met.<sup>6</sup> incited.<sup>7</sup> wood-cutters.<sup>8</sup> for aliquis (*subst.*).<sup>9</sup> should go forward.<sup>10</sup> lessened.<sup>11</sup> they hoped.<sup>12</sup> intimate friend.<sup>13</sup> despatch (*subst.*).<sup>14</sup> to acknowledge a very great debt.

eī et filiū et frātris filius ā Caesare remissī essent, quōs Aduātucī obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnīs<sup>1</sup> tenuissent; neque id, quod fēcerit dē oppugnātiōne castrōrum, aut iūdiō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coactū<sup>2</sup> civitātis. Civitāti porro<sup>3</sup> hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod<sup>4</sup> 5 repentināe Gallōrum cōniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte<sup>5</sup> suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeo sit impetus rerum, ut suis cōpiis populum Rōmānum superāri posse confidat.\*

4. Sed esse Galliae commūne consilium: omnibus hibernis<sup>10</sup> Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidiō venire posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallis negāre potuisse, praesertim<sup>6</sup> cum de recipiendā commūni libertāte consilium initum vidērētur. Quibus<sup>7</sup> quoniam prō pietāte<sup>8</sup> satisfecerit, habēre<sup>9</sup> nunc sē ratiōnem<sup>9</sup> 15 offici prō beneficiis Caesaris: monēre, orāre Titūrium prō hospitio, ut suae ac militum salutī consulat. Magnum manū Germānōrum conductam<sup>10</sup> Rhēnum transisse; hanc adfore biduō. Ipsōrum<sup>11</sup> esse consilium, velintne prius quam finitimī sentiant ēductōs ex hibernis milites aut ad<sup>20</sup> Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēducere, quōrum alter milia passuum circiter L, alter paulō amplius ab iis absit. Illud sē pollicērī et iūre iurandō confirmāre tūtum sē iter per suos finēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et civitāti sēsē consulere, quod hibernis levētur,<sup>12</sup> et Caesarī prō eius meritis grātiā<sup>13</sup> 25 referre.<sup>13</sup> Hāc orātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorix.

5. Arpinēius et Iūnius quae audierant ad lēgātōs dēferunt.

<sup>1</sup> chains.

<sup>2</sup> compulsion.

<sup>3</sup> moreover.

<sup>4</sup> namely that.

<sup>5</sup> insignificance.

<sup>6</sup> especially when.

<sup>7</sup> i.e. Gallis.

<sup>8</sup> patriotism.

<sup>9</sup> to take account of, consider.

<sup>10</sup> hired.

<sup>11</sup> i.e. Sabini et Cottae.

<sup>12</sup> it would be relieved.

<sup>13</sup> to requite.

Illi repentinā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea dicēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda existimābant, maximēque hāc rē per-movēbantur, quod<sup>1</sup> civitatem ignōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā<sup>2</sup> sponte<sup>2</sup> populō Rōmānō bellum facerē aūsam<sup>3</sup>  
 5 vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad consilium rem dēferunt, magnaue inter eōs exsistit contrōversia. L. Aurunculēius compluresque tribūnī militum et primōrum<sup>4</sup> ordinum<sup>4</sup> centuriōnēs<sup>4</sup> nihil temerē<sup>5</sup> agendum neque ex hibernīs iniussū<sup>6</sup> Caesaris discēdendum existimābant; quantasvis<sup>7</sup>  
 10 cōpiās Germānōrum sustinēri posse mūnitis hibernīs docēbant: rem esse testimoniō<sup>8</sup>, quod primum hostium impetum multis ultrō<sup>9</sup> vulneribus illātis fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; intereā et ex proximis hibernis et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō quid esset levius aut  
 15 turpius quam auctōre<sup>10</sup> hoste<sup>10</sup> dē summis rēbus capere consilium?

6. Contrā ea Titūrius sērō<sup>11</sup> factūros clāmitābat, cum māiōres manūs hostium adiunctis Germānis convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum.  
 20 Brevem consulendī esse occāsiōnem. Caesarem (sē) arbitrārī profectum in Italiā; nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre<sup>12</sup>: subesse<sup>13</sup> Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānis dolōri Ariovistī mortem et superiōres nostrās victōriās; ardere<sup>14</sup> Galliam tot contumeliis acceptis sub populī Rōmānī imperium  
 25 redactam, superiōre glōriā rēi militāris extinctā. Postrēmō quis hōc sibi persuādēret sine certā spē Ambigrigem ad

<sup>1</sup> namely that.<sup>2</sup> by itself, alone.dared (*sc. esse*).<sup>4</sup> *v. Less. 43, "Lectio."*<sup>5</sup> hastily, rashly.<sup>6</sup> without the order.<sup>7</sup> as many as you like, *i.e.* however many.<sup>8</sup> proof (*predic. dat.*).<sup>9</sup> actually.<sup>10</sup> at the instigation of an enemy.<sup>11</sup> too late.<sup>12</sup> look at, consider.<sup>13</sup> was near.<sup>14</sup> was burning (for revenge).

ēiusmodī consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam in<sup>1</sup> utramque<sup>1</sup> partem<sup>1</sup> esse tūtā: sī nihil esset dūrius,<sup>2</sup> nullō cum periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; si Gallia omnis cūm Germānis consentiret, ūnam esse in celeritatē positā salutē. Cottae quidem atque eōrum, quī dis-<sup>5</sup> sentirent, consilium quem haberet exitum<sup>3</sup>? in quō si nōn praesens periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs<sup>4</sup> esset timenda.

7. Hāc in utramque partem disputatiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā primisque<sup>5</sup> ordinibus<sup>5</sup> acriter resisterēt, ‘Vincite’<sup>6</sup> <sup>10</sup> inquit ‘sī ita vultis’ Sabīnus, et id clāriore vōce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret; ‘neque is sum’ inquit ‘quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis periculō terrear. Hi sapient<sup>7</sup>: sī gravius quid acciderit, abs<sup>8</sup> tē ratiōnem reposcent; quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō<sup>9</sup> diē cum proximīs hibernīs coniuncti<sup>15</sup> communem cum reliquis bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn reiecti et relēgati<sup>10</sup> longē ā cēteris aut ferrō<sup>11</sup> aut fame intereant.’ Consurgitur ex consiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant, nē suā dissensiōne et pertināciā rem in summum periculum dēducant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant seu proficiscantur,<sup>20</sup> sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissensiōne nullam sē salutē perspicere. Rēs disputatiōne ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem dat<sup>12</sup> Cotta permōtus manūs<sup>12</sup>: superat sententia Sabīni.

8. Prōnuntiātur primā lūce itūrōs. Consūmitur vigiliis<sup>25</sup> reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex instrūmentō<sup>13</sup> hibernōrum

<sup>1</sup> in either event.<sup>2</sup> untoward.<sup>3</sup> outcome, issue.<sup>4</sup> famine.<sup>5</sup> v. note 4, paragraph 5.<sup>6</sup> have your way.<sup>7</sup> will be prudent.<sup>8</sup> from.<sup>9</sup> after to-morrow.<sup>10</sup> removed.<sup>11</sup> sword.<sup>12</sup> gives way, yields<sup>13</sup> furniture.

relinquere cōgerētur. Omnia <sup>2</sup> excōgitantur, <sup>2</sup> quārē nec sine periculō maneāt et languōre militum et vigiliis periculum augeāt. Primā lūce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ut quibus<sup>2</sup> esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimō  
 5 Ambiorige consilium datum, longissimō agmine maximisque impedimentis. At hostēs, postea quam ex nocturnō fremitū<sup>3</sup> vigiliisque de profectiōne eōrum senserunt, collocātis insidiis bipertitō<sup>4</sup> in silvis opportunō atque occultō locō a milibus passuum circiter duobus Rōmānōrum adventum  
 10 exspectābant, et cum sē māior pars agminis in magnam convallem <sup>5</sup> dēmisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimosque <sup>6</sup> premere et primōs prohibēre ascensū atque inīquissimō nostris locō proelium committere coepērunt.

15 9. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortesque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut<sup>7</sup> cum omnia deficere<sup>8</sup> vidērentur; quod plērumque eis accidere consuēvit, quī in ipsō negōtiō<sup>9</sup> consilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitasset haec posse  
 20 in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nullā in rē commūnī salūtī dēcrat, et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperātōris et in pugnā militis officia praestābat. Cum propter longitudinem agminis nōn facile per sē omnia obīre<sup>10</sup> et quid quōque locō faciendum  
 25 esset prōvidere possent, iussērunt prōnuntiārī, ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem<sup>11</sup> consisterept. Quod consilium etsi in eiusmodi cāsū reprehendendum<sup>12</sup> nōn est,

<sup>1</sup> every reason is invented (to show).

<sup>3</sup> loud noise.

<sup>5</sup> defile.

<sup>8</sup> fail.

<sup>11</sup> circle.

<sup>6</sup> the rear-guard.

<sup>9</sup> affair, action.

<sup>2</sup> men to whom.

<sup>4</sup> in two divisions.

<sup>7</sup> in such a way that.

<sup>10</sup> attend to, discharge.

<sup>12</sup> to be blamed.

tamen incommodē accidit: nam et nostris militibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effecit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et desperatiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgō<sup>1</sup> milites ab signis discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properāret,<sup>2</sup> clamōre et flētū<sup>3</sup> omnia complerentur.

10. At barbaris consilium nōn defuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā acie prōnuntiārī iussērunt, nē quis ab locō discēderet: illōrum esse praedam atque illis reservārī quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent; proinde<sup>4</sup> omnia in victoriā posita existimārent. Erant et virtūte et numerō pugnandī parēs.<sup>5</sup> Nostrī tametsi ab duce et a fortunā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiens<sup>6</sup> quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnuntiārī iubet, ut procul tela cōneciant neu<sup>7</sup> propius accēdant et quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint cēdant: levitate<sup>8</sup> armōrum et cotidiānā exercitatiōne nihil his nocērī posse: rursus sē ad signa recipientēs<sup>9</sup> insequantur.

11. Quō praeceptō ab eis diligentissimē observatō, cum quaequam<sup>10</sup> cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs velōcissimē refugiebant. Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tela recipere. Rursus cum in eum locum unde erant prōgressi, reverti coeperant, et<sup>11</sup> ab eis quī cesserant et<sup>11</sup> ab eis quī proximī steterant circumveniebantur; sīn<sup>12</sup> autem locum tenēre vellent, nec

<sup>1</sup> everywhere.<sup>2</sup> hasten.<sup>3</sup> lamenting.<sup>4</sup> therefore.<sup>5</sup> equal, matched.<sup>6</sup> as often as.<sup>7</sup> and not.<sup>8</sup> lightness.<sup>9</sup> sc. Rōmānos: sē is the obj. of recipientēs.<sup>10</sup> any.<sup>11</sup> both . . . and.<sup>12</sup> but if.



virtūti locus relinquēbātur neque ab tantā multitudi-  
 ne coniecta tela confecti<sup>1</sup> vitare<sup>2</sup> poterant. Tamen tot incom-  
 modis conflictati<sup>3</sup> multis vulneribus acceptis resistēbant et  
 magnā parte diēi consumptā, cum ā primā luce ad hōram  
 5 octāvam pugnārētur, nihil quod ipsis esset indignum com-  
 mittēbant. Tum T. Balventiō, quī superiōre annō primum<sup>4</sup>  
 pilum<sup>4</sup> duxerat,<sup>4</sup> virō fortī et magnae auctoritātis, utrumque  
 femur<sup>5</sup> trāgulā trāicitur; Q. Lūcānius eiusdem ordinis,  
 fortissimē pugnans, dum circumventō filiō subvenit, inter-  
 10 ficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ordinesque adhor-  
 tans in<sup>6</sup> adversum<sup>6</sup> ōs<sup>6</sup> fundā vulnerātur.

12. His rebus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambi-  
 origem suōs cohortantem conspexisset, interpretem suum  
 Cn. Pompeiū ad eum mittit rogātum ut sibi militibusque  
 15 parcat. Ille appellātus respondet: si velit sēcum colloquī,  
 licēre; spērāre ā multitudine impetrārī posse quod ad<sup>7</sup>  
 militum salutem pertineat;<sup>7</sup> ipsi vērō nihil nocitum<sup>8</sup> iri,<sup>8</sup>  
 inque eam rem sē suam fidem<sup>9</sup> interpōnere.<sup>9</sup> Ille cum<sup>10</sup>  
 Cottā sauciō communicat,<sup>10</sup> si videātur,<sup>11</sup> pugnā ut excēdant  
 20 et cum Ambiorige unā colloquantur: spērāre sē ab eō dē  
 suā ac militum salute impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum  
 hostem itūrum negat atque in eō perseverat.

13. Sabīnus quōs in<sup>12</sup> praesentia<sup>12</sup> tribunōs militum circum  
 sē habēbat et primōrum ordinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet,  
 25 et cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abicere  
 imperātum facit suisque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim,

<sup>1</sup> closely packed.<sup>2</sup> to avoid.<sup>3</sup> harassed.<sup>4</sup> v. note 4, paragraph 5.<sup>5</sup> thigh.<sup>6</sup> full in the face.<sup>7</sup> concerned.<sup>8</sup> fut. infin. pass. of *noceō*.<sup>9</sup> he pledged his word.<sup>10</sup> consults.<sup>11</sup> seemed good.<sup>12</sup> at that time, under present circumstances (sc. *tempora*).<sup>13</sup> what was ordered.

dum de condicionibus inter se agunt longiorque consulto<sup>1</sup> ab Ambiorige instituitur sermo, paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more victoriam conclamant atque ululatum<sup>2</sup> tollunt impetumque in nostros facto ordinem perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maxima parte militum. Reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magna multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum proicit; ipse pro castris fortissime pugnans occiditur. Illi aegre ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent; nocte ad unum omnes desperata salute se ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proelio elapsi<sup>3</sup> incertis itineribus per silvas ad T. Labienum legatum in hiberna perveniunt, atque eum de rebus gestis certiores faciunt.

<sup>1</sup> designedly.<sup>2</sup> war-cry.<sup>3</sup> having escaped.

# GRAMMAR SUMMARISED,

## Nouns ending in -us.

	Case.	2nd Declension.	3rd Declension.		4th Declension.
Sing.	Nom.	mūr-us, <i>m., a wall</i>	virtūs, <i>f., valour.</i>	} pondus, <i>n., a weight.</i>	port-us, <i>m., a harbour.</i>
	Acc.	mūr-um	virtūt-em		port-um
	Gen.	mūr-i	virtūt-is	ponder-is	port-ūs
	Dat.	} mūr-ō	virtūt-i	ponder-i	port-ūi
	Abl.		virtūt-ē	ponder-e	port-ū
Plur.	Nom.	mūr-i	} virtūt-ēs	} ponder-a	port-ūs
	Acc.	mūr-ōs			
	Gen.	mūr-ōrum	virtūt-um	ponder-um	port-uum
	Dat.	} mūr-is	} virtūt-ibus	} ponder-ibus	} port-ibus
	Abl.				
		<i>Similarly.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i>
		amic-us, <i>m., friend.</i>	iuventūs, <i>f., youth.</i>	corp-us (-oris), <i>n., body.</i>	adit-us, <i>m., approach.</i>
		ann-us, <i>m., year.</i>	salus, <i>f., safety.</i>	cr-ūs (-ūris) <i>n., leg.</i>	advent-us, <i>m., arrival.</i>
		autumn-us, <i>m., autumn.</i>	senectūs, <i>f., old-age.</i>	frīg-us (-oris), <i>n., cold.</i>	curr-us, <i>m., chariot.</i>
		clipe-us, <i>m., shield.</i>	palūs (-ūdis), <i>f., a marsh</i>	gen-us (-eris), <i>n., kind.</i>	dom-us, <i>f., house.</i>
		digit-us, <i>m., finger.</i>	etc.	lat-us (-eris), <i>n., flank.</i>	man-us, <i>f., hand, hand.</i>
		equ-us, <i>m., horse.</i>		etc.	etc.
		etc.			

## Nouns ending in -a, -um, -ū.

	Case.	1st Declension.	2nd Declension.	4th Declension.
Sing.	Nom.	hast-a, <i>f., spear.</i>	} dōn-um, <i>n., gift.</i>	} cornū, <i>n., horn,</i> <i>wing.</i>
	Acc.	hast-am		
	Gen.	hast-ae	dōn-ī	cornū s
	Dat.	hast-ae	} dōn-ō	} cornū.
	Abl.	hast-ā		
Plur.	Nom.	hast-ae	} dōn-a	} cornu-a
	Acc.	hast-ās		
	Gen.	hast-ārum	dōn-ōrum	cornu-um
	Dat.	} hast-īs	} dōn-īs	} corn-ibus
	Abl.			
		<i>Similarly.</i> agricol-a, <i>m.,</i> <i>farmer.</i> amiciti-a, <i>f.,</i> <i>friendship.</i> culp-a, <i>f., fault.</i> Eurōp-a, <i>f.,</i> <i>Europe.</i> poēt-a, <i>m., poet.</i> etc.	<i>Similarly.</i> aur-um, <i>n., gold.</i> castell-um, <i>n.,</i> <i>fort.</i> essed-um, <i>n.,</i> <i>chariot.</i> ferr-um, <i>n., iron.</i> iuss-um, <i>n., com-</i> <i>mand.</i> etc.	<i>Similarly.</i> genu, <i>n., knee.</i>

Nouns ending in **-er**.

	Case.	2nd Declension.		3rd Declension.	
Sing.	Nom.	puer, <i>m.</i> , <i>boy.</i>	liber, <i>m.</i> , <i>book.</i>	pater, <i>m.</i> , <i>father.</i>	} iter, <i>n.</i> , <i>journey.</i>
	Acc.	puer- <b>um</b>	libr- <b>um</b>	patr- <b>em</b>	
	Gen.	puer- <b>i</b>	libr- <b>i</b>	patr- <b>is</b>	itiner- <b>is</b>
	Dat.	} puer- <b>ō</b>	} libr- <b>ō</b>	patr- <b>i</b>	itiner- <b>i</b>
	Abl.			patr- <b>e</b>	
Plur.	Nom.	puer- <b>i</b>	libr- <b>i</b>	} patr- <b>ēs</b>	} itiner- <b>ā</b>
	Acc.	puer- <b>ōs</b>	libr- <b>ōs</b>		
	Gen.	puer- <b>ōrum</b>	libr- <b>ōrum</b>	patr- <b>um</b>	itiner- <b>um</b>
	Dat.	} puer- <b>īs</b>	} libr- <b>īs</b>	} patr- <b>ibus</b>	} itiner- <b>ibus</b>
	Abl.				
		<i>Similarly.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i>
		aquilifer, <i>m.</i> , <i>standard-</i> <i>bearer.</i>	ager, <i>m.</i> , <i>field.</i>	māter, <i>f.</i> , <i>mother.</i>	vēr (vēr- <b>is</b> ), <i>n.</i> , <i>spring.</i>
		liberī, <i>m. pl.</i> , <i>children.</i>	aper, <i>m.</i> , <i>wild boar.</i>	frāter, <i>m.</i> , <i>brother.</i>	(no plural.)
		signifer, <i>m.</i> , <i>standard-</i> <i>bearer.</i>	faber, <i>m.</i> , <i>engineer.</i>	mulier, <i>f.</i> , (mulier- <b>is</b> ), <i>woman.</i>	
		vesper, <i>m.</i> , <i>evening.</i> (plural not used.)	nostrī, <i>m. pl.</i> , <i>our-men.</i> etc.	passer (pas- ser <b>is</b> ) <i>m.</i> , <i>sparrow.</i>	
				vesper (ves- per <b>is</b> ), <i>m.</i> , <i>evening.</i>	

Nouns ending in **-es**.

Case.		3rd Declension.		5th Declension.
Sing.	Nom.	equēs, <i>m., horse-man.</i>	clād-ēs, <i>f., disaster, defeat.</i>	diē-s, <i>m. or f., day.</i>
	Acc.	equit- <b>em</b>	clād- <b>em</b>	diē- <b>m</b>
	Gen.	equit- <b>is</b>	clād- <b>is</b>	diē- <b>ī</b>
	Dat.	equit <b>ī</b>	clād- <b>ī</b>	diē <b>ī</b>
	Abl.	equit- <b>e</b>	clād- <b>ē</b>	di <b>ē</b>
Plur.	Nom.	} equit- <b>ēs</b>	} clād- <b>ēs</b>	} diē- <b>s</b>
	Acc.			
	Gen.	equit- <b>um</b>	clād- <b>ium</b>	diē- <b>rum</b>
	Dat.	} equit- <b>ibus</b>	} clād- <b>ibus</b>	} diē- <b>bus</b>
	Abl.			
		<i>Similarly.</i> miles, <i>m., soldier.</i> obses, <i>m. or f., hostage.</i> pedes, <i>m., foot soldier.</i> etc.	<i>Similarly.</i> caedēs, <i>f., slaughter.</i> sēdēs, <i>f., seat, place.</i> vallēs, <i>f., valley.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i> aciē- <b>s</b> , <i>f., line of battle.</i> fidē- <b>s</b> , <i>f., faith.</i> rē- <b>s</b> , <i>f., thing.</i> speciē- <b>s</b> , <i>f., appearance.</i> etc.

## THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS.

	Case.	Nouns in -is.	Nouns in -ās.	Nouns in -ō.	
Sing.	Nom.	collis, <i>m.</i>	civitas, <i>f.</i>	leo, <i>m.</i>	homō, <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i>
	Acc.	coll- <b>em</b>	civitāt- <b>em</b>	leōn- <b>em</b>	homīn- <b>em</b>
	Gen.	coll- <b>is</b>	civitāt- <b>is</b>	leōn- <b>is</b>	homin- <b>is</b>
	Dat.	coll- <b>ī</b>	civitāt- <b>ī</b>	leōn- <b>ī</b>	homin- <b>ī</b>
	Abl.	coll- <b>e</b>	civitāt- <b>e</b>	leōn- <b>e</b>	homin- <b>e</b>
Plur.	Nom.	coll- <b>ēs</b>	} civitāt- <b>ēs</b>	} leōn- <b>ēs</b>	} homin- <b>ēs</b>
	Acc.	coll- <b>ēs(īs)</b>			
	Gen.	coll- <b>ium</b>	civitāt- <b>um</b>	leōn- <b>um</b>	homin- <b>um</b>
	Dat.	} coll- <b>ibus</b>	} civitāt- <b>ibus</b>	} leōn- <b>ibus</b>	} homin- <b>ibus</b>
	Abl.				
		<i>Similarly.</i> avis, <i>f.</i> civis, <i>m</i> or <i>f.</i> ensis, <i>m.</i> finis, <i>m.</i> ignis, <i>m.</i> iuvenis, <i>m.</i> etc.	<i>Similarly.</i> aestas, <i>f.</i> auctoritas, <i>f.</i> potestas, <i>f.</i> facultas, <i>f.</i> difficultas, <i>f.</i> tempestas, <i>f.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i> cālō, <i>m.</i> praedō, <i>m.</i> latrō, <i>m.</i> <i>Nouns in -iō.</i> condiciō, <i>f.</i> deditiō, <i>f.</i> ratiō, <i>f.</i> cohortātiō, <i>f.</i> eruptiō, <i>f.</i> etc.	<i>Similarly.</i> altitudō, <i>f.</i> consuetudō, <i>f.</i> Carthāgō, <i>f.</i> multitudō, <i>f.</i> ordō, <i>m.</i> " etc.

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS—*continued*.

	Case.	Nouns in <b>-en.</b>	Nouns in <b>-e.</b>	Nouns in <b>-or.</b>
Sing.	Nom.	} <b>nōmen, n.</b>	} <b>mar-e, n.</b>	<b>dolor, m.</b>
	Acc.			<b>dolōr-em</b>
	Gen.	<b>nōmin-is</b>	<b>mar-is</b>	<b>dolōr-is</b>
	Dat.	<b>nōmin-ī</b>	} <b>mar-ī</b>	<b>dolōr-ī</b>
	Abl.	<b>nōmin-e</b>		<b>dolōr-e</b>
Plur.	Nom.	} <b>nōmin-a</b>	} <b>mar-ia</b>	} <b>dolōr-ēs</b>
	Acc.			
	Gen.	<b>nōmin-um</b>	<b>mar-ium</b>	<b>dolōr-um</b>
	Dat.	} <b>nōmin-ibus</b>	} <b>mar-ibus</b>	} <b>dolōr-ibus</b>
	Abl.			
		<i>Similarly.</i> <b>carmen, n.</b> <b>agmen, n.</b> <b>certāmen, n.</b> <b>discrīmen, n.</b>	<i>Similarly.</i> <b>cubile, n.</b> <b>calcar, n.</b> <b>animal, n.</b> <b>missile, n.</b> <b>rēte, n. (abl.</b> <b>rēte)</b>	<i>Similarly.</i> <b>arbor(-ōris), f.</b> <b>color, m.</b> <b>labor, m.</b> <b>funditor, m.</b> <b>ūxor, f.</b> <b>vēnātor, m.</b>



ADJECTIVES IN **-us** (FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION).

Case.	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	long- <b>us</b>	long- <b>a</b>	long- <b>um</b>	long- <b>ī</b>	long- <b>ae</b>	long- <b>a</b>
Acc.	long- <b>um</b>	long- <b>am</b>	long- <b>um</b>	long- <b>ōs</b>	long- <b>ās</b>	long- <b>a</b>
Gen.	long- <b>ī</b>	long- <b>ae</b>	long- <b>ī</b>	long- <b>ōrum</b>	long- <b>ārum</b>	long- <b>ōrum</b>
Dat.	long- <b>ō</b>	long- <b>ae</b>	long- <b>ō</b>	} long- <b>īs</b> ( <i>all genders</i> )		
Abl.	long- <b>ō</b>	long- <b>ā</b>	long- <b>ō</b>			

*N.B.*—The following adjectives, with their compounds, have the Genitive Singular in **-ius**, and the Dative in **ī** in all genders.

alius ( <i>n. aliud</i> ), <i>other</i> .	tōtus, <i>whole of</i> .
nullus, <i>none</i> .	ullus, <i>any</i> .
sōlus, <i>alone</i> .	ūnus, <i>one</i> .

Case.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	nullus	nulla	‘nullūm
Acc.	nullum	nullam	nullum
Gen.		nullius	
Dat.		nullī	
Abl.	nullō	nullā	nullō

ADJECTIVES IN **-er** (FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION).

Case.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	tener	tener-a	tener-um	pulcher	pulchr-a	pulchr-um
Acc.	tener-um	tener-am	tener-um	pulchr-um	pulchr-am	pulchr-um
Gen.	tener-ī	tener-ae	tener-ī	pulchr-ī	pulchr-ae	pulchr-ī
Dat.	tener-ō	tener-ae	tener-ō	pulchr-ō	pulchr-ae	pulchr-ō
Abl.	tener-ō	tener-ā	tener-ō	pulchr-ō	pulchr-ā	pulchr-ō
Nom.	tener-ī	tener-ae	tener-a	pulchr-ī	pulchr-ae	pulchr-a
Acc.	tener-ōs	tener-ās	tener-a	pulchr-ōs	pulchr-ās	pulchr-a
Gen.	tener-ōrum	tener-ārum	tener-ōrum	pulchr-ōrum	pulchr-ārum	pulchr-ōrum
Dat.	tener-is (all genders)	tener-is (all genders)	tener-is (all genders)	pulchr-ōrum	pulchr-ārum	pulchr-ōrum
Abl.						
	Similarly, liber, era, erum, free, miser, era, erum, wretched, pomifer, era, erum, fruit-bearing.			Similarly, crēber, numerous, dexter, right hand, impiger, active, sinister, left hand, vester, your.		

*N.B.*—The adjectives **alter**, **neuter**, **uter** make Genitive Singular in **-ius**, and Dative Singular in **-ī**.

## THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES.

Case.	THREE TERMINATIONS.		
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	ācer	ācer- <b>is</b>	ācer- <b>e</b>
Acc.	ācer- <b>em</b>	ācer- <b>em</b>	ācer- <b>e</b>
Gen.		ācer- <b>is</b>	
Dat.		ācer- <b>ī</b>	
Abl.		ācer- <b>ī</b>	
Nom.	ācerēs	ācerēs	ācer- <b>ia</b>
Acc.	ācer- <b>ēs(is)</b>	ācer- <b>ēs(is)</b>	ācer- <b>ia</b>
Gen.		ācer- <b>ium</b>	
Dat.			
Abl.		ācer- <b>ibus</b>	

*Similarly.*

December, bris, bre.

equester, tris, tre.

November, bris, bre.

pedester, tris, tre. “

etc.

**celer** keeps the **e** throughout ; celer, celeris, celere,  
Acc. celerem, celere, etc.

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES—*continued.*

Case.	TWO TERMINATIONS.		ONE TERMINATION.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	brev-is	brev-e	ingens	
Acc.	brev-em	brev-e	ingent-em	ingens
Gen.	brev-is		ingent-is	
Dat.	brev-ī		ingent-ī	
Abl.	brev-ī		ingent-ī(e)	
Nom.	brevēs	brevia	ingentēs	ingentia
Acc.	brev-ēs(is)	brev-ia	ingent-ēs(is)	ingent-ia
Gen.	brev-ium		ingent-ium	
Dat.	} brev-ibus		} ingent-ibus	
Abl.				
	<i>Similarly.</i> Aprilis, e. crūdēlis, e. dulcis, e. facilis, e. fortis, e. etc.		<i>Similarly.</i> sapiens. audax (audāc-). duplex (duplic-). ferox (ferōc-). velox (vēlōc-). etc.	

*N.B.*—The adjective **dīves** (rich) is of 'one termination,' but has the following exceptional forms:—

*Abl. sing.*, divite; *nom. pl. neut.*, ditia (for divitia); and *gen. pl.*, divit-um.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## SINGULAR.

Case.	First Person.	Second Person.	Third Person.
Nom.	<b>ego</b> I.	<b>tū</b> , thou.	Personal Pronouns of this person — <i>he, she, it,</i> <i>they</i> —are wanting. Their place is often taken by a Demonstra- tive Pro- noun.
Acc.	<b>mē</b> , me.	<b>tē</b> , thee.	
Gen.	<b>meī</b> , of me.	<b>tui</b> , of thee.	
Dat.	<b>mihī</b> , to, for me.	<b>tibi</b> , to, for thee.	
Abl.	<b>ā mē</b> , from me.	<b>ā tē</b> , about thee.	
PLURAL.			
Case.	First Person.	Second Person.	
Nom.	<b>nos</b> , we.	<b>vōs</b> , you.	
Acc.	<b>nōs</b> , us.	<b>vōs</b> , you.	
Gen.	<b>nostrum(ī)</b> , of us.	<b>vestrum(ī)</b> , of you.	
Dat.	<b>nōbis</b> , to us.	<b>vōbis</b> , to, for you.	
Abl.	<b>nōbis</b> ( <i>cum</i> ), with us.	<b>ā vōbis</b> , by you.	

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

The Reflexive Pronoun of the third person is thus declined.

Acc.	<b>sē</b> ( <b>sēsē</b> )	himself, herself, itself, themselves.
Gen.	<b>sui</b>	of himself, etc.
Dat.	<b>sibi</b>	to, for himself, etc.
Abl.	<b>prō sē</b> ( <b>sēsē</b> )	on-behalf of himself, etc.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

[illegible]

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

	Case.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing.	Nom.	{ quis { quī	qua (quae)	{ quid (subst.) { quod (adj.)	{ aliquis (subst.) { aliqua (adj.)	{ aliquis (subst.) { aliqua (adj.)	{ aliquid (subst.) { aliquid (adj.)
	Acc.	quem	quam	{ quid (subst.) { quod (adj.)	aliquem	aliquam	{ aliquid (subst.) { aliquid (adj.)
	Gen.		cuius			alicuius	
	Dat. Abl.		cui quā	quō	aliquō	alicui aliquā	aliquō
Plur.	Nom.	quī	quae	qua	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
	Acc.	quōs	quās	qua	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
	Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
	Dat. Abl.		quibus			aliquis (aliquibus)	
Sing.	Nom.	quidam	quaedam	{ quiddam (subst.) { quoddam (adj.)	quisquam	quisquam (quaequam)	{ quicquam <sup>1</sup> (subst.) { quodquam (adj.)
	Acc.	quendam	quandam	{ quiddam (subst.) { quoddam (adj.)	quemquam	quamquam	{ quicquam <sup>1</sup> (subst.) { quodquam (adj.)
	Gen.		cuiusdam			cuiusquam	
	Dat. Abl.		euidam quādam	quōdam	quōquam	cuiquam quāquam	quōquam
Plur.	Nom.	quīdan <sup>2</sup>	quaedam	quēdam	quīquam	quaequam	quaequam
	Acc.	quōsdam	quasdam	quēdam	quosquam	quasquam	quaequam
	Gen.	quōrundam	quarundam	quōrundam	quōrumquam	quārumquam	quōrumquam
	Dat. Abl.		quibusdam			quibusquam	

<sup>1</sup> Or 'quidquam.'For declension of *quisque*, v. Less. 16.

## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

	Case.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing.	Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quis	quis	quid
	Acc.	quem	quam	quod	(qui)	(quae)	(quod)
	Gen.		cūius		quem	quam	quid(quod)
	Dat.		cui				
	Abl.	quō	quā	quō	The remaining cases of the Singular, and all cases of the Plural (except n. pl. Nom. and Acc. 'qua') are like those of 'qui.'		
Plur.	Nom.	quī	quae	quae			
	Acc.	quōs	quās	quae			
	Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quorum			
	Dat.	} quibus (quīs)					
	Abl.						

## THE VERB 'sum.'

Present	sum, es, est, sumus, estis, sunt.
Future	erō, eris, erit, erimus, eritis, erunt.
Imperfect	eram, erās, erat, erāmus, eratis, erant.
Perfect	fu-i -istī -it -imus -istis -ērunt or -ēre.
Future Perfect	fu-erō -erīs -erit -erīmus -erītis -erint.
Pluperfect	fu-eram -erās -erat -erāmus -erātis -erant.

For Subj. Mood *v.* Less. 31, pp. 131, 132.



## THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

## Present Tense.

1st.	2nd.	3rd.		4th.
port-ō	time-ō	dūc-ō	faci-ō	mūni-ō
portā-s	timē-s	dūc-i-s	faci-s	mūnī-s
porta-t	time-t	dūc-i-t	faci-t	mūni-t
portā-mus	timē-mus	dūc-i-mus	faci-mus	mūnī-mus
portā-tis	timē-tis	dūc-i-tis	faci-tis	mūnī-tis
porta-nt	time-nt	dūc-u-nt	faci-u-nt	mūni-u-nt

## REMAINING TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

Future, <i>I shall carry,</i> etc.	portā	}	-bō -bis -bit -bimus -bitis -bunt.
	timē		
	dūc	}	-am -ēs -et -ēmus -ētis -ent.
	faci		

Imperfect, <i>I was carrying,</i> etc.	portā	}	-bam -bās -bat -bāmus -bātis -bant.
	timē		
	dūcē		
	faciē		
	mūniē		

REMAINING TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE (*continued*).

Perfect, <i>I have carried,</i> or <i>I carried, etc.</i>	portāv timu dux fēc mūniv	i -istī <sup>1</sup> -it -imus -istis <sup>1</sup> -ērunt <sup>1</sup> or -ere.
Future Perfect, <i>I shall have carried, etc.</i>	portāv <sup>2</sup> timu dux fēc mūniv <sup>3</sup>	erō -erīs -erit -erīmus -erītis -erint.
Pluperfect, <i>I had carried, etc.</i>	portāv <sup>4</sup> timu dux fēc mūniv <sup>5</sup>	-eram -erās -erat -erāmus -erātis -erant

<sup>1</sup> or portastī, portastis, portārunt (āre)  
or mūnistī, mūnistis, mūnērunt (ere).

<sup>2</sup> or portārō, portāris. etc.

<sup>3</sup> or mūniero, mūnieris, etc.

<sup>4</sup> or portāram, portārās, etc.

<sup>5</sup> or mūnieram, mūnierās, etc.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD ACTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

Tense.	1st Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	'Mixed' Conj.	4th Conj.
Present	port-em	tene-am	duc-am	capi-am	muni-am
	port-ēs	tene-ās	duc-ās	capi-ās	muni-ās
	port-et	tene-at	duc-at	capi-at	muni-at
	port-ēmus	tene-āmus	duc-āmus	capi-āmus	muni-āmus
	port-ētis	tene-ātis	duc-ātis	capi-ātis	muni-ātis
Imperfect	port-ent	tene-ant	duc-ant	capi-ant	muni-ant
	portā-rem	tene-rem	duc-rem	capi-rem	muni-rem
	portā-rēs	tene-rēs	duc-rēs	capi-rēs	muni-rēs
	portā-ret	tene-ret	duc-ret	capi-ret	muni-ret
	portā-rēmus	tene-rēmus	duc-rēmus	capi-rēmus	muni-rēmus
Perfect	portā-rētis	tene-rētis	duc-rētis	capi-rētis	muni-rētis
	portā-rent	tene-rent	duc-rent	capi-rent	muni-rent
	portā-(ve)rim	ten-u-erim	dux-erim	cēp-erim	mūni(v)-erim <sup>1</sup>
	portā-(ve)ris	ten-u-eris	dux-eris	cēp-eris	mūni(v)-eris
	portā-(ve)rit	ten-u-erit	dux-erit	cēp-erit	mūni(v)-erit
Pluperfect	portā-(ve)rīmus	ten-u-erīmus	dux-erīmus	cēp-erīmus	mūni(v)-erīmus
	portā-(ve)rītis	ten-u-erītis	dux-erītis	cēp-erītis	mūni(v)-erītis
	portā-(ve)rint	ten-u-erint	dux-erint	cēp-erint	mūni(v)-erint
	portā-(vi)issem	ten-u-issem	dux-issem	cēp-issem	mūni(v)-issem <sup>1</sup>
	portā-(vi)isses	ten-u-isses	dux-isses	cēp-isses	mūni(v)-isses
	portā-(vi)isset	ten-u-isset	dux-isset	cēp-isset	mūni(v)-isset
	portā-(vi)issemus	ten-u-issemus	dux-issemus	cēp-issemus	mūni(v)-issemus
	portā-(vi)issetis	ten-u-issetis	dux-issetis	cēp-issetis	mūni(v)-issetis
	portā-(vi)issent	ten-u-issent	dux-issent	cēp-issent	mūni(v)-issent

<sup>1</sup> in the form mūnierim, mūniissem. *etc.*, the **i** is shortened before a vowel.

## THE INFINITIVE MOOD ACTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

	1st. Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	'Mixed' Conj.	4th <sup>o</sup> Conj.
Present	portā-re	tenē-re	duce-re	capi-re	mūnī-re
Perfect	portā-(vi)sse	ten-u-isse	dux-isse	cep-isse	mūnī-(vi)sse
Future	portā-t-ūrus (esse)	ten-t-ūrus (esse)	duc-t-ūrus (esse)	cap-t-ūrus (esse)	mūnī-t-ūrus (esse)
GERUNDS.					
Nom. & Acc. Gen.	portā-ndum portā-ndi	tenē-ndum tenē-ndi	duce-ndum duce-ndi	capi-e-ndum capi-e-ndi	mūnī-e-ndum mūnī-e-ndi
Dat. & Abl.	portā-ndō	tenē-ndō	duce-ndō	capi-e-ndō	mūnī-e-ndō
SUPINES.					
Acc. Dat. & Abl.	portā-t-um portā-t-ū	ten-t-um ten-t-ū	duc-t-um duc-t-ū	cap-t-um cap-t-ū	mūnī-t-um mūnī-t-ū
PARTICIPLES.					
Present	portā-ns	tenē-ns	duce-ns	capi-e-ns	mūnī-e-ns
Future	portā-t-urus	ten-t-ūrus	duc-t-ūrus	cap-t-ūrus	mūnī-t-ūrus

FIRST CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE: **portor**, *I am carried*.

PRESENT TENSE.		FUTURE TENSE.		IMPERFECT TENSE.	
Indic.	Subj.	Indic.		Indic.	Subj.
port(ā)-or	porte-r	portā-bor		portā-bar	portā-rer
portā-ris	portē-ris(re)	portā-beris(bere)		portā-bāris(bāre)	portā-rēris(rēre)
portā-tur	portē-tur	portā-bitur		portā-bātur	portā-rētur
portā-mur	portē-mur	portā-bimur		portā-bāmur	portā-rēmur
portā-minī	portē-minī	portā-biminī		portā-bāminī	portā-rēminī
porta-ntur	porte-ntur	portā-buntur		portā-bantur	portā-rentur

PERFECT TENSE.		FUT. PERF. TENSE.		PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
Indic.	Subj.	Indic.		Indic.	Subj.
portātus sum	portātus sim	portātus erō		portātus eram	portātus essem
" es	" sis	eris		erās	essēs
" est	" sit	erit		erat	esset
portātī sumus	portātī simus	portātī erimus		portātī erāmus	portātī essēmus
" estis	" sitis	eritis		erātis	essētis
" sunt	" sint	erunt		erant	essent

Infinitive Mood. portā-rī (*pres.*); portātus esse (*perf.*); portātum irī (*fut.*).

Perfect Participle. portātus.

Gerundive. portā-ndus.

Imperative Mood. v. Less. 57.

For Deponent verbs of the First Conjugation (cōnor, hortor, conspicio, etc.), v. p. 282.

SECOND CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE: **teneor, I am held.**

	Pres. Indic.	Pres. Subj.	Fut. Indic.	Imperf. Indic.	Imperf. Subj.
tēnē <sup>1</sup>	-or, -ris, -tur -mur, -minī, -ntur	-ar, -āris (āre), -ātur -āmur, -āminī, -antur	-bor, -beris (bere), -bitur -bimur, -biminī, -buntur	-bar, -bāris (bāre), -bātur -bāmur, -bāminī, -bantur	-rer, -rēris (rēre), -rētur -rēmur, -rēminī, -rentur
tentus	Perf. Indic.	Perf. Subj.	Fut. Perf. Indic.	Pluperf. Indic.	Pluperf. Subj.
tentī	sum, es, est sumus, estis, sunt	sim, sis, sit simus, sitis, sint	erō, eris, erit erimus, eritis, erunt	eram, erās, erat, erātis, erant	essem, essēs, esset, essētis, essent

Infinitive Mood.    tēnē-rī (*pres.*); tentus esse (*perf.*); tentum iri (*fut.*).

Perf. Participle.    tentus.

Gerundive.    tēnē-ndus.

Imperative Mood. *v. Less. 57.* For Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation, (**polliceor, vereor, etc.**), *v. p. 282.*<sup>1</sup> The ē is shortened before a vowel, tēnē-or, tēnē-ar, etc.

THIRD CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE: **dūcor**, *I am led*.

	Pres. Indic.	Pres. Subj.	Fut. Indic.	Imperf. Indic.	Imperf. Subj.
	dūc-or, dūc-e-ris dūc-i-tur, dūc-i-mur dūc-i-mīnī, dūc-u-ntur	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -ar, -āris \\ (āre), -ātur \\ -āmur, -āminī, \\ -antur \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -ar, -ēris \\ (ēre), -ētur \\ -ēmur, -ēminī, \\ -entur \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -bar, -bāris \\ (bāre) -bātur \\ -bāmur, -bāminī, \\ -bantur \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -rer, -rēris(rēre), \\ -rētur \\ -rēmur, -rēminī, \\ -rentur \end{array} \right.$
	Perf. Indic.	Perf. Subj.	Fut. Perf. Indic.	Pluperf. Indic.	Pluperf. Subj.
ductus	sum, es, est	sim, sis, sit	erō, eris, erit	eram, erās, erat	essem, essēs, esset
ducti	sumus, estis, sunt	simus, sitis, sint	erimus, eritis, erunt	erāmus, erātis, erant	essēmus, essētis, essent

Infinitive Mood. dūc-i (*pres.*); ductus esse (*perf.*); ductum iri (*fut.*).

Perf. Participle. ductus.

Gerundive. dūcē-ndus.

Imperative Mood. *v.* Less. 57.loquor. sequor, etc., *v.* p. 282.For Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation (**fruo**,

VERBS ENDING IN -ior.  
'MIXED' AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS—PASSIVE VOICE.

	Pres. Indic.	Pres. Subj. •	Fut. Indic.	Imperf. Indic.	Imperf. Subj.
capi	-or, <sup>1</sup> ris, <sup>2</sup> -tur	-ar, -āris (āre), -ātur	-ar, -ēris (ēre), -ētur	-ēbar, -ēbāris (ēbare), -ēbātur	-rer, <sup>3</sup> -rēris (rēre), -rētur
mūnī <sup>1</sup>	-mur, -mini, -untur	-āmur, -āminī, -antur	-ēmur, -ēminī, -entur	-ēbāmur, -ēbāminī, -ēbantur	-rēmur, -rēminī, -rentur
	Perf. Indic.	Perf. Subj.	Fut. Perf. Indic.	Pluperf. Indic.	Pluperf. Subj.
captus	sum, es, est	sim, sis, sit	ero, eris, erit	eram, erās, erat	essem, essēs,
mūnītus					esset
capi	sumus, estis.	sīmus, sītis,	erimus, eritis,	erāmus, erātis,	essemus, essētis.
mūnīti	sunt	sint	erunt	erant	essent

Infinitive Mood. { capi } captus esse } perf. captum iri } fut.  
 { mūnī-r-i } pass. mūnītus esse }  
 { captus. }  
 { mūnītus. }

Perf. Participle.

Gerundive.  
 { capi-e-ndus.  
 { mūnī-e-ndus.

Imperative Mood. *v. Less. 57.* For Deponent Verbs of the 'Mixed' Conjugation (**aggredior**, **morior**, **patior**, *etc.*), and of the Fourth Conjugation (**exporior**, **potior**, **orior**, *etc.*), *v. p. 282.*

<sup>1</sup> The **i** is shortened before a vowel, mūnīuntur. mūnībar, *etc.*

<sup>2</sup> 2nd pers. sing. pres. indic., cape-ris.

<sup>3</sup> capior makes imperf. subj., cape-rer, -rēris, *etc.*



**Deponent verbs** are conjugated like the Passive voices of their respective Conjugations, except in the Future Infinitive, which is of the *Active* form.

They have also (1) a form in **-re** in the 2nd sing. pres. indic. (2) Gerunds, Supines, and a Present Participle.

### THE INFINITIVE MOOD OF SOME DEPONENT VERBS.

	cōnor. 1.	vereor. 2.	loquor. 3.	patior. 'mixed.'	potior. 4.
Pres. Infin.	cōnā-rī	verē-rī	loquī	patī	potī-rī
Perf. "	cōnātus esse	veritus esse	locūtus esse	passus esse	potitus esse
Fut. "	cōnāturus (esse)	veritūrus (esse)	locūtūrus (esse)	passūrus (esse)	potitūrus (esse)
Gerunds	cōnandum, ī, ō	verendum, ī, ō	loquendum, ī, ō	patiendum, ī, ō	potiendum, ī, ō
Supines	cōnātum, tū	veritum, tū	locūtum, tū	passum, sū	potitum, tū
Pres. Part.	cōnā-ns	verē-ns	loque-ns	pati-e-ns	poti-e-ns
Perf. "	cōnātus	veritus	locūtus	passus	potitus
Fut. "	cōnāturus	veritūrus	locūtūrus	passūrus	potitūrus
Gerundive <sup>1</sup>	cōnandus	verendus	loquendus	patiendus	potiendus

*N.B.*—*morior*. 3. makes fut. part. *moritūrus*.

*orior*. 4. makes pres. indic. 2nd sing. *orēris*, 3rd sing. *oritur*; imperf. subj. 3rd sing. *orerētur*, 3rd pl. *orerentur*, fut. part. *oritūrus*.

*potior*. 4. makes pres. indic. 3rd sing. *potiatur*, 1st pl. *potimur*.

### SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

Four Active verbs, having no Perfect Stem, take a Deponent form in the Perfect tenses. They are called 'semi-deponent' verbs, and are

**audēō**. 2., I dare—*perf.* **ausus sum**.

**fidēō**. 3., I trust—*perf.* **fusus sum**.

**gaudeō**. 2., I rejoice—*perf.* **gāvisus sum**.

**solēō**. 2., I am accustomed—*perf.* **solitus sum**.

<sup>1</sup> Only found of Transitive verbs, or of Intransitive verbs used impersonally.

# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

comm., common gen-der.	freq., frequentative.	prep., preposition.
demonstr., demon- strative.	gov., governing.	pron., pronoun.
dim., diminutive.	indecl., indeclinable.	qualif., qualifying.
distrib., distributive.	interrog., interrogative.	q.v., quod vide (which see).
esp., especially.	irreg., irregular.	v.a., verb active.
	num., numeral.	v.n., verb neuter.
	part., participle.	

The numbers refer to the Lessons, in most cases to the first Lesson in which any particular word is found. The presence of only one number does not necessarily imply that the word in question occurs only once.

## A

**ā, ab, prep. gov. abl.** from, by, 1.  
hostes ab utrōque latere impetum faciunt.  
castra a barbaris oppugnantur.  
**ab-ditus.** 8. *perf. part. pass.* of abdo q.v.  
**ab-dō.** 3. -didī, -ditum, v.a. I hide, 8, 26.  
ferac se in silvas abdunt.  
**ab-iciō.** 3. -iēcī, -iectum, v.a. I throw, throw away, 4.  
nostri perterriti tela abiciunt.  
**ab-sum, -esse, fui, v.n.** I am away, distant, 22.  
die, explorātor, quot milia passuum ab sunt hostes?  
longe abest quin, 39, q.v.  
**ac, conj.** and, 8.  
turrēs ac vineae aguntur.  
**ac-cēdō.** 3. -cessī, -cessum, v.n. I approach, 4, 33; *impers.*, 26. Fr. *accéder*.  
noctū ad oppidum accessimus.  
**accēdit quod, ut,** it is added that, 29, q.v.

**ac-cidō.** 3. -cidī, no supine, v.n. to happen, 4; foll. by **ut**, 43. Fr. *accident*.  
haec res contra opinionem accidit.  
**ac-cipiō.** 3. -cēpī, -ceptum, v.a. I receive (vulnus), 1; sustain (calamitatem), 15; accept (condicionem), 25.  
lēgātus grave vulnus accipit.  
**accommodō.** 1. -āvī, -ātum, v.a. I fit, put on, 18.  
milites galeis insignia accommodant.  
**accommodātus, a, um,** 44. *perf. part. pass.* of accommodo; (used adjectivally) adapted, conformable to.  
ducis oratio ad hortandō animos accommodata fuit.  
**ac-currō.** 3. -cucurvi and -curri, -cursum, v.n. I run up, 11. Fr. *accourir*.  
nuntii undique ad Caesarem accurrunt.  
**aciēs, ēī, f.** line of battle, 1.  
aciēs quartā hōrā instruitur.

**âcriter**, *adv.* keenly, fiercely, 7;  
*compar.* **âcrius**; *superl.* **âcerrimê**,  
51.

barbari âcrius opiniône resistunt.

**actûrus**, *a, um*, 22. *fut. part. act.* of  
*ago, q.v.*

**actus**, *a, um*, *perf. part. pass.* of  
*ago, q.v.*

**ad**, *prep. gov. acc.* to, towards,  
12; (of time) 26; for, 3; up-to, 28;  
in the neighbourhood of, 8; with  
gerund, 3; with gerundive, 18.  
Fr. *à*.

Caesar ad Galliam proficiscitur

**adducô**. 3. **-duxi, -ductum**, *v.a.* I  
lead, bring to, 21; prevail upon, in-  
duce, 43; mostly in *perf. part.*  
*pass.* adductus, 9, 21, etc.

his rebus adducti coniurationem  
faciunt.

**adeô**, *adv.* so, so very, 31.

ea res adeo ardua erat.

**ad-eô, -ire, -iî, -itum**, *v.n.* and *a.* I  
approach, go to, 4, 31.

num nuntius ad mûrôs adire  
potest?

**adficiô**. 3. **-feci, -fectum**, *v.a.* I  
affect—in a good sense, 4; in a bad  
sense, 3, 42.

exercitus frumentî inopia ad  
ficitur.

**adfigô**. 3. **-fixi, -fictum**, *v.a.* I strike  
shatter, 26. Fr. *affliger*.

naves tempestâte afflictae sunt.

**adfore**, 26. *fut. infin.* of *ad-sum, q.v.*

**adhaereô**. 2. **-haesi, -haesum**, *v.n.*  
I adhere to, 4. Fr. *adhérer*.

ad quid adhaesit trâgula?

**adhibeô**. 2. **-hibui, -hibitum**, *v.a.* I  
employ, 19.

in rebus agendis diligentiam ad-  
hibere debemus.

**âdiciô**. 3. **iêci, -iectum**, *v.a.* I put  
near, 28.

agger a nostris ad muros âdicie-  
batur.

**adigô**. 3. **-egi, -actum**, *v.a.* (with  
iureiurandô) I put a person on  
oath, 36.

Caesar barbarôrûm ducem iure-  
iurandô adëgit.

**adipiscor**. 3. **adeptus v. dep.** I get,  
obtain, 46.

gloriam adipisci experiamur!

**aditus, ūs, m.** an approach, 15.

insula aditum facilem nōn habuit.

**adiûtor, ōris, m.** a helper, assistant,  
36, 48.

barbari Cicerōnem adiûtōrem  
recusabant.

**ad-ministrô**. 1. **-âvi, -âtum**, *v.a.* I  
attend upon, manage, 17, 50. Fr.  
*administrer*.

res publica benê administrâtur.

**admodum**, *adv.* fully, completely, 4.  
sex milia admodum hostium  
caesa sunt.

**ad-olescô**. 3. **-olêvi, v. incep.** I grow  
up, 12. Fr. *adolescence*.  
tempore adoleseunt liberi.

**ad-orior**. 4. **-ortus, v. dep.** I assault,  
attack (secretly, by stealth), 6.  
urbem dolo adoremur.

**ad-port ô**. 1. **-âvi, -âtum**, *v.a.* I bring  
to, 23.

unde commentûs adportabunt-  
ur?

**ad-sum, -esse, -fuî**, *v.n.* I am at hand,  
present, 26.

quis adest?

**adulescens, centis, comm.** a young  
person, 35.

adulescentês senibus nōn sem-  
per parent.

**adulescentulus, î, m.** a very young  
man, 27.

num adulescentulus belli peritus  
esse potest?

**adventus, ūs, m.** arrival, 14.

Caesaris adventu omnium  
mentês confirmantur.

**aedificium, ici, n.** a building. 3. Fr.  
*édifice*.

â quibus vastabuntur aedificia?

**aedificô**. 1. **-âvi, -âtum**, *v.a.* I build, 1.  
pons a fabris aedificatur.

**aeger, gra, grum, adj.** ill, sick, 12.

homines aegrî pugnâre nōn pos-  
sunt.

**aegrê, adv.** with difficulty, 22.

nostrî impetum aegrê sustinent.

**aequ-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v. a.** and *n.* 1  
make equal, equalise, 13.  
remōtis eōnis periculum omnibus  
aequatur.

**aequus, a, um, adj.** calm, composed,  
33, 57; level, 41.

aequō animo resistite!

ad aequum locum preventum est.

**aes, aeris, n.** bronze, 26.

aes ad nāves reficiendās idoneum  
est.

**aestās, ātis, f.** summer, 12. Fr. *été*.  
quae pars anni aestas est?

**aestus, ūs, m.** tide, 12.

aestūs impetus navibus nocēbit.

**ager, grī, m.** a field, 1; (*pl.*) land,  
15, 28.

hostium agrōs vexavimus.

**agger, eris, m.** an outwork, 3; ma-  
terials for ditto, 18.

agger ad oppidum iacitur.

**ag-gredior. 3. -gressus, v. dep. 1**  
attack (openly), 6.

hodiē urbem aggrediemur.

**aggressus. 10. perf. part. of ag-**  
gredior, *q. r.*

**agmen, inis, n.** an army (on the  
march), 1.

quomodo impeditur agmen?

**agō. 3. ēgi, actum, v. a.** I move for-  
ward (aggerem, turrem, vineas), 3,  
20, 51; I do, 17; I hold (convētūs),  
52; I have (triumphum), 26; I dis-  
cuss (rēs), 21; I confer, 37. Fr. *agir*.

**agricola, ae, m.** a farmer, 1.

agricolae laborem vitāre nōn  
debent.

**alacer, cris, cre, adj.** eager, keen,  
17; *compar. -ior; superl. not used*,  
miles ad pugnandum alacer est.

**alacritās, ātis, f.** eagerness, brisk-  
ness, 27.

magnā alacritāte rēs perficitur.

**albus, a, um, adj.** white, 4.

plumbum album hodiē 'tin'  
appellātur.

**aliēnus, a, um, adj.** belonging to  
another, 36.

rēbus aliēnis nē noceāmus!

**aliquantō, adv.** in some degree, con-  
siderably, 12.

ego tē aliquantō altior sum.

**aliquantum, n. adj.** used as *noun*,  
somewhat, something, 26.

aliquantum argenti mihi est.

**aliqui, a, od, indef. adj.** some, any,  
15.

explōrator aliquōs hostēs videt.

**aliquis, id, indef. pron. and noun**,  
some one, something, 6, 15.

ex hostibus aliqui capti sunt.

**alius, a, ud, adj. and noun.** another,  
6; *alii . . . alii*, some . . . others.

'double alius,' 15.

aliō tempore opus perficiam.

**Alpēs, ium, f.** the Alps, 2.

Alpium pericula summa sunt.

**alter, era, erum, adj.** one, the other  
of two, 12, 53. Fr. *autre*.

oppidorum alterum bene,  
alterum male munitur.

**altitūdō, inis, f.** height, depth, 45.

fossa magnae altitudinis dūce-  
batur. Fr. *altitude*.

**altus, a, um, adj.** tall, high, deep, 1.  
vallum altum est.

**āmentum, ī, n.** a strap, thong, 4.

iacula āmentis iaciuntur.

**amicitia, ae, f.** friendship, 48. Fr.  
*amitié*.

tē per deos et amicitiam nostram  
orāmus.

**amicus, ī, m.** a friend, 46. Fr. *ami*.  
amicōs semper servemus!

**ā-mittō. 3. -misi, -missum, v. a.** I  
lose, 14.

illum occasiōnem amisiimus.

**am-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v. a.** I like,  
love, 20. Fr. *aimer*.

Britanni Britanniam amant.

**amplius, compar. adv.** more, 11, 26  
(without *quam*).

id flūmen amplius milia passuum  
iv aberat.

**amplius, a, um, adj.** great, renowned,  
56.

amplissimō locō nātus est.

**an, conj.** or (preceded by *utrum*), 6.  
utrum tū an Quintus hōc fēcit?

**anceps, cīpitis, adj.** undecided (*lit.* two-headed), 27.

*diū proelium anceps erat.*

**ancora, ae, f.** an anchor, 11. Fr. *ancra*.

*nautae dē nāvī ancoram iacent.*

**Anglicē, adv.** into English, 10.

*Anglicē reddite!*

**angulus, i, m.** a corner, 12. Fr. *angle*.

*Caetium Britanniae angulus extrēmus est.*

**angustus, a, um, adj.** narrow, contracted, 28, 29.

*locō angustissimō castra posita erant.*

**animadvert-o. 3. -ī, -versum, v. a.** I notice, perceive, 4, 22 (also written **animum advertō, i.e.** I turn my mind to).

*trāgula primum nōn animadvertitur.*

**animal, ālis, n.** an animal, 24.

*animālia fera vitanda sunt.*

**animus, i, m.** mind, spirit, courage (*pl.*), 1, 33; **in animō habēre**, to intend, 36.

*omnium animī excitantur.*

**annus, i, m.** a year, 12. Fr. *an, année*.

*annī partēs quattuor sunt.*

**ante, prep. gov. acc.** before, 3; **adv.** before, paucis ante annus, 14.

*ante tertiam vigiliam contēdemus.*

**ante-fero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, v. a.** I prefer, 53.

*num eam rem illi antefers?*

**antiquitus, adv.** in former times, 22. *Belgae Rhēnum antiquitus transiērunt.*

**antiquus, a, um, adj.** old, former, 16; **compar. -ior, 43; superl. -issimus.** *urbs Rōma antiquissima est.*

**Ap. = Appius, a Roman name,** 14.

**apertus, a, um, adj.** open, 28. Fr. *ouvert*.

*aditus ad urbem apertus fuit.*

**Apollō, inis, m.** the god Apollo, 24.

*Galli Apollinem colēbant.*

**appell-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v. n. and a.** I call, address, 12, 57.

*dux tribunōs nōn ne appellat.*

**ap-pellō. 3. -puli, -pulsum, v. a. and, n.** I put in (of a ship); *pass.* 12. *nāvis ad portum appulsa est.*

**appropinqu-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v. n.** I approach (*dat.*), 2; *impers.* 25. *hostium finibus iam appropinquābāmus.*

**apud, prep. gov. acc.** by, near, amongst, 15.

*apud nōs remanē!*

**arātrum, i, n.** a plough, 1.

*nonne aratrō aritur ager?*

**arbitr-or. 1. -atus, v. dep.** I think, 29. *hōc fieri posse nōn arbitror.*

**arbor, oris, f.** a tree, 4. Fr. *arbre*. *fabri arborēs succidebant.*

**arcess-ō. 3. -īvi, -itum, v. a.** I send for, summon, 4. *auxilia undique arcessuntur.*

**arduus, a, um, adj.** difficult, 34.

*nihil hominī impigrō (resolute) arduum est.*

**argentum, i, n.** silver-plate, 34. Fr. *argent*.

*domus argentō plēna est.*

**āridum, i, n.** dry land, 7.

*nāvēs in aridum veniunt.*

**āridus, a, um, adj.** dry, 16. Fr. *aride*.

*Aegyptus terra ārida est.*

**arma, ōrum, n. pl.** armour, defensive weapons, 19; **in armis esse**, to be under arms, 21, 44. Fr. *armes*.

**armātus, a, um, 22. perf. part. pass.** of armō, *q.v.*

**arm-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v. a.** I arm, equip, 23, 44. Fr. *armer*.

*nāvēs bene armatae erant.*

**ar-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v. a.** I plough, 1. *quando (when?) aratur terra?*

**ars, rtis, f.** art, 24. Fr. *art*.

*ars bellī discenda est.*

**artificium, icl, n.** trade, handicraft, 21.

*Minervam artificiorū deam (goddess) esse putant.*

**a-scendō. 3. -scendī, -scensum, v.n.**  
I climb, 3.

nostrī in montem ascenderunt.

**asper, era, erum, adj.** severe;  
*compar.* 52. Fr. *âpre*.  
Britanniae caelum (*climate*) saepe  
asperum est.

**at, conj.** but, 6.  
id facere volō, at prohibeor.

**atque, conj.** and, 1; as, 12 (after  
*idem*).  
Germani atque Galli finitimi  
sunt.

**at-texō. 3. -texui, -textum, v.a. 1**  
weave on or to something, 47.  
nostrī pinnās noctu attexunt.

**attribuō. 3. 1. -ūtum, v.a. 1** assign,  
55. Fr. *attribuer*.  
legiō Crassō attribūta est.

**auctōritās, ātis, f.** influence, author-  
ity, 9. Fr. *autorité*.  
is homo magnam auctōritatem  
habuit.

**audācia, ae, f.** bravery, 42. Fr.  
*audace*.  
barbari audāciam summam  
praestant.

**audac-ter, adv.** bravely, boldly, 11;  
*compar.* -ius, *superl.* -issimē.  
nostrī audacissimē resistunt.

**audax, ācis, adj.** brave, bold, 2.  
alii audacēs, alii timidi (*timid*)  
sunt.

**audeō. 2. ausus sum (perf.), v.a. and**  
n. I dare, 21. Fr. *oser*.

hostēs nōs oppugnāre nōn ausi  
sunt.

**aud-iō. 4. -ivī, -itum, v.a. 1** hear.  
listen to, 4.  
avium vices lactē (*gladly*) audi-  
mus.

**auferō, auferre, abstuli, ablātum,**  
v.a. I bear, take away, 19 (foll. by  
acc. and *dat.*).  
victor victis arma abstulit.

**augeō. 2. auxi, auctum, v.a. and n.**  
I increase, 45.  
hostium cōpiae in diēs augentur.

**auriga, ae, comm.** a charioteer, 49.  
auriga vir peritissimus esse  
debet.

**aut . . . aut, conj.** either . . . or, 8.  
aut Caesar aut nullus. Fr.  
*ou . . . ou*.

**autem, conj.** and, but, however,  
moreover, 4.  
hostēs autem posterō diē discē-  
dunt.

**auxili-or. 1. -ātus, v. dep.** I help, 17.  
auxiliandi tempus dēerat.

**auxilium, -iī, n.** aid, assistance, 1;  
*pl.* reinforcements, 2; *predic. dat.*  
23.  
mox aderunt auxilia.

ca res nobis magno auxiliō fuit.

**avis, is, f.** a bird, 2.  
pueri avior; ova quaerere amant.

**avus, ī, m.** a grandfather, 1. Fr.  
*aveul*.  
avus meus natū maximus est.

## B

**barbarus, a, um, adj.** uncivilised,  
2; ignorant, 13; as noun = native  
(as opposed to Roman), 1. Fr.  
*barbare*.

fossa ā barbaris completur.  
illae nationēs barbarae sunt.

**Belgae, ārum, m. pl.** the Belgae, 22.  
ubi habitabant Belgae? Fr.  
*Belges*.

**bellum, ī, n.** war, 2; bellum facere,  
45.  
bellum nōn amō.

**bene, adv.** well, 25. Fr. *bien*.  
opus bene perfectum est.

**beneficium, icī, n.** a kindness, ser-  
vice, 33. Fr. *bénéfice*.  
praemia prō beneficiis dentur!

**biduum, ī, n.** a period of two days  
26; *abl.* biduō, 4.  
biduō post ad oppidum per-

**bonus, a, um, adj.** good, 15; *compar. melior; superl. optimus.*

boni male facere nōlunt. Fr. *bon, meilleur.*

**brevis, e, adj.** short, 14. Fr. *bref, brève.*

breve tempus relinqueretur.

**brevitās, ātis, f.** shortness-of-stature, 45.

Galli brevitatem nostram irridebant.

**Britannia, ae, f.** Britain, 4. Fr. *Bretagne.*

Britannia Hiberniā maior est.

**Britannus, a, um, adj.** British, of Britain, 9; as noun, **Britanni, ōrum, m. pl.** the Britons, 4.

Britanni patriam amant.

**C=Caius, or Gaius, a Roman name,** 11; as a numerical sign, C=100, 4.

**cadō. 3. cecidi, cāsum, v.n.** I fall, 49. in eō proelio complures cecidere.

**caedēs, is, f.** slaughter, 55.

nostrī in barbaros caedem magnam faciunt.

**caedō. 3. cecidi, caesum, v.a.** I cut, 26.

milites materiem ceciderant.

**caelestēs, ium, m. pl.** the gods, 24. Iuppiter caelestium princeps erat.

**caespes, itis, m.** a turf, sod, 49.

caesa (the hut) caespitibus tegitur.

**caesus, a, um. 26. perf. part. pass. of caedo, q.v.**

**calamitās, ātis, f.** a misfortune, calamity, 15. Fr. *calamité.*

boni calamitates fortiter perferunt.

**cālō, ōnis, m.** a camp-follower, 17.

cālones agmen sequuntur.

**Cantium, tī, n.** Kent, 12.

Cantium Galliae proximum est.

**cap-iō. 3. cepi, captum, v.a.** I take, capture, 4, 36; pick-up, 19; reach, 26.

quot hostēs capti sunt?

**captivus, ī, m.** a captive, 15. Fr. *captif.*

captivi supplicio afficiuntur.

**captus, a, um. 2. perf. part. pass. of capio, q.v.**

**caput, itis, n.** head, 33; mouth of a river, 2. Fr. *chef.*

mulier in capite onus portat.

**carīna, ae, f.** the keel of a ship, 42. nāvium carinae planae sunt.

**carrus, ī, m.** cart, 19.

iumenta carrōs trahunt (pull).

**castellum, ī, n.** a fort, blockhouse, 41. Fr. *château.*

Belgae sē in castellō continent.

**castra, ōrum, n. pl.** a camp, 2.

castrōrum locus aequus erat.

**cāsus, ūs, m.** a misfortune, accident,

in eiusmodi casū hōc accidere solet.

*abl. cāsū* (used adverbially), by chance, 4.

**catēna, ae, f.** a chain, 44. Fr. *chaîne.* captivi in catēnas coniecti sunt.

**causa, ae, f.** a reason, 19. Fr. *cause.* eius rei quae causa fuit?

*abl. causā, used as prep. gov. gen.,* for the sake of, 4.

**cautēs, is, f.** a rough, pointed rock, 44.

nāvis in cautēs ventō agitur.

**cautus, a, um, adj.** prudent, cautious, 31.

duci cautō confidimus.

**cēdō. 3. cessi, cessum, v.n.** and *a.*, I yield to, am inferior, 58.

nē virtute cesseritis, milites!

**celer, eris, ere, adj.** quick, speedy, 31.

equus animal celere est.

**celeritās, ātis, f.** speed, 4. Fr. *celerité.*

aliquarum avium celeritās incredibilis est.

**celeriter, adv.** quickly, speedily, 11; *compar. -ius; superl. -rimē.*

hostēs celerrimē fugantur.

**centum**, *indecl. num.* one hundred,  
21. Fr. *cent*.

centum naves in portu sunt.

**centuria**, *ae, f.* a century, company,  
43.

quis centuriae praecerat?

**centuriō**, *ōnis, m.* a centurion (corresponding to our sergeant), 11.  
dux centurionēs convocat.

**certāmen**, *inis, n.* a contest, fight,  
33.

nostrī certāmen nōn recusant.

**certiōrem (ēs) faciō**, 3., I inform. 11.  
mē dē rebus gestis certiōrem fac!  
*pass.* **certior fiō**, I am informed,  
22.

**cibāria**, *ōrum, n.pl.* victuals, food  
supply, 25.

vix bidui cibāria supererant.

**cibus**, *i, m.* food, 2.

sine cibō vivere nōn possumus.

**cingō**. 3. **cinxi**, **cinctum**, *v.a.* I surround, 46.

urbs flūmine cingitur.

**circiter**, *adv.* and *prep.* about, 5;  
usually of time or number.

circiter quartā vigiliā; circiter  
mediū.

**circuitus**, *ūs, m.* a circuit, compass,  
12, 49. Fr. *circuit*.

mūnitio xv milia passuum circuitū.

**circum**, *prep. gov. acc.* around,  
about, 37.

fossa circum castra ducitur.

**circum-cidō**. 3. **-cidi**, **-cisum**, *v.a.*  
I cut around, cut, 49.

gladiis arborēs circumcidite!

**circum-dō**, **-dare**, **-dedi**, **-datum**, *v.a.*  
I surround, 1.

castra vallō circumdantur.

**circum-ducō**. 3. **-duxi**, **-ductum**, *v.a.*  
I lead around, 42.

militum pars aliō itinere circumducta est.

**circum-eō**, **-ire**, **-ivi** (ii), (*supine circuitum*), *v.n.* and *a.* I go round, encircle, 36.

tōta urbs mūrō circumibatur.

**circum-sistō**. 3. **-steti**, no supine, *v.a.*  
I surround, 45.

nostrī barbarōs undique circum-sistunt.

**circum-veniō**. 4. **vēni**, **-ventum**, *v.a.*  
I surround, beset, 41.

legiō decima circumveniēbatur.

**cis**, *prep. gov. acc.* on this side of,  
28.

aciēs cis flūmen instruitur.

**citerior**, **ius**, *adj.* (*compar.* of *citer*, *tra*, *trum*), on the nearer side, 4.

Caesar in Galliā citeriōre manet.

**citrā**, *prep. gov. acc.* on this side of,  
28, *v. cis*.

**civitas**, **ātis**, *f.* a state, 1.

multae in Galliā civitatēs erant.

**clādēs**, *is, f.* a defeat, disaster, 57.

nuntii ducem dē clade certiōrem fecēre.

**clam**, *adv.* secretly, 49.

nostrī clam ex insidiis hostēs adoriuntur.

**clāmitō**. 1. **-āvi**, **-ātum**, *v.freq. n.* and *a.* I cry out aloud, 12.

quid, puer, clamitas?

**clāmor**, **ōris**, *m.* a shout, loud cry, 6.  
passim oriuntur clamōrēs. Fr.

*clameur*.

**classis**, *is, f.* a fleet, 21.

classis ad ancoram dēhgate est.

**cliens**, **ntis**, *m.* a client, retainer;  
*pl.* vassals, 46.

Nerviī cum clientibus bellum parant.

**coactus**, *a, um*, 14. *perf. part. pass.* of *cōgō*, *q.v.*

**coepi**, *v.a.* and *n.* I began (*foli. by infin.*), 9; *pass.* 21, *v. p.* 86.

Belgae saxa cōnecere coepēre.

**coercō**. 2. **-ui**, **-itum**, *v.a.* I restrain, repress, 16.

auriga equōs manū coerceat.

**cōgitō**. 1. **-āvi**, **-ātum**, *v.a.* I reflect upon, 22.

de poētae Horāti operibus cōgitābam.

**cognitus**, *a, um*, 14. *perf. part. pass.* of *cognoscō*, *q.v.*



**co-gnoscō. 3. -gnōvī, -gnitum, v.a.** I get to know, 4; *perf.* I know.  
rem per explorātōres cognoscit.

**cōgō. 3. cōēgī, coactum, v.a.** I collect, 4; I compel, 15.  
dux cōpiās undique cōēgit.  
id facere cōgēris.

**cohors, rtis, f.** a cohort (division of the legion), 2.  
cohors ūna frumentum comparābat.

**cohortātiō, ōnis, f.** an exhortation, harangue, 2.  
cūius cohortātiōne, miles, excitāris?

**cohort-or. 1. -ātus, v. dep.**  
encourage, exhort, 5.  
antē pugnam dux suōs cohortatur.

**col-laud-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, v.a.** I praise highly, 57.  
consilium tuum collaudō et probō.

**col-lig-ō. 3. -lēgī, -lectum, v.a.** with *reflexive pron.* I compose myself, recover my courage, 18, 41; I collect, bring together, 54. *Fr. colliger.*  
mē ex timōre colligō.  
auxilia collecta sunt.

**collis, is, m.** a hill, 11. *Fr. colline.*  
in summō colle castellum fuit.

**col-loc-ō. -āvī, -ātum, v.a.** I station, post, place, 2.  
equitēs in dextrō cornū collocantur.

**colloquium, quī, n.** a parley, conference, 32.  
colloquium inter duces habētur.

**col-loquor. 3. -locūtus, v. dep.** I converse, confer, 6.  
Ariovistus cum Caesare colloquētur.

**colō. 3. colui, cultum, v.a.** I worship, 24. *Fr. cultiver.*  
Gallī deōs cōmplūrēs colēbant.

**comb-ūrō. 3. -ussī, -ustum, v.a.** I burn up, 28.  
hostium nāvēs ignī combustae sunt.

**commeātus, ūs, m.** provisions, 3.  
nostrī commeātum comparant.

**comes, itis, comm.** a companion, 5.  
comes comitem prōtegit.

**com-memor-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, v.a.** I recount, relate, 18.  
Caesar rēs gestas suās commemorāvit.

**commissus, a, um, 1. perf. part. pass.** of committō, *q.v.*

**com-mittō. 3. -misi, -missum, v.a.**  
I engage in, 5.  
proclium ab utrisque committitur.  
*without proelium, 54.*

**commodē, adv.** conveniently; *superl.* 41.  
id nobis commodissimē accidit.

**commodus, a, um, adj.** suitable, opportune, 25. *Fr. commode.*  
ea belli ratiō commodissima esse vidēbatur.

**com-mor-or. 1. -ātus, v. dep.** I stay, tarry, 26.  
Romae (at Rome) paulisper commorātus sum.

**commōtus, a, um, 9. perf. part. pass.** of commoveō, roused, influenced.  
spē celeris victōriae commōti impetum faciunt.

**com-mūn-iō. 4. -ivi (-ii), -itum, v.a.** I fortify strongly, 42.  
loca praesidiō commūniuntur.

**commūnis, e, adj.** common, universal, 8. *Fr. commun.*  
commūnis terror exercitum occupat.

**com-pellō. 3. -puli, -pulsum, v.a.** I drive together, 14.  
hostēs intrā oppida murosque compulsi erant.

**com-pleō. 2. -plēvī, -plētum, v.a.** I fill up, 1.  
quid sarmentis complētur?

**complūrēs, a (gen. -ium), adj.** several, 4.  
complūra ferarum genera sunt.

**com-port-ō.** 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.*  
bring, carry together, 3.  
frumentum ex Asia comportatur.  
**com-prehēdō.** 3. -prehēdi, -pre-  
hensum, *v.a.* I catch hold of, seize,  
11, 27 (ignem, 51).  
mulierēs comprehensae au-  
feruntur.  
**con-cēdō.** 3. -cessi, -cessum, *v.n.*  
and *a.* I grant, vouchsafe, 36.  
dux captivis libertatem con-  
cessit.  
**con-cidō.** 3. -cidi, -cīsum, *v.a.* I cut  
to pieces, 9.  
hostium multitudō concīsa est.  
**concilium, ili, n.** a meeting, council,  
14. *Fr. concile.*  
Caesar concilium convocabit.  
**concit-ō.** 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v. freq. a.* I  
stir up, excite, 36.  
ad virtutem concitēmur!  
**conclām-ō.** 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.n.* and *a.*  
I shout, exclaim, :  
conclāmant ad castra iri oport-  
ere.  
**con-currō.** 3. -curri, -cursum, *v.n.* I  
run, rush together, 25.  
equitēs inter sē concurrunt.  
**con-cursō.** 1. -cursāvi, -cursātum, *v.*  
*freq. n.* and *a.* I rush, run about,  
12.  
timōre commōtus concursābat.  
**condiciō, ōnis, f.** terms, condition,  
57.  
barbari pācis condiciōnēs acci-  
piunt.  
**confectus, a, um, 10. perf. part.**  
*pass.* of conficiō, *q.v.*  
**con-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, v.a.** I  
bring together, collect, 22.  
commēātus in unum locum con-  
tulere.  
**confestim, adv.** forthwith, 4.  
Caesar confestim hostēs sub-  
sequitur.  
**con-ficiō.** 3. -fēci, -fectum, *v.a.* I wear  
out, exhaust, 10; I finish, complete,  
14, 30.  
ex militibus aliqui morbo con-  
fecti sunt.  
eam rem hodiē conficiam.

**con-fidō.** 3. -fisis sum (*v. p. 282*), *v.n.*  
I trust (*dat.* 53, *abl.* 28); I expect,  
hope, (*acc.* and *infin.*), 45.  
dux equitātui confisus est.  
**con-firm-ō.** 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I  
strengthen, animate, 1; affirm, 26.  
Caesar amicitiam cum civitatī-  
bus confirmat.  
**con-flāgr-ō.** 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.n.* and *a.*  
I burn, 51.  
nāvēs incendiō conflāgratae sunt.  
**conflictātus, a, um, 9. perf. part.**  
*pass.* of conflictō, harassed.  
rērum inopiā conflictāti.  
**con-flig-ō.** 3. -fixi, -fictum, *v.a.* and  
*n.* I contend, fight, 14.  
Britanni nobiscum conflixerunt.  
**confluens, ntis, m.** the confluence (of  
two rivers), 19. *Fr. confluent.*  
ad confluentem duōrum  
fluminum vēnimus.  
**con-fugiō.** 3. -fūgi, no supine, *v.n.* I  
flee for refuge, 27.  
hostēs ad oppida sua confugiunt.  
**con-gredior.** 3. -gressus, *v. dep.* I  
contend (*cum*), 3, 57.  
nostri cum Belgis congressi sunt.  
**cōn-iciō.** 3. -iēcī, -iectum, *v.a.* I  
throw, hurl, 1; in fugam, 47.  
multa tela cōniciuntur.  
**con-iungō.** 3. -iunxi, -iunctum, *v.a.* I  
join, 28.  
eās cohortēs cum exercitū suō  
coniungit.  
**coniūrātiō, ōnis, f.** a conspiracy,  
plot, 9. *Fr. conjuration.*  
gravis in Galliā oritur con-  
iūrātiō.  
**con-iūr-ō.** 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.n.* and *a.*  
I conspire, 22. *Fr. conjurer.*  
nōlite contrā rempublicam con-  
iūrāre!  
**cōn-or.** 1. -ātus, *v. dep.* I try, at-  
tempt, 6; with *acc.* 48.  
id facere cōnabor.  
**con-quirō.** 3. -quisivī, -quisitum, *v.a.*  
I seek for, procure, 48. *Fr. con-  
quérir.*  
victi obsidēs conquisivērunt.

**con-scendō.** 3. -scendi, -scensum, *v.a.* and *n.* I mount, 46; I go on board, 30 (nāvem).

Caesar in (for) Britanniam con-scendet.

**con-sciscō.** 3. -scīvī (scii), -scitum, *v.a.* I inflict (mortem), 39.

Orgetorix mortem sibi conscivī (i.e. committed suicide).

**con-scribō.** 3. -scripsi, -scriptum, *v.a.* I enrol, levy, 4.

legionēs quinque conscriptae erant.

**con-sēc-rātus, a, um, 24. perf. part. pass.** of consecrō, holy. Fr. *consacré*.

is locus consecrātus habebātur.

**con-sec-v-or.** 1. -ātus, *v. dep.* I follow, pursue, 19.

nostrī hostium equitēs consecatī sunt.

**con-sentiō.** 4. -sensī, -sensum, *v.n.* and *a.* I conspire, plot, 52.

cum reliquis nōn consensimus.

**con-sequor.** 3. -secūtus, *v. dep.* I follow up, on, 6; I obtain, 34.

fugientēs consequimur.

**con-serv-ō.** 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I maintain, observe, 28. Fr. *conserver*. iusiurandum tuum conserva!

**con-sidō.** 3. -sēdi, -sessum, *v.n.* I settle, take up a position, 22; I encamp, 55.

avis in arbore consēdit.

**consilium, ili, n.** resource, 11; plan, advice, intention, 15; a meeting, 25; *pl.* plans, 4. Fr. *conseil*.

hoc tuum consilium bonum est. nonne Caesar vir consili magni fuit?

**con-sistō.** 3. -stiti, -stitum, *v.n.* I take up a position, halt, make a stand, 7, 43; I consist of (*ex*), 43.

barbari in locis superioribus constiterant.

**con-sol-or.** 1. -atus, *v. dep.* I comfort, cheer, 57. Fr. *consoler*. dux suos consolātur.

**conspectus, ūs, m.** sight, 11.

haec in conspectū iucis gerēbantur.

**con-spiciō.** 3. -spexi, -spectum, *v.a.* and *n.* I catch sight of, 4, 42.

multitūdō hostium in cille conspecta est.

**conspic-or.** 1. -ātus, *v. dep.* I descry, see, 24.

nāvēs in portum venientēs conspicio.

**constat** (3rd sing. pres. indic. of con-stō. 1. -stiti, -stātum), it is agreed, well known, 24.

Caesarem imperātōrem summum fuisse inter omnes constat.

**con-stip-ō.** 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I crowd together, 51.

hostēs se in summō murō constipant.

**con-stitu-ō.** 3. -ī, -itum, *v.a.* I determine, 9 (foll. by *inf.*), I assign, 24; put, 37; build, 45. Fr. *constituer*.

hostēs ē finibus suis exire constituerant.

legionēs in acie constituit.

**con-suesc-ō.** 3. -suēvi, -suētum, *v.a.* and *n.* I am accustomed, 12.

mercatorēs eō ventitāre consuecunt.

**consuetūdō, inis, f.** a custom, 12; consuetūdine suā, according to his custom, 42. Fr. *coutume*.

consuetūdō mala mox inveterascit.

**consul, ulis, m.** a consul (Roman magistrate), 14.

duō consulēs reipublicae Rōmānae erant.

**consul-ō.** 3. -uī, -tum, *v.n.* and *a.* I look to, consult the interests of (*dat.*), 18.

quisque sibi consulere consuēvit.

**consult-ō.** 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v. freq. a.* I deliberate, take counsel, 12. Fr. *consulter*.

Germānī dē fortūnis suis consultabunt.

**consultum**, *n. a.* decree (senātūs), 26.

ex senātūs consultō praeemia dabuntur.

**con-sūm-ō**, 3. **-psī**, **-ptum**, *v. a.* I spend, pass (of time), 28. Fr. *consumer*.  
diēs decem in illis rēbus consumpti sunt.

**con-surgō**, 3. **-surrexī**, **-surrectum**, *v. n.* I rise up, 25.

barbari ex insidiis consurrexere.

**con-tabul-ō**, 1. **-āvī**, **-ātum**, *v. a.* I cover (with boards), 47.

tōtus murus turribus contabulabitur.

**contemptiō**, *ōnis*, *f.* disdain, contempt, 33.

dolōrum contemptiō rēs ardua est.

**contemptus**, *ūs*, *m.* an object of contempt, 45.

ignāvia (cowardice) omnibus contemptui est.

**con-tendō**, 3. **-tendī**, **-tentum**, *v. a.* and *n.* I march, hasten, 9, 14; I strive, fight, 37, 41.

magnis itineribus ire contendit.  
utrique summa vi contendunt.

**continens**, *ntis*, *f.* the continent, mainland, 21 (*abl.* **-ī** or **-e**). Fr. *continent*.

Labienus legātus in continenti relictus erat.

as *adj.* uninterrupted, continuous, 16.

trium dierum continens labor.

**continenter**, *adv.* continuously, 11.  
tōtā nocte continenter ierunt.

**con-tineō**, 2. **-tinui**, **-tentum**, *v. a.* and *n.* I keep, detain, enclose, 2, 43.

Galli in officiō continentur.

**con-tingō**, 3. **-tigī**, **-tactum**, *v. a.* and *n.* I touch, reach to, 16.

Aedui Lingonum finēs contigerunt.

**contio**, *ōnis*, *f.* a meeting, assembly 57.

dux militum contionem habebit.

**contrā**, *prep. gov. acc.* opposite to, facing, 12; against, 22; contrary-to, 51. Fr. *contre*.

unum Britanniae latus contrā Galliam spectat.

**contumēlia**, *ae*, *f.* abuse, insult, 29.  
tantam contumēliam non perferemus.

**con-valescō**, 3. **-valui**, *v. incept.* I regain health, 12.

militēs ex morbo convalescunt.

**con-veniō**, 4. **-vēnī**, **-ventum**, *v. n.* and *a.* I assemble, 21. Fr. *convenir*.  
cōpiae undique convenerant.

**conventus**, *ūs*, *m.* a meeting, 4; *pl.* assizes, 52.

dux militum conventum convocat.

**conversus**, *a*, *um*, 26. *perf. part.* of convertō, *q. v.*

**con-vertō**, 3. **-vertī**, **-versum**, *v. a.* and *n.* I turn, 6. Fr. *convertir*.

Caesar iter in Italiam convertit.

**con-voc-ō**, 1. **-āvī**, **-ātum**, *v. a.* I call together, convoke, 10. Fr. *convoyer*.

dux tribūnōs ad se convocat.

**co-orior**, 4. **-ortus**, *v. dep.* I arise, begin (of storms, wind, etc.), 10, 51.

grave bellum in his partibus coortum est.

**cōpia**, *ae*, *f.* (*sing.*) supply, 3; (*pl.*) forces, 2. Fr. *copie*.

nonne navium magnam cōpiam habemus?

hostium copiae instruuntur.

**cōram**, *adv.* personally, in person, 57.

dux, si cōram adesset, vōs laudaret.

**cornū**, *ūs*, *n.* a flank (of an army), *lit.* horn, 6, 54. Fr. *cor*.

pedites in dextro cornū erant.

**corpus**, *oris*, *n.* a body, 4. Fr. *corps*.  
Galli ingentia corpora habebant.

**crātis**, *is*, *f.* a hurdle; *pl.* fascines (*milit.*), 47.

materia cratibus attexta est.

**crēber, bra, brum, adj.** many, frequent, 4; *compar.* 52.

crēbra castella ā nostris oppugnantur.

**cruciātus, ūs, m.** torture, 9.  
captivus cruciātū adficiētur.

**culpa, ae, f.** a fault, 57.  
tē propter culpam tuam laudare nōn possum.

**cum, prep. gov. abl.** with, together with, 1; *v.* also Less. 29.  
proelium cum hostibus committitur.

**cum, conj.** when, 11, 12; 'inverse cum,' *v.* p. 204; *indef. frequency.* whenever, 24, 49; although, 54.

**cunct-or. 1. -ātus, v. dep.** I delay, hesitate, 42.  
dux suōs cunctantēs cohortatur.

**cupidē, adv.** eagerly, 14; *compar. -ius, super. -issimē.* Fr. *cupidentment.*

amicitiam tuam cupidissime petō.

**cupidus, a, um, adj.** eager, eager for (foll. by *gen.*), 27. Fr. *cupide.*  
Helvētiā bellandī (*making war*) cupidi erant.

**cupiditās, ātis, f.** desire, longing (generally in a bad sense), 9, 38. Fr. *cupidité.*

pecūniae cupiditate inductus.

**cup-iō. 3. -ivī (iī), -itum, v.a.** I desire, wish, 7.  
militēs opus conficere cupiebant.

**cūr, adv.** why? 4.  
cūr id fecisti?

**cūra, ae, f.** a care, anxiety.  
*predic. dat.* 23. Fr. *cure.*  
ea magnae mihi cūrae sunt.

**cur-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I cause to be done (with *gerundive*), 19.  
obsidēs inter se dandōs cūrāvere.

**cursus, ūs, m.** a course, 2 (tenere, 26); running, 27. Fr. *cours.*  
militēs cursū defatigātī erant.

## D

**dandus, a, um, 19. gerundive** of dō, *q.v.*

**datūrus, a, um, 22. fut. part.** of dō, *q.v.*

**datus, a, um, 11. perf. part. pass.** of dō, *q.v.*

**dē, prep. gov. abl.** from, 11; starting from, 8 (de quarta vigiliā); down from, 16; about, 12; for, 44 (quā dē causā); dē imprōviso, 33. Fr. *de.*

**dēb-eo. 2. -ui, -itum, v.a.** I ought, 24 (foll. by *infin.*). Fr. *devoir.*  
rectē facere dēbēmus.

**decem, num.** ten, 43.  
id decem diēbus perfectum est.

**dē-cernō. 3. -crēvi, -crētum, v.a.** and *n.* I decide, 42 (foll. by *infin.*). Fr. *décerner.*

his dē causis Rhēnum transire dēcrēvit.

**dē-cert-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.n.** and *a.* I fight it out, 42.  
aequō locō proeliō dēcertēmus!

**dēcessus, ūs, m.** departure, ebbing (aestūs), 42.  
dux aestus dēcessum expectāvit.

**decimus, a, um, adj.** tenth, 53.  
vix decimus quisque cō proeliō superfuīt.

**de-currō. 3. -cucurri (-curri), -cursum, v.n.** I run down, 18.  
dux ad suōs dēcurrit.

**dē-dō. 3. -didī, -ditum, v.a.** I give up, surrender, 40.  
captivi in supplicium dēduntur.

**dē-dūcō. 3. -dūxi, -ductum, v.a.** bring down, fetch, 22. Fr. *déduire.*  
exercitum ex hīs regiōnibus dēdūcit.

**dēfatigātus, a, um, 9. perf. part.** pass of dēfatigō. 1, exhausted.  
militēs labore dēfatigātī.

**dēfectiō, ōnis, f.** a rebellion, revolt, 9. Fr. *défection.*  
subita in Galliā oritur dēfectiō.

**dē-fendō.** 1. -fendi, -fensum, *v.a.* I defend, protect, 1. Fr. *défendre*.  
centuriō manū sē dēfendit.

**dēfensiō, ōnis, f.** a defence, 3. Fr. *défense*.  
diū incolae dēfensiōnem sustinent.

**dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, v.a.** I take, carry away, or down, 4.  
nuntius epistulam dēferēbat.

**dēfessus, a, um, adj.** exhausted, wearied, 19.  
tōtius diēi labōre dēfessi eramus.

**dē-ficiō. 3. -fēcī, -fectum, v.n.** and *a.* I fail, am wanting (*dat.*), 11; I revolt, 36. Fr. *défaire*.

civitātēs quae dēfēcērunt pūni-entur.

**dē-iciō. 3. -iēcī, -iectum, v.a.** I throw down, 1, 11.  
mulierēs sē dē murō dēiciunt.

**deinde, adv.** next, thereupon, 2.  
deinde sē in castra recipiunt.

**dēlectus, ūs, m.** a levy, 26.  
Caesar dēlectum habēbit.

**dēlectus, a, um, 38. perf. part. pass.** of dēligō. 3. *q.v.*

**dē-leō. 2. -ēvi, -ētum, v.a.** I destroy, 2; efface, 41.  
urbs Carthagō a Rōmānīs dēlētur.

**dē-libē-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I de-liberate, 14. Fr. *délivrer*.  
consulēs dē summīs rēbus dē-liberant.

**dē-ligō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I tie together, 4, 28.  
nautae nāvēs ad terram dēligā-bunt.

**dē-ligō. 3. -lēgi, -lectum, v.a.** I choose out, select, 15.  
barbari obsidēs dēlēgērunt.

**dē-litescō. 3. -litui, v. incēp. n.** I lie hid, lurk, 12.  
nonne ferae in silvis dēlitescunt?

**dēmēntia, ae, f.** madness, folly, 45. Fr. *démence*.  
ēiusmodi dēmēntia vitanda est.

**dē-mīgr-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.n.** I de-part, remove from, 51.  
ex agris in urbem dēmīgrēmus!

**dē-minuō. 3. -minui, -minūtum, v.a.** I make smaller, lessen, 57. Fr. *diminuer*.  
nihil dē tantā gratulatiōne fortūna dēminuerat.

**dēmīssus, a, um, 34. perf. part. pass.** of dēmīttō, *q.v.*

**dē-mittō. 3. -misi, -missum, v.a.** I let, cast down, 32, 57 (animō).  
egō animō dēmittō.

**dē-monstr-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I point out, demonstrate, 22. Fr. *démontrer*.  
dux sē castra mōtūrum esse demonstrat.

**demptus, a, um, 56. perf. part. pass.** of dēmō. 3., taken away.  
epistula a Caesarem dempta est.

**dēmum, adv.** at length, at last, 8.  
tum dēmum instant nostri.

**dē-pellō. 3. -puli, -pulsum, v.a.** I drive away, 24.  
cibō depellitur famēs (hunger).

**dē-pereō. 4., -iī, no supine, v.n.** I go to ruin, am lost, 27. Fr. *dépérir*.  
magna pars exercitus dēperiit.

**dē-pōnō. 3. -posui, -positum, v.a.** I put away, lay aside, 45. Fr. *deposer*.  
amicōrum memoriā nē dēposueris!

**dē-popul-or. 1. -ātus, v. dep. a.** I lay waste, ravage, 9.  
nostri tōtam regiōnem dēpopulā-bantur.

**dē-prehendō. 3. -prehendi, -prehen-sum, v.a.** I seize upon, catch, 11, 33.  
nuntii in itinere dēprehenduntur.

**dē-ser-ō. 3. -ui, -tum, v.a.** I desert, abandon, 21.  
omnibus castellis oppidisque dēsertis.

**dē-sider-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I lose, miss, 43. Fr. *désirer*.  
in eō proeliō milites eē dēsiderāti sunt.

- dē-siliō.** 4. -silui, -sultum, *v. n.* I jump down, 28.  
equitēs ex equis dēsiliunt.
- dē-sistō.** 3. -stiti, -stitum, *v. a.* and *n.* I leave off, desist from, 48, 54.  
Fr. *désister*.  
obsidēs pecuniam pollicēri nōn dēsistunt.
- dē-spēr-ō.** 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v. n.* and *a.* I despair of, 10; with *dat.*, 49. Fr. *désespérer*.  
Rōmāni dē suā virtūte numquam dēspērābunt.
- dē-spiciō.** 3. -spexi, -spectum, *v. n.* and *a.* I look down on, despise, 37.  
aliī sē divitiās (*wealth*), aliī honōrēs despiciere dicunt.
- dē-stringō.** 3. -strinxī, -strictum, *v. a.* I unsheathe, draw, 13.  
gladiōs dēstringite!
- dē-sum, -esse, -fui, v. n.** I am wanting, fail, 1, 18; with *dat.*, 53.  
hoc unum Caesari dēfuit.
- dē-tineō.** 2. -tinui, -tentum, *v. a.* I detain, keep back, 28. Fr. *détenir*.  
tempestās nāvēs in portu dētinuerat.
- dētrimentum.** *n.* loss, damage, 27.  
esp. in battle. Fr. *détriment*.  
dux Britannus multa dētrimenta accēperat.
- deus, i, m.** a god, 24. Fr. *dieu*.  
boni deōs colunt.
- dē-vehō.** 3. -vexi, -vectum, *v. a.* I carry down, convey, 20, 55.  
commēatūs ad nāvēs dēvēcī erant.
- dē-voveō.** 2. -vōvī, -vōtum, *v. a.* I vow, devote, 24. Fr. *dévouer*.  
Galli bellō capta deīs dēvovēbant.
- dexter, tra, trum, adj.** right, 54.  
dextrum cornū in fugam datur.
- dextra, ae, f.** the right hand, 50.  
dextrae meae telō nocitum est.
- dicō.** 3. dixi, dictum, *v. a.* I appoint, 3; say, tell, 22; *pass.* I am said, 8. Fr. *dire*.  
diēs conciliō dicitur.
- didici, 37. perf. indic. act. of disco.** *q.v.*
- diēs, ēī, m.** or *f.* a day *pl.* always masc., 3; in diēs, day by day, 33.  
tertiō diē hic aderō.
- differō, differre, distuli, dilātum, v. a.** and *n.* I carry different ways, spread abroad, 51.  
ventus ignem undique differt.
- difficultās, ātis, f.** difficulty, 1. Fr. *difficulté*.  
rēs erat magnae difficultātis.
- dif-fidō.** 3. -fisisum, *v. n.* I distrust, despair of (*dat.*), 48.  
suae atque omnium salutī diffisi sunt.
- dif-fluō.** 3. no perf. or supine, *v. n.* I flow in different directions, 2.  
nonne in multās partes diffluit Rhēnus?
- dignitās, ātis, f.** greatness, prestige, 45. Fr. *dignité*.  
vir magnae apud suōs dignitatis erat.
- dignus, a, um, adj.** worthy (*abl.*), 56. Fr. *digne*.  
Caesarem ne omni honōre dignum fuisse putātis?
- diligenter, adv.** carefully, 25. Fr. *diligemment*.  
opus meum diligentissimē perfeci.
- diligentia, ae, f.** care, diligence, 19. Fr. *diligence*.  
in rēbus agendis diligentia uti debemus.
- dī-mic-ō.** 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v. n.* I fight, 24.  
barbari prō patriā proeliō dimicābunt.
- dimidium, idī, n.** the half, 12. Fr. *demi*.  
quae insula dimidiō minor Britannia est?
- dī-mittō.** 3. -misi, -missum, *v. a.* I send in different directions, 18; dissolve, break-up, 14; let-slip, 36.  
Caesar nuntiōs per omnēs partēs dimisit.
- dis-cēdō.** 3. -cessī, -cessum, *v. n.* I depart (*ab, ex*), 11.  
barbari repulsi ā vallō discēdunt.

**discessus**, *m.* a departure, 43.  
post eorum discessum res quietiores factae sunt.

**disciplina**, *ae, f.* tuition, training, 2, 234. *Fr. discipline.*  
belli disciplina dura est.

**discipulus**, *i, m.* a scholar, 57. *Fr. disciple.*  
quales discipuli laudantur?

**discō**, 3. **didici**, no supine, *v.a.* I learn, 37.  
ars nulla sine labore discitur.

**discrimen**, *inis, n.* a crisis, 19.  
res in summo discrimine erat.

**dis-iciō**, 3. **iēci**, **-iectum**, *v.a.* I throw asunder, *disperse*, 9, 13.  
hostes disiecti terga vertunt.

**diū**, *adv.* for a long time, 2; *compar.* **-tius**; *superl.* **-tissimē**.  
Germani diu resistunt.

**diutinus**, *a, um, adj.* of long duration, lasting, 57.  
diutinum bellum geritur.

**diuturnitas**, *ātis, f.* long duration, 9.  
proeli diuturnitate defessus eram.

**dives**, *itis, adj.* rich, 25; *v. p.* 269.  
quem divitem esse putas?

**di-vidō**, 3. **-visi**, **-visum**, *v.a.* I divide, 43. *Fr. diviser.*  
Gallia omnis in partes tres divisa est.

**divinus**, *a, um, adj.* belonging to a deity, divine, 45. *Fr. divin.*  
homines saepe divinā ope confidunt.

**dō**, **dare**, **dedi**, **datum**, *v.a.* I give (*dat.*), 1; **in fugam dō**, I put to flight, 7.

Caesar Helveticis iter per provinciam nō dat.

**doc-eō**, 2. **-ui**, **-tum**, *v.a.* I teach, 49; show, 42.

legatos mittit qui de suo adventu doceant.

**dolor**, *ōris, m.* pain, 56; grief, 57. *Fr. douleur.*  
quibus nuntiatis magnō dolore afficiuntur.

**dolus**, *-i, m.* a trick, guile, 4.  
victoria per dolum paritur.

**domus**, *ūs, f.* a house, home, 16;  
**domum**, *adv.* homewards, 16; **domō**, from home, 19; **domi**, at home, 40.

**dubitatiō**, *ōnis, f.* doubt, uncertainty, 56. *Fr. doute.*  
eius rei dubitatio nulla est.

**dubitō**, 1. **-āvi**, **-ātum**, *v. freq. n.* and *a.* I hesitate, 39. *Fr. douter.*  
hostes flumen transire nō dubitaverunt.

**dubium** est, it is doubtful, uncertain, 39.

nil dubium est quin tu id feceris.

**dūcō**, 3. **duxi**, **ductum**, *v.a.* I lead, 4; construct, 1; prolong, 18; **in mātrimonium**, marry, 46.

exercitus per hostium fines ducitur.

**dum**, *conj.* while, 4; *v. p.* 204.

dum haec aguntur, suos in castra continet.

**duo**, **duae**, **duo**, *num.* two, 4. *Fr. deux.*

duae legiones in castris relinquantur.

**dūrus**, *a, um, adj.* hard, disagreeable, 21. *Fr. dur.*

nonne servitutis condicio dūrisima est?

**dux**, **ducis**, *m.* a general, leader, 1; guide, 9. *Fr. duc.*

omnium ducum Romanorum Caesar summus erat.

## E

**e(x)**, *prep. gov. abl.*, from, (out) of, 1; according to, 26; after, 37.  
ex periculo incolumis rediit.

**ē-dūcō**, 3. **-duxi**, **-ductum**, *v.a.* I lead out, 25.

cōpiac ex hibernis edūcentur.

**effērō**, **efferre**, **extuli**, **ēlātum**, *v.a.* in the pass. I am elated, 34.

miles pugnandi studio effertur.

**ef-ficiō**, 3. **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, *v.a.* I make, 2; manage, 27.

magnus turrium numerus efficitur.



**ēgī**, *perf. indic. act.* of *agō*, *q.v.*

**ego**, *meī*, 1st *pers. pronoun*, I, 2.  
ego agricola, tū miles es.

**ē-gredior**, 3. *-gressus*, *v. dep. n.* and *a.* I go out, 6; land, 17 (ex *nāvī*).  
hostēs ex suis finibus ēgrediē-  
bantur.

**ēgregiē**, *adv.* excellently, exceeding-  
ly, 1,  
oppidum ēgregiē mūnītum est.

**ēgregius**, *a, um, adj.* eminent, dis-  
tinguished, 57.  
vir bellō ēgregius.

**ēgressus**, *ūs, m.* a landing, 26.  
illie ēgressum bonum invēnit.

**ēgressus**, *a, um, 11. perf. part.* of  
ēgredior, *q.v.*

**ē-iciō**, 3. *-iectī, -iectum, v.a.* I cast  
out, rush out (with *sē*), 11.  
barbari sēsē ex oppidō ēicēerunt.

**ēiusmodi**, of such a kind, such, 43.  
ēiusmodi erant nāvēs ut in vadis  
consistere possent.

**ēlātus**, *a, um, 31. perf. part. pass.* of  
ēfferō, *q.v.*

**ēminus**, *adv.* at a distance, 16.  
ēminus fundis sagittisque pug-  
nābant.

**ē-mitto**, 3. *-misi, -missum, v.a.* I  
send out, 33. Fr. *ēmettre*.  
Caesar, equitatū ēmissō, hostēs  
in fugam dat.

**ēmō**, 3. *ēmi, emptum, v.a.* I buy, 55.  
quanti id ēmisti? magni-ne?

**enim**, *conj.* for (usually after the  
first word of a clause or sentence),  
15.

quō factō abiit—vesper enim ad-  
erat.

**eō**, *ire, ivi (il), itum, v.n.* I go, 22.  
contrā hostem ibimus.

**eō**, *adv.* to that place, thither, 26.  
eō primā luce perventum est.

**epistula**, *ae, f.* a letter, 4. Fr. *épître*.  
Caesar epistulam legit (*reads*).

**eques**, *itis, m.* a horseman, 1.

equitum impetus hostēs per-  
turbābit.

**equester**, *tris, tre. adj.* cavalry, 14.  
Fr. *équestre*.  
cōpiac equestres cōgūntur.

**equitātus**, *ūs, m.* cavalry (collective-  
ly), 6.  
impetus ab equitatū fit.

**equus**, *ī, m.* a horse, 1.  
quis equōs nōn amat?

**ērectus**, *a, um, 44. perf. part. pass.*  
of *erigō*, 3. *erōxi, ērectum*; lofty,  
upright.

Venetōrum nāvēs prōris ērectis  
erant.

**ergā**, *prep. gov. acc.* towards (of  
feelings and conduct), 28.  
meus ergā tē amor (*love*)  
magnus est.

**ē-ripiō**, 3. *-ripiū, -reptum, v.a.* I take,  
snatch away, 1, 8.  
amicum ex hostium manibus  
ēripuit.

**err-ō**, 1. *-āvi, -ātum, v.n. and a.* I  
err, think wrong, 48.

errant qui belli ēventum sēsē  
praedicere (*predict*) posse  
dicant.

**ē-rumpō**, 3. *-rūpi, -ruptum, v.a.* and  
*n.* I burst, sally forth, 11.

nostri subitō ex castris ērūpere.

**ēruptiō**, *ōnis, f.* a sortie, 11. Fr.  
*éruption*.

ēruptionem ex portis facite!

**essedārius**, *āri, m.* a charioteer, 12.  
essedārius ex essedō dēsilit.

**essedum**, *ī, n.* a chariot, 28.  
essedā Britanni contrā nostrōs  
collocantur.

**et**, *conj.* and, 1, c' . . . Et, both . . .  
and. Fr. *et*.  
ego et tū adsumus.

**etiam**, *conj.* also, 8; even, 8 (*Lectiō*).  
id nōn modo factū sed etiam cō-  
natū difficile (*difficult*) est.

**etsi**, *conj.* although, 54.  
barbari, etsi numerō plūrēs  
erant, tamen fugāti sunt.

**ēventus, ū.** *n.* consequence, result, 51.

huius beī ēventus secundissimus fuit.

**ē-veniō, 4. -vēni, -ventum, v.n.** I happen, 56.

timēbam nē ēvenirent ea, quae acciderunt.

**ē-voc-ō. 3. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I call forth, 12; challenge, 29. Fr. *évoquer*.

Caesar mercatōrēs undique ad se ēvocat.

**exactus, a, um, 54. perf. part. pass.** of *exigō, q.v.*

**ex-aud-iō. 4. -iui (if), -itum, v.a.** I hear clearly, 34.

omnes ducis vōcem exaudire poterant.

**ex-cēdō. 3. -cessi, -cessum, v.n.** I retire from, 9. Fr. *excéder*.

adventū hominum ferac ex via excēdunt.

**ex-cipiō. 3. -cēpi, -ceptum, v.a.** I pick up, collect, 11; sustain, stand, 42.

nostri tela ab hostibus missa ex-cipient.

**ex-cit-ō. 1. -āvi, -atum, v. freq. a.** I rouse, incite, 3; kindle, 16; raise, erect, 4. Fr. *exciter*.

tuba militēs ē somnō (sleep) excitat.

**ex-cruciātus, a, um, 11. perf. part. pass.** of *excruciō*, tortured.

servus crudēlīter (cruelly) ex-cruciātus est.

**ex-cubō. 1. -cubi, -cubitum, v.a.** I lie out on guard, keep watch, 16.

trēs legiōnēs in armīs excubābant.

**exemplum, ū. n.** an example, 8. Fr. *exemple*.

in lectionibus complūra eius-modī exempla inveniēs.

**ex-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, v.n.** I go out, 19; *impers. pass.*, 29.

miles ē tabernaculō suō exit.

**exercitus, ūs, m.** an army, 2.

exercitus noster parātus est.

**ex-hauriō. 4. -hausi, -haustum, v.a.** I empty out, 49.

terra manibus exhauritur.

**ex-igō. 3. -ēgi, -actum, v.a.** I complete, finish, 54.

exactā aestāte depereunt flōrēs (flowers).

**ex-istim-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I judge, think, 2.

bonus-ne esse existimaris?

**expeditus, a, um, 20. perf. part. pass.** of *expedio*, unincumbered.

duō milia hominum expedita mittuntur.

**ex-pellō. 3. -puli, -pulsum, v.a.** I drive out, 22; remove, 56. Fr. *expulser*.

regnō expulsus veniam (pardon) orātum venit.

**ex-perior. 4. -pertus, v. dep. a.** I try make trial of, 5, 38.

omnia frustrā experiuntur.

**ex-pi-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I make amends for, make good, 57. Fr. *expier*.

pristina clādēs victōria expiāta est.

**explōrātor, ōris, m.** a scout, spy, 4. Fr. *explorateur*.

rēs per explōratōrēs cognoscitur.

**explōrātus, a, um, 51. perf. part. pass.** of *explōro*, confirmed, certain.

**ex-plōrō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I reconnoitre, 32. Fr. *explorer*.

dux omnia loca explōrabat.

**ex-pōnō. 3. -posui, -positum, v.a.** I set on shore, disembark, 28. Fr. *exposer*.

expositis omnibus cōpiis in hostes contendit.

**ex-port-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I carry away, 3. Fr. *exporter*.

barbari sua omnia exportāverunt.

**expositus, a, um, 28. perf. part. pass.** of *exponō, q.v.*

**ex-pugn-ō.** 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I take by assault, storm, 3.

castellum ā Rōmānis expugnātur.

**ex-spect-ō.** 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I await, wait for, 22.

dux auxiliōrum adventum expectāvit.

**ex-struō.** 3. -struxi, -structum, *v.a.* I build up, construct, 16.

aggere turribusque exstructis.

**ex-timescō.** 3. -timui, *v. incept. n.* and *a.* I fear greatly, dread, 44.

num hostium adventum extimescitis?

**extrēmus, a, um, adj.** farthest, 22; end of; 43. (*superl.* of *extrā*). Fr. *extrême*.

Axona flūmen in extrēmis Rēmōrum finibus est.

**ex-ūrō.** 3. -ussi, -ustum, *v.a.* I burn up, consume, 13.

hostium oppida exusta erant.

## F

**faber, bri, m.** a workman, 21.

ex legionibus fabros delegit.

**fābula, ae, f.** a tale, story, 12. Fr. *fable*.

fabulae mentes nostras delectant (*delight*).

**facile, adv.** easily, 2. Fr. *facilement*.

id facile perfecti.

**facilis, e, adj.** easy, 25; *compar.* -ior; *superl.* -illimus. Fr. *facile*.

alterum iter multo facilius erat.

**faciō.** 3. fēcī, factum, *v.a.* and *n.* I do, 4; make, 7. Fr. *faire*.

fabri pontem faciunt.

**facultās, ātis, f.** opportunity, 17; supply, abundance, 23. Fr. *faculté*.

hostibus fugae facultās nōn datur.

**fācundus, a, um, adj.** eloquent, 15.

Cicerō orātor fācundissimus erat.

**fāma, ae, f.** a report, rumour, 46.

haec fāma nondum ad nōs perlāta erat.

**familia, ae, f.** family, household, 34. Fr. *famille*.

mātrēs familiae per urbem passim vagabantur.

**familiāris, is, m.** a friend, 8. Fr. *familier* (*adj.*).

Aulus familiāris meus est.

**fātum, i, n.** fate, bad fortune, 8. fatum suum queruntur.

**fax, facis, f.** a torch, firebrand, 16. hostes facēs undique comparant.

**fera, ae, f.** a wild beast, 2. ferae in silvis latent.

**ferē, adv.** about, 9; almost, 12. totius ferē Galliae legātī ad Caesarem veniunt.

**ferrāmentum, i, n.** an iron tool, 49. ferramenta operi dēerant.

**ferreus, a, um, adj.** of iron, 44. Fr. *ferré*.

Britannī tāleis (*bars*) ferreis prō nummo (*money*) utēbantur.

**ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, v.a.** and *n.* I bring, 1; carry, 7; enquire (*loil*) 19; (calamity), 33; (storm), 44. Of *abstract subjects*, require, allow, 12, 36; *pass.* (of a river), flow, 2.

**ferox, ōcis, adj.** bold, courageous, 2. Fr. *féroce*.

Helvetiōrum gens ferocissima erat.

**ferus, a, um, adj.** savage, wild, 2. in bellō hominum animi feri esse solent.

**fervefactus, a, um, 51. perf. part.** *pass.* of *fervefaciō*, heated.

barbari iacula igni fervefaciunt.

**fervens, ntis, adj.** boiling hot, burning, 51. glandēs ferventēs cōniciebant.

**fidēs, ei, f.** a promise, assurance, 28; fidelity, loyalty, 52, 58. Fr. *foi*. meam ergā te fidem conservābō.

**fidus, a, um, adj.** trustworthy, 9. amicōs fidissimōs habere nonne iūcundum (*pleasant*) est?

- fieri**, 6. *pres. infin.* of **fiō**, *q.v.*
- filia**, *ae, f.* a daughter, 46. Fr. *filie*.  
quot tibi filiae sunt?
- **finis**, *is, m.* an end, 17; ad finem  
venire, 54. Fr. *fin*.  
Ariovistus iniuriis finem non  
facit.  
*pl.* land, territory, 2.  
cōpias in Aeduōrum finēs  
dedūcit.
- finitimus**, *a, um, adj.* neighbouring;  
as *pl. noun*, neighbours, 36.  
pācem cum finitimis faciāmus!
- fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum**, *v.n.* I am  
made, happen, 5; *pass.* of **faciō**,  
*v. p.* 18.  
**fiēbat ut**, the result was that...,  
38.
- firmiter**, *adv.* firmly, steadily, 7. Fr.  
*fermement*.  
num nostri firmiter insistēbant?
- firmitūdō**, *inis, f.* firmness, strength,  
44.  
pontis firmitūdō summa erat.
- flamma**, *ae, f.* a flame, 51. Fr.  
*flamme*.  
Galli hominēs flammā circum-  
ventōs necābant.
- fl-eō**, 2. **-ēvi**, **-ētum**, *v.n.* I weep, 7.  
lēgati flentēs pācem petunt.
- fl-ō**, 1. **-āvi**, **-ātum**, *v.n.* and *a.* I  
blow, 12.  
Zephyrus (*west*) ventus lēniter  
(*gently*) flāre solet.
- fluctus**, *ūs, m.* a wave, billow, 41.  
Fr. *flot*.  
barbari in fluctibus consistēbant.
- flūmen**, *inis, n.* a river, 2.  
flūmen ad mare fertur.
- fluō**, 3. **fluxi**, **fluctum**, *v.n.* I flow, 44.  
Helveticōrum inter finēs et Allo-  
brogum Rhodanus fluit.
- fore**, *fut. infin.* of **sum**, *q.v.*
- forte**, *adv.* by chance, 1.  
forte in eō oppidō commecātus  
erant.

- fortis**, *e, adj.* brave, strong, 1; *com-  
par.* -ior; *superl.* -issimus. Fr.  
*fort*.  
nonne omnēs virum fortem  
laudant?
- fortiter**, *adv.* bravely, 1; *compar.*  
**fortius**; *superl.* **fortissimē**. Fr.  
*fortement*.  
urbs ab incolis fortiter defendi-  
tur.
- fortūna**, *ae, f.* fortune, 5; *pl.* 49.  
Fr. *fortune*.  
fortūnam malam aequō animō  
ferte!
- fossa**, *ae, f.* a trench, 1. Fr. *fosse*.  
castra fossa muniuntur.
- frāter**, **tris**, *m.* a brother, 1. Fr.  
*frère*.  
frāter meus miles est.
- fremitus**, *ūs, n.* a loud noise, 6.  
equorum fremitus auditur.
- frequens**, **ntis**, *adj.* numerous,  
crowded, 37.  
senātū frequentissimō habitō.
- frētus**, *a, um, adj.* relying-on (*abl.*),  
27.  
quā rē hostēs frēti confugiunt?
- frīgus**, *oris, n.* cold; *pl.* 33. Fr.  
*froid*.  
frigora in Britannia saepe magna  
sunt.
- frūmentārius**, *a, um, adj.* of or  
belonging to corn, provisions, 8.  
rēs frūmentāria a nostris com-  
parābitur.
- frūment-or**, 1. **-ātus**, *v. dep. n.* I  
fetch corn, forage, 8.  
Rōmāni undique frūmentā-  
bantur.
- frūmentum**, *i, n.* corn, grain, 4.  
est-ne in oppidō frūmenti cōpia?
- frustrā**, *adv.* in vain, to no pur-  
pose, 3.  
tēla ā barbaris frustrā mittuntur.
- fuga**, *ae, f.* flight, 1; mē fugae  
mandō, 6. *r.* mandō.  
hostēs fugā salutem petunt.

**fugio**, 3. **fūgī**, **fugitum**, *v.n.* I flee, 7;  
*pres. part. fugiens, ntis*, as noun,  
 a fugitive, 25. Fr. *fuir*.  
 pauci ex caede fugerunt.

**fug-ō**, 1. **-āvī**, **-ātum**, *v.a.* I put to  
 flight, rout, 11.  
 omnis equitatus fugatus erat.

**fui**, 42, *perf. tense* of **sum**, *q.v.*

**fūmus**, *i, m.* smoke, *pl.* 56. Fr.  
*fumée*.

hostium adventus fumō atque  
 ignibus significabatur.

**funda**, *ae, f.* a sling, 51.  
 lapidēs fundis cōiciuntur.

**funditor**, *ōris, m.* a slinger, 22.  
 Caesar funditorēs praemisit.

**fundō**, 3. **fūdī**, **fūsum**, *v.a.* I scatter,  
 hurl, 46.

contrā quid hostēs picem fundē-  
 bant?

**fungor**, 3. **functus**, *v. dep.* I perform  
 (*abl.*), 18.  
 officiō-ne tuō semper fungeris?

**fūnis**, *is, m.* a rope, 41.  
 fūnibus ancorisque āmissis.

## G

**Gādēs**, *ium, f. pl.* Cadiz, 40.  
 Gadēs in Hispania sunt.

**galea**, *ae, f.* a helmet, 18.  
 capiti galeam impōnō.

**Gallia**, *ae, f.* Gaul, 2.  
 Gallia multa flumina habet.

**Gallicus**, *a, um, adj.* Gaulish, Gallic,  
 12, 51. Fr. *gallique*.  
 quis bellum Gallicū scripsit?

**Gallus**, *i, m.* a Gaul, 2; *pl.* the  
 Gauls, 3.

Gallus quidam cum epistula  
 mittitur.

**Garumna**, *ae, m.* a river of Gaul, the  
 Garonne, 2.  
 ubi est Garumna?

**gens**, *ntis, f.* a race, nation, 2.  
 Gallōrum gens magnae audāciae  
 est.

**genus**, *eris, n.* kind, species, 14;  
 family, 56. Fr. *genre*.

hōc pugnae genus nostris  
 ignōtum (*unknown*) erat.

**Germānia**, *ae, f.* Germany, 12. Fr.  
*Germanie*.

Germānia Galliae finitima est.

**Germānus**, *i, m.* a German; *pl.* the  
 Germans, 1.

Germani multa cum Rōmānis  
 bella gerebant.

**gerō**, 3. **gessī**, **gestum**, *v.a.* I carry  
 on, wage, transact, 14.

haec noctū ā nostris gerēbantur.

**gestūrus**, *a, um, 14. fut. part.* of  
 gerō, *q.v.*

**gestus**, *a, um, 26. perf. part. pass.*  
 of gerō; *rēs gesta*, an exploit, 55.

**gladius**, *dī, m.* a sword, 13. Fr.  
*glaiue*.

Rōmānī celeriter gladiōs destrin-  
 gunt.

**glans**, *ndis, f.* a ball of clay (*lit.*  
 acorn), 51.

nostrī glandibus hostēs petunt.

**glōria**, *ae, f.* glory, 29. Fr. *gloire*.  
 bellī glōria quem nōn excitat?

**Graecus**, *a, um, adj.* Greek 4. Fr.  
*grec*.

epistula Graecis litteris scripta.

**grātia**, *ae, f.* regard, friendship, 45.  
 Fr. *grâce*.

nonne grātiā meam vis?

**grātulātiō**, *ōnis, f.* congratulation,  
 57.

Cicerō Caesaris grātulātiōnem  
 accipiet.

**grātus**, *a, um, adj.* welcome, 28.  
 nihil mihi grātius esse potest.

**gravis**, *c, adj.* severe, 3; serious, 15;  
 critical, 51. Fr. *grave*.

tribūnus multa et grāvia vulnera  
 accipit.

**graviter**, *adv.* severely, violently,  
 26; *compar. -ius*; *superl. -issimē*.  
 pericula mē graviter nōn terrent.

**gubernātor**, *ōris, m.* steersman,  
 pilot, 21. Fr. *gouverneur*.

gubernātor manū nāvem regit  
 (*guides*).

**hab-eō.** 2. -**ui**, -**itum**, *v.a.* and *n.* I have, 8; deliver (oratiōnem), 14; hold (dēlectum), 26; consider, 45. Fr. *avoir*.

agricola multa pecora habet.

**habit-ō.** 1. -**āvi**, -**ātum**, *v.freq. n.* and *a.* I dwell, 40. Fr. *habiter*.  
qui in Gallia habitant?

**haud**, *negative particle*, not at all, 54 (qualif. an adv.).

urbs haud facile expugnāta est.

**Helvētīi, ōrum**, *m. pl.* the Helvētīi (modern Swiss), 2.

Helvētīi contrā Rōmānōs pugnant.

**hiberna. ōrum**, *n. pl.* winter-quarters, 2.

Labienus in hibernis est.

**Hibernia**, *ae. f.* Ireland, 12.

quid inter Hiberniam et Britanniam est?

**hic, haec, hōc**, *demonstr. pron.* and *adj.* this, the latter, he, she, it, 1.  
hic vir amicus meus est.

**hic**, *adv.* here, 24.

**hiem-ō.** 1. -**āvi**, -**ātum**, *v.n.* I pass the winter, 27.

ūna legio in Helvētīis hiemabat.

**hiems, emis**, *f.* winter, 42.

hiems gravissima anni pars est.

**Hispānia, ae, f.** Spain, 12. Fr. *Espagne*.

urbs Gādēs in Hispānia est.

**hōc . . . quod**, on this account . . . namely that (because), 28, *q.v.*

**hodiē**, *adv.* to-day, 41.

domi-ne hodiē māter tua est?

**homō, inis**, *m.* a human being, man, 12; *pl.* mankind, human beings. Fr. *homme*.

ille homō amicus meus est.

**honor, ōris**, *m.* honour, repute, 16; in honōre habēre, 43. Fr. *honneur*.  
Druidēs magnō erant apud Gallōs honōre.

**hōra, ae, f.** an hour, 11. Fr. *heure*.  
hōrā undecimā diēi redibō.

**hort-or.** 1. -**ātus**, *v. dep.* I encourage; exhort, 14.

multae rēs mē ad hōc consilium hortantur.

**hospes, itis**, *m.* a guest, 49. Fr. *hôte*.

multi hospitēs apud mē hodiē cenant (*dīne*).

**hostis, is**, *comm.* an enemy, 22; usually in *pl.*, 1.

hostium castella expugnāvimus.

**humilis, is**, *adj.* low, 12 (*māvis*); humble, 27; *superl.* -**illimus**. Fr. *humble*.

turrēs humiles aedificātae sunt.

**iacio.** 3. **iēcī, iactum**, *v.a.* I throw, hurl, 4. Fr. *jeter*.

quae ā barbaris iaciuntur?

**iact-ō.** 1. -**āvi**, -**ātum**, *v.freq. a.* I throw, 34.

argentum dē murō iactābatur

**iaculum, ī**, *n.* a javelin, 51.

nostrī hostium iaculis vulnerābuntur.

**iam**, *adv.* now, 3; already, 11. *imperf. tense* with *iamdiū* has meaning of *pluperf.*, 3, 33; with *fut. tense* soon.

castra iam diū oppugnābantur.

**ibi**, *adv.* there, 19. Fr. *y*.

ibi dux praesidium ponit.

**idem, eadem, idem**, *pron.* and *adj.* the same, 5.

eōdem ferē tempore in Galliam contendit.

**idōneus, a, um**, *adj.* suitable, 9. foll. by *ad*, 17; by *de*, 22.

castra in loco idōneō posuit.

**igitur, conj.** therefore, accordingly, 47 (usually after first word of a clause).

Caesar igitur cōpiās edūcit.

**ignis, is** (abl.-ī), *m.* fire, 11.

dux hostium operibus ignem infert.

- ignōr-ō**, 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* and *n.* I do not know, am ignorant of, 28. Fr. *ignorer*.  
barbarōrum consilia nōn ignōrābāmus.
- i-gnoscō**, 3. -gnōvi, -gnōtum, *v.a.* I pardon (*dat.*), 25.  
captivīs a duce ignoscitur.
- ille**, *a, ud*, *demonstr. pron.* and *adj.* that, the former, he, she, it, 2. Fr. *il, elle*.  
quis illa mulier est?  
**illic**, *adv.* there, 6.  
Rōmāni illic paucōs diēs remanent.  
**illō**, *adv.* to that place, 15.  
num illō ventitant mercatōrēs?
- immānīs**, *e, adj.* huge, enormous, 2.  
corporum magnitudo immānis est.
- immol-ō**, 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I offer, sacrifice, 24. Fr. *immoler*.  
sacerdōtes (*priests*) animal deīs immolāvērunt.
- immortālis**, *e, adj.* immortal, 36. Fr. *immortel*.  
Deum immortalem colāmus!
- impedimenta**, *ōrum, n. pl.* baggage (of an army), 2.  
magnus impedimentōrum numerus in castris est.
- imped-iō**, 1. -īvi (iī), -ītum, *v.a.* I hinder, 4.  
is ventus nāvigatiōnem impediēbat.
- impeditus**, *a, um*, 12. *perf. part.* *pass.* of impediō, encumbered, hindered; difficult of passage (*locus*).
- imperator**, *ōris, m.* commander-in-chief, 28. Fr. *empereur*.  
lēgātī nuntiōs ad imperatōrem mittunt.
- imperātum**, *i, n.* an order, command, 22.  
milites imperātis parēbunt.
- imperitus**, *a, um, adj.* without experience of, unskilled (*gen.*) 22, 45.  
vir reipublicae imperitissimus.
- imperium**, *erī, n.* rule, sovereignty, 24. Fr. *empire*.  
populī Rōmāni imperium maximum erat.
- imper-ō**, 1. -āvi, ātum, *v.n.* and *a.* I order (*dat.*) 6; I order to supply (*acc.* and *dat.*) 6, 22; *pass.*, 18; *impers.*, 25.  
quae imperāveris faciēmus.
- impetr-ō**, 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I obtain a request (*abl.* with *ā* or *ab*), 38. Fr. *impêtrer*.  
id ab illō impetrāre nōn potui.
- impetus**, *ūs, m.* an attack, onset, 2, 43.  
barbarōrum impetus subitus erat.
- im-pōnō**, 3. -posui, -positum, *v.a.* I impose, inflict upon, 12. Fr. *imposer*.  
victor civitatī servitūtem impōnet.
- importātus**, *a, um*, 5. *perf. part. pass.* of importō, imported. Fr. *importé*.  
Britanni frūmentō importātō ūtuntur.
- (dē) imprōvisō**, *adv.* unexpectedly 29, 37.  
hostes imprōvisō in castra irrūpere.
- imprūdēns**, *ntis, adj.* not expecting, unaware, 14.  
barbari nostrōs imprūdētēs aggrediuntur.
- imprudentia**, *ae, f.* want of foresight, inadvertence, 53.  
Fr. *imprudence*.  
imprudentia ducis detrimentum acceptum est.
- in**, *prep. gov. abl.* in, amongst, 1; on, 6; considering, 24. Fr. *en*.  
milites in hibernis sunt.
- gov. acc.* against, to, into, towards, at, 1; in longitudinem, 12.  
nostri in barbarōs tela cōiciunt.
- incendium**, *dī, n.* fire, 56.  
Fr. *incendie*.  
omnia incendiis vastābuntur.

**incend-ō.** **ī.** -**nsūm**, *v.a.* I set on fire, 4.

hostium **edificia** a nobis **incenduntur**.

**inceptum**, **i.** *n.* an attempt, undertaking, 57.

incepta nostra perfecimus.

**in-cipiō.** **3.** -**cēpi**, -**ceptum**, *v.a.* and *n.* I begin, 2, 46.

primā luce iter facere **incipiēmus**.

**in-cit-ō.** **1.** -**āvi**, -**ātum**, *v.a.* I urge on, encourage, rouse, 2, 19. *Fr. inciter.*

multa Caesarea ad id bellum **incitabant**.

**incognitus**, **a**, **um**, *adj.* unknown, 15. *Fr. inconnu.*

septentrionum regionēs **incognitae** sunt.

**incola**, **ae**, *comm.* an inhabitant, 1. urbs multorum **incolarum**.

**in-colō.** **3.** -**colui**, no supine, *v.a.* and *n.* I inhabit, 2; dwell, 1.

una Galliae pars a Belgis **incolēbatur**.

**incolumis**, **e**, *adj.* safe, unharmed, 19. naves in portum **incolumes** **revertunt**.

**incommodum**, **i**, *n.* a disadvantage, 9; misfortune, 32.

repentinō **incommodō** **perterrebamur**.

**incrēdibilis**, **e**, *adj.* incredible, 4. ea res prope **incrēdibilis** est.

**increpit-ō.** **1.** -**āvi**, -**ātum**, *v. freq.* I jeer at, 45.

hostēs nostrōs **increpitābant**.

**inductus**, **a**, **um**, **9.** *perf. part. pass.* of **inducō**, persuaded, seduced (in a bad sense, as opp. to **adductus**).

vir cupiditate **inductus** **malus** est.

**induō.** **3.** **indui**, **indūtum**, *v.a.* I put on, 18.

miles galeam capitī **induit**.

**in-ēō**, -**ire**, -**ivi** (**ii**), -**itum**, *v.a.* and *n.* I enter upon, form, 15. **initā aestate**, at the beginning of summer, 20.

**dux noctū consilia nova inibat**.

**infans**, **ntis**, *comm.* a young child, infant, 34. *Fr. enfant.*

nē **infantibus** quidem **pepererunt**.

**inferior**, **ius**, *adj.* lower, 12; *compar.* of **infra**. *Fr. inférieur.*

barbari ē locis **inferioribus** **instant**.

**in-ferō**, -**ferre**, -**tuli**, -**lātum**, *v.a.*

cause, inflict, occasion, 18, 44, 53.

magnam mihi **iniuriā** **intulisti**.

**infinitus**, **a**, **um**, *adj.* unlimited, 22. *Fr. infini.*

Rōmāni imperium prope **infinītum** **habēbant**.

**in-fluō.** **3.** -**fluxi**, **fluxum**, *v.n.* I flow into, 2.

nōn longē a mari, quō **lthēnus** **influit**.

**ingens**, **ntis**, *adj.* great, vast, 2.

nonne **elephantī** **ingentia** **animālīa** **sunt**?

**in-gredior.** **3.** **gressus**, *v. dep.* *n.* and *a.* I go into, enter, 6, 28.

barbari **intrā** **munitionēs** **nostrās** **ingredi** **nōn** **poterant**.

**in-iciō.** **3.** -**iēcī**, -**iectum**, *v.a.* I infuse, inspire, 17.

quō **factō** **maxima** **nostrīs** **iniciēbatur** **spēs**.

**iniquus**, **a**, **um**, *adj.* uneven, unfavourable, 22, 25. *Fr. inique.*

**iniquissimō** **nostrīs** **locō** **proelium** **committunt**.

**initium**, **itī**, *n.* a beginning, 19, 22.

**pugnae** **initium** **ab** **equitibus** **fit**.

**iniūria**, **ae**, *f.* a wrong, insult, 36. *Fr. injure.*

**tantās** **iniūriās** **nonne** **persequēmur**?

**inligātus**, **a**, **um**, **52.** *perf. part. pass.* of **inligō**, tied on, attached.

**in** **quid** **servus** **litterās** **inligat**?

**inopia**, **ae**, *f.* lack, want, 6.

**omnium** **rērum** **inopiā** **permoveor**.

**inopinans**, **ntis**, *adj.* not expecting, unaware, 9.

barbari **nostrōs** **inopinantes** **opprimunt**.



**inquam**, *verb. defective*, I say, 4. v. p. 245.

'hostēs' inquit explorātor 'ap-  
propinquant.'

**insciens, ntis**, *adj.* unknowing, un-  
aware, 14.

illud duce insciente factum est.

**in-sequor**. 3. -secūtus, *v. dep.* I fol-  
low up, 6.

nostri Helvētiorū manūs  
cupidiūs insequuntur.

**insidiae, ārum**, *f. pl.* an ambush, 2.  
Britanni insidiās parant.

**insignis, e**, *adj.* prominent, con-  
spicuous, 18. Fr. *insigne*.  
vir insignis virtūtis.

insigne, *is*, *n.* a badge, 18.

**in-sinu-ā** 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v.a.* I make  
my way, steal into, 49. Fr.  
*sinuer*.

flūmen sē inter vāllēs insinuat.

**in-sistō**. 3. -stitī, *no* supine *v.n.* I  
stand, stand on, 7.

alter alteri insistit.

**in-stit-uō**. 3. -uī, -ūtum, *v.a.* I  
undertake, begin, 26; make, con-  
struct, 47, 57. Fr. *instituer*.

nāves complurēs institūtae sunt.

**institutum, ī**, *n.* habits, practices,  
56.

(ex) **institutō meō**, in accordance  
with my habits.

**in-stō**. 1. -stitī, -stātum, *v.n.* I press  
on, menace, 11.

nostri undique instābant.

**in-struō**. 3. -struxī, -structum, *v.a.*  
I draw up, 10; erect, 15. Fr. *in-*  
*struire*.

acies ā tribunis instructa est.

**insula, ae, f.** an island, 2. Fr. *ile*  
insulam Britanniam incolimus.

**in-sum, -esse, -fui**, *v.n.* I am in, 15.  
in quibus sapientia (*wisdom*)  
inesse solet?

**integer, gra, grām, adj.** fresh, 25.  
Fr. *intégral*.

nostri intēgris viribus resistunt.

**intelleg-ō**. 3. -exī, -ectum, *v.a.* I per-  
ceive, 22.

hostēs iam instāre intelleximus.

**intentus, a, um**, 13. *perf. f. art. pass.*  
of intendō, eager, intent.

omnium oculi mentesque ad  
pugnam intentae erant.

**inter, prep. gov. acc.** amongst, be-  
tween, 6, 19, 41; **inter sē**, with one  
another, amongst themselves. Fr.  
*entre*.

Mona insula inter Britanniam  
Hibernianque est.

**inter-cēdō**. 3. -cessī, -cessum, *v.n.* I  
intervene, 34. Fr. *intercéder*.

palūs magna intercēdebat.

**inter-cipiō**. 3. -cēpī, -ceptum, *v.a.* I  
cut off, intercept, 4. Fr. *inter-*  
*cepter*.

hostēs commēatum nostrum  
intercēperunt.

**inter-clūdō**. 3. -clūsi, -clūsum, *v.a.* I  
cut off (*abl.* of thing), 41.

dux itinere interclūditur.

**interdum, adv.** at times, now and  
then, 8.

noctū in castris sonī interdum  
audiuntur.

**inter-eō, -ire, -ī, -itum, v.n.** I perish,  
36.

in eō procliō magna pars exercitūs  
interiit.

**inter-ficiō**. 3. -fēcī, -fectum, *v.a.* I  
kill, 1.

miles sē gladiō interfecit.

**interim, adv.** meanwhile, 3.

interim nox appropinquābat.

**inter-mitto**. 3. -misi, -missum, *v.a.*  
and *n.* I leave off, leave an inter-  
val; proclium, 11; spatium, 14;  
diēs, 22; ventus, 26.

militum opus noctū inter-  
mittētur.

**interneciō, ōnis, f.** extermination,  
general slaughter, 36.

dux incolās ad interneciōnem  
dēlevit.

**interpres, etis, comm.** a go-between,  
interpreter, 8. Fr. *interprète*.

obsidēs per interpretem inter-  
rogat.

**inter-rog-ō** 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v.a.* I ask,  
question, 8. Fr. *interroger*.

huic, quod tē interrogō,  
respondē!

**inter-scindō.** 3. -scidī, -scissum, *v.a.*  
I break down, 41.

barbari aggerem interscindere  
cōnantur.

**inter-sum, -esse, -fui, v.n.** I take  
part in (*lat.*), 19; am of im-  
portance, 45. Fr. *intéresser*.

dux ipse cō proeliō nōn interfuit.

**intrā, prep. gov. acc.** within, 4.

Caesar suōs intrā vallum con-  
tinet.

**intus, adv.** within, 52.

hostēs extra et intus habēmus.

**in-veniō.** 4. -vēnī, -ventum, *v.a.* I  
find, find out, ascertain, 4, 22. Fr.  
*inventer*.

locum castris idōneum invēnit.

**inventor, ōris, m.** a discoverer, in-  
ventor, 24. Fr. *inventeur*.

quem Galli artium inventōrem  
putabant?

**in-veterascō.** 3. -veterāvī, *v.n. incept.*  
I become established, 12. Fr.

mala consuetūdō inveterascit.

**in-videō.** 2. -vidī, -visum, *v.a.* I envy  
(*dat.*), 25. Fr. *envier*.

amicis meis nōn invidebō.

**invitus, a, um, adj.** unwilling, 14.

Séquanis invitīs ire non poterat.

**ipse, a, um, pron.** self, 1; **sub ipsōs**  
**mūrōs**, right up to the very walls,  
28.

Caesar ipse milites laudat.

**irātus, a, um, 3, 42. perf. part.** of  
irascor, angry.

quam (*how*) irātus magister est!

**iri, 22. pres. infin. pass. of cō, q.v.**  
and p. 84.

**ir-rideō.** 2. -risī, -risum, *v.n.* and *a.*  
I laugh at, scoff, 45.

hostēs Rōmānorum turrim irrīde-  
bant.

**ir-rumpō.** 3. -rūpi, -ruptum, *v.n.*  
and *a.* I burst, rush into, 19.  
Fr. *irruption*.

in mediōs hostēs irrumpite!

**is, ea, id, pron.** and *adj.* he, she, it,  
that, 1; *abl. eō* foll. by *quod*, on

this account . . . because, 28; such  
(in consecutive clauses), 43; foll. by  
*quī* (consecutive), 43.

eius rei nōmen ignōrō.

**ita, adv.** so, accordingly, 12; foll. by  
*ut*, 37.

ita insulae circuitus magnus est.

**Italia, ae, f.** Italy, 11. Fr. *Italie*.

nonne in Italia Rōma est?

**itaque, conj.** and so, therefore, 4.

itaque postridiō dux castra  
mōvit.

**item, adv.** also (in enumerations), 11.  
Sextus et item Balbus domi sunt.

**iter, itineris, n.** a journey, march, 5;

**magnum iter**, a forced march, 6;

**iter facere**, to march, 19; **iter**

**dare**, to give a passage, 26. Fr.

*itinéraire*.

hostēs nostros in itinere op-  
pugnant.

**iterum, adv.** a second time, 48.

Caesar consul iterum factus est.

**itūrus, a, um, 22. fut. part.** of *cō*,  
*q.v.*

**iubeō.** 2. iussī, iussum, *v.a.* I order,  
7; foll. by *infin.* 11.

iubeō tē hōc facere.

**iūdicō.** 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v.a.* I judge,  
decide, 44. Fr. *juger*.

dē hāc rē iūdicābō.

**iugum, i, n.** a yoke, 22. This con-  
sisted of two upright spears, and a  
third laid transversely upon them,  
under which vanquished enemies  
were made to pass. Hence, **sub**  
**iugum mittere**, to send under the  
yoke.

**iumentum, i, n.** a beast of burden,  
draught animal, 5. Fr. *jument*.

iumenta agmen Rōmānum im-  
pediunt.

**Iuppiter, Iovis, m.** Jupiter, king of  
heaven, 24.

quōrum imperium tenet Iuppi-  
ter?

**iūs iurandum, iūris iurandi, n.** an  
oath, 26.

iūre iurandō tenērī debēmus.

- iussum**, *i.*, *n.* an order, 4.  
tribūni ducis iussa militib;  
renuntiant.  
**iustitia**, *ae*, *f.* justice, 8; clemency,  
48. Fr. *justice*.  
Caesar iustitiā ergā captivos  
ūtōtur.

## L

- L** = Lūcius, a Roman name, 14.  
**labor**, *ōris*, *m.* labour, exertion, 16;  
hardship, 27. Fr. *labour*.  
quantō cum labōre superāvimus!  
**labōr**-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.n.* I am in  
difficulties, 7; work. Fr. *labourer*.  
labōrantium clamōres undique  
audiēbantur.  
**laccess**-ō. 3. -īvi (īi), -itum, *v.a.* I  
harass, attack, 9.  
hostēs nōs proeliō lacessēbant.  
**lacrima**, *ae*, *f.* a tear, 8. Fr. *larme*.  
multis cum lacrimis obsecrāre  
(*beseech*) coepit.  
**lacrīm**-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.n.* I weep,  
shed tears, 10.  
quamobrem lacrimās? num ob  
dolōrem?  
**laetatiō**, *ōnis*, *f.* rejoicing, 57.  
magnā cum laetatiōne clamitā-  
bant militēs.  
**laetitia**, *ae*, *f.* joy, 4.  
ea res mō summa laetitiā adfecit.  
**lapis**, *idis*, *m.* a stone, 47.  
lapidēs ā barbaris coniecti sunt.  
**lassitūdō**, *inis*, *f.* weariness, 19. Fr.  
*lassitude*.  
virēs nostris propter lassitudinem  
dēfēcērunt.  
**lātē**, *adv.* far and wide, widely, 38.  
*compar.* -ius, 6; *superl.* -issimē, 52.  
barbari lātius vagābantur.  
**lat-eō**. 2. -uī, no supine, *v.n.* I lurk,  
lie concealed, 8, 56. Fr. *latent*  
(*adj.*).  
ubi ferae latēre consuescunt?  
**Latīnē**, *adv.* in, into Latin, 1.  
Latīnē reddite, vertite!

- Latinus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.* Latin, 20. Fr.  
*latin*.  
rēbus-ne Latīnis studēs?  
**lātītūdō**, *inis*, *f.* breadth, width, 19.  
Fr. *latitude*.  
castra in magnam lātītūdinem  
patēbant.  
**lātus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.* broad, wide, 1.  
fossa quindecim pedēs lāta.  
**latus**, *eris*, *n.* a side, 12.  
latus ūnum castrōrum flūmine  
mūniebātur.  
**laud**-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I praise,  
19. Fr. *louer*.  
dux militēs fortēs laudat.  
**lectiō**, *ōnis*, *f.* a passage for reading,  
1. Fr. *leçon*.  
lectiō difficilis est.  
**lĕgātiō**, *ōnis*, *f.* an embassy (*i.e.* a  
number of lĕgāti), 25. Fr. *lĕga-  
tion*.  
hostēs commūnem lĕgātiōnem ad  
Caesarem mittunt.  
**lĕgātus**, *i.*, *m.* (i) a second in com-  
mand, brigadier, 4; (ii) a hostage,  
9. Fr. *lĕgat*.  
lĕgātus bellum bene gerit.  
lĕgāti ā Venetis mittuntur.  
**legiō**, *ōnis*, *f.* a legion, 2. Fr. *lĕgion*.  
trēs legiōnēs in Germāniā col-  
locantur.  
**lĕnis**, *e*, *adj.* calm, mild, 26.  
ventus lĕnissimus flabat.  
**lĕnitās**, *ātis*, *f.* mildness, slowness  
(of a river), 41.  
Arar flūmen magnae lĕnitātis est.  
**liber**, *bri*, *m.* a book, 12. Fr. *livre*.  
non-omnēs librōs amant.  
**liberī**, *ōrum*, *m. pl.* children, 12.  
quot liberī patrī tuō sunt?  
**liber**-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I free, 36.  
Fr. *libérer*.  
cū adventū incolae periculō  
liberātī sunt.  
**libertās**, *ātis*, *f.* freedom, independ-  
ence. Fr. *liberté*.  
libertātis condiciō grāta est.

**lic-et.** 2. **lit** or **-itum est**, *v.n.*

*impers.* it is lawful, allowe

17, 24.

id facere tibi nōn licet.

**lignātiō**, **ōnis**, *f.* a felling, procuring of wood, 46.

aliī lignātiōnis, aliī frūmenti causā exierant.

**ligneus**, **a, um**, *adj.* of wood, wooden.

1.

trabs lignea est.

**lingua**, **ae**, *f.* tongue, language, 20. *Fr. langue.*

linguae-ne Gallicae peritus es?

**linum**, **i**, *n.* flax, 44. *Fr. lin.*

lini cōpia in Venetis non erat.

**littera**, **ae**, *f.* a letter (of the alphabet).

4. *Fr. lettre.*

quālibus litteris epistulam scripsit?

*pl.* a letter, epistle, 4.

**litus**, **oris**, *n.* the sea-shore, 7.

hostēs appropinquantēs ex litore conspeximus.

**locus**, **i**, *m.* (*nom.* and *acc. pl. loca*), a place, spot, position, 1; chance, room, 19; summo loco nātus (*of birth*), 52. *Fr. lieu.*

omnia loca ab hostibus occupantur.

**longē**, *adv.* far (*introrsus*), 22; **longū**

**abest**, 39; by-far, 51; **longē** **ab**.

away from, 55; *compar.* **-ius** longer (*of time*), 17; farther (*of place*), 18.

**longitūdō**, **inis**, *f.* length, 12. *Fr. longitude.*

pons in longitūdinem pedum centum patebat.

**longus**, **a, um**, *adj.* long (*of space*), 2; (*of time*), 3. *Fr. long.*

Rhēnus flūmen longum est.

**loquor**, 3. **locūtus**, *v. dep. n.* and *a.* I speak, talk, 9.

discipuli inter sē loquuntur.

**lūna**, **ae**, *f.* the moon, 12. *Fr. lune.*

eā nocte lūna plēna erat.

**lux**, **lūcis**, *f.* light, 21; prima lux, dawn.

lūnae quam sōlis lux minor est.

## M

**M** = Marcus, a Roman name, 38.

**māchinātiō**, **ōnis**, *f.* machine, engine, 45.

hostēs māchinātiōnem prōmovent.

**maer-eō**, 2. no *perf.* or *supine*, *v.n.* I am sad, lament, 45.

puer ob dolōrem maerēbat.

**magis**, *adv.* more (*of degree*), 37; *compar. of magnopere*, *q.v.*

magis virtūte quam consilio vicimus.

**magnitūdō**, **inis**, *f.* size, 2.

elephantus immani magnitūdine est.

**magnopere**, *adv.* greatly, 6; *compar.* **magis**; *superl.* **maximē**.

dux suōs magnopere hortatur.

**magnus**, **a, um**, *adj.* large, great, 2;

**magnī**, at a high price, 45; *compar.*

**māior**, 1; *superl.* **maximus**, 4.

magna frūmenti cōpia in urbe erat.

**male**, *adv.* badly, 10; *compar.* **pēius**; *superl.* **pessimē**.

male facere nōn debētis.

**mālō**, **malle**, **mālui**, no *supine*, *v.a.* I prefer, 9.

pueri lūdere (*to play*) quam labōrāre mālunt.

**malus**, **a, um**, *adj.* bad, wicked, 20; *compar.* **pēior**; *superl.* **pessimus**.

nemo malos laudat.

**mand-ō**, 1. **-āvī**, **-ātum**, *v.a.* I enjoin, order (*dat.*), 31; **fugae mē mandō**, I

commit myself (*i.e.* take) to flight, 6. *Fr. mander.*

Caesar Treboniō per litterās, mandāverat.

**man-eō**, 2. **-sī**, **-sum**, *v.n.* and *a.* I remain, stay, 51; *impers.* 25.

hic manēri diūtius nōn potest.

**manipulus**, **i**, *m.* a company (division of the legion), 43.

quot manipuli in legiōne erant?

**manus**, **ūs**, *f.* a hand, 45; an armed force, band, 8. *Fr. main.*

in militis manū telum est.

**mare**, *is, n.* the sea, 6. Fr. *mer.*  
nonne mari cingitur Britannia?

**maritimus**, *a, um, adj.* of the sea, 15.  
Fr. *maritime.*  
ea civitas maritima omni est.

**Mars**, *rtis, m.* Mars, a Roman god, 24.

Mars, Iovis filius, belli deus erat.

**māter**, *tris, f.* a mother, 34. Fr. *mere.*

mātrēs ergā liberōs benignae (*kind*) sunt.

**māteria**, *ae, f.* timber, 4. in *nom.* and *acc. sing.* also **māteriēs**, *-em.* māteria ā nostris succiditur.

**mātrimōnium**, *nī, n.* marriage, 46.  
cui Orgetorix filiam suam in mātrimōnium dederat?

**mātūrē**, *adv.* opportunely, early 7;  
*compar. -ius; superl. -urrimē.*  
Caesar satis mātūre proficiscitur.

**mātūrescō**, 3. **mātūrui**, *v. incept. n.*  
I become ripe, 12. Fr. *mûrir.*  
autumnō pōma (*fruits*) mātūrescunt.

**mātūrō**, 1. **-āvī**, *-ātum, v.a. and n.* I hasten, 9; foll. by *infin.* 25.  
dux iter facere mātūrāvī.

**maximē**, *adv.* for the most part, 12;  
especially, 52; *superl.* of magnopere.

**maximus**, *a, um, adj.* very great, large, 4; *superl.* of magnus, *q.v.*

**mediterrāneus**, *a, um, adj.* inland, remote from the sea, 4. Fr. *méditerrané.*

quid in mediterrāneis regiōnibus invenitur?

**medius**, *a, um, adj.* middle, middle of, 5, 14.

domus nostra in mediā urbe est.

**membrum**, *i, n.* a limb, 20. Fr. *membre.*

corpus multa membra habet.

**meminī**, *-isse, v.n.* I remember, 57.  
rectē semper facere mementōte!

**memoria**, *ae, f.* memory, 22, 45. Fr. *mémoire*; **memoriam**, *genēō, i* remember, 22 (*gen.*).

eārum rerum memoriam semper tenēbō.

**mens**, *ntis, f.* the mind, 5.  
graviter mente perturbor.

**mercātor**, *ōris, m.* a merchant, 8.  
mercātores in omnēs terrās eunt.

**mercātūra**, *ae, f.* commerce, 24.  
nonne Mercurius mercātūrae deus erat?

**Mercurius**, *urī, m.* Mercury, a Roman god, 24. Fr. *Mercur.*  
Mercurius Iovis et Maiae filius esse dicitur.

**meridiānus**, *a, um, adj.* of mid-day, 26. Fr. *méridien.*  
meridiānō tempore labōre dē-sistēmus.

**meridiēs**, *ēī, m.* the south, 12 (*lit.* midday)  
a meridiē Britanniae Hispānia est.

**meritum**, *i, n.* a service, desert, 57.  
légātus propter meritum laudātor!

**mētior**, 4. **mensus**, *v. dep.* I measure out, distribute, 24.  
quibus dux frumentum mētitur?

**metus**, *ūs, m.* fear, 8.  
metus mentem meam occupāvit.

**miles**, *itis, comm.* a soldier, 1.  
milites noctū in castris erunt.

**milia**, *ium, n. pl.* of mille, thousands, 12. Fr. *mille.*  
quattuor milia passuum prō-gressi sunt.

**militāris**, *e, adj.* military, 8, 19.  
Fr. *militaire.*  
in rebus militāribus versatur.

**militia**, *ae, f.* military service, war; *loc. militiae*, at the war, 40.  
hieme milites militiam nōn sustinent.

**Minerva**, *ae, f.* Minerva, a Roman goddess, 24.  
Minerva sapientiae (*wisdom*) dea esse dicitur.

**minor, us**, *adj.* less, 12; *compar.* of parvus, *v.v.* Fr. *mineur, moindre*.

**minus, adv.** less, 28; foll. by *abl.*, 49; *compar.* of paullum. Fr. *moins*.  
minus diebus quinque opus perfectum est.

**misereor.** 2. **miseritus, v. dep.** I pity (*gen.*), 57.  
orō tē ut mei misereāris.

**miser-or.** 1. **-ātus, v. dep.** I bewail, deplore, 8.  
milites fatum inter se miserati sunt.

**missus, a, um.** 11; *perf. part. pass.* of mittō, *q.v.*

**mittō.** 3. **misi, missum, v.a.** I send, throw, 1.

Rēm subsidia Rōmānis mittunt.

**modo, adv.** only, 8, 18.  
nōn modo bonus sed etiam fortis erat.

**modus, i, m.** pattern, fashion, 44, 45.  
Fr. *mode*.  
quem in modum factae sunt naves?

**mollis, e, adj.** soft, 28. Fr. *mol, molle*.  
litus, quō naves instruēbat, molle erat.

**mon-eō.** 2. **-ui, -itum, v.a.** I warn, advise, 31.

monet milites mediā nocte in armis sint.

**mons, ntis, m.** a mountain, 2. Fr. *mont*.  
montibus circumdatur oppidum.

**morbus, i, m.** disease, illness, 21,  
frater meus morbo afficitur.

**morior.** 3. **mortuus, v. dep.** I die, 19.  
Fr. *mourir*.  
o proelio complures mortui sunt.

**mor-or.** 1. **-ātus, v. dep. n. and a.** I stop, delay, 6.  
illic paucos dies morati sumus.

**mors, rtis, f.** death, 33. Fr. *mort*.  
mors omnia delet.

**mōs, mōris, m.** custom, manner, 21;

**mōre suo**, according to his (their) custom, 50. Fr. *mœurs*.  
mores bonos colere debemus.

**Mosa, ae, m.** the river Meuse, 19.  
ad ripam Mosae castra ponit.

**mōtūrus, a, um, 8. fut. part. act.** of moveo, *q.v.*

**mōtus, a, um, 22. perf. part. pass.** of moveō, *q.v.*

**moveō.** 2. **mōvi, mōtum, v.a.** I move, 8. Fr. *mouvoir*.  
postridie hostes se ex loco mōverunt.

**mox, adv.** soon, 3.  
iam in hibernis sunt Rōmāni;  
mox ab eis discedent.

**mulier, eris, f.** a woman, 19.  
mulieres inter barbarorum ordines pugnabant.

**multitūdō, inis, f.** a large number, crowd, 4. Fr. *multitude*.  
nostri hostium multitūdine circumdantur.

**multus, a, um, adj.** many, much, 1;  
*compar.* plūs; *superl.* plurimus.  
multae in silva ferae sunt.  
*neut. sing.* as *noun*, foll. by *gen.* 15,  
multum aestatis, much of the summer.

**multum, adv.** much, 10; *compar.* plūs; *superl.* plurimum; **multum esse in** (*abl.*), to be much engaged in, 10; **multō, adv.** by much, by far, 4, qualifying a *compar.*

**mūn-iō.** 4. **-ivī (ii), -itum, v.a.** I fortify, 1. Fr. *munir*.  
quomodo muniuntur castra?

**mūnitiō, ōnis, f.** a fortification, rampart, 4. In 46, **lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque** must be taken closely together; wood with which to make a rampart.

Rōmāni summo cum studio  
mūnitiōnem facient.

**mūrus, i, m.** a wall, 1. Fr. *mur*.  
barbari de muris saxa in nostros iaciunt.

## N

**nactus, a, um, 9. perf. part. of nanciscor, q. v.**

**nam, conj. for, 3.**  
 nostris — nam defessi erant —  
 alacritas deficiebat.

**nanciscor. 3. nactus, v. dep. I meet**  
 with, 9.

locum egregiè munitum nacti  
 sumus.

**narrō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v. a. I tell,**  
 relate.  
 quid hoc mihi narrā?

**nascor. 3. nātus, v. dep. I am found**  
 (lit. born), 24. Fr. *naître*.  
 plumbum album in Britannia  
 nascitur.

**nātiō, ōnis, f. a tribe, people, 2, 46.**  
 Fr. *nation*.  
 eas quoque nationes adire (go to)  
 volebat.

**nātūra, ae, f. nature, 1 (as opp. to**  
 art, opus), shape (of an island), 12.  
 Fr. *nature*.  
 nātūra loci silvestris erat.

**nātus, a, um, 52. perf. part. of**  
 nascor, born. Fr. *né*.  
 vir summō locō nātus.

**nātus, ūs, m. birth (used only in abl.**  
*sing.*), 38.  
 frātre tuum nātū maximum  
 hodiē vidi.

**nauta, ae, m. a sailor, 21.**  
 tandem nautae in portum  
 incolumēs redibunt.

**nauticus, a, um, adj. naval, sea, 45.**  
 Fr. *nautique*.  
 alii nauticis, alii militāribus  
 rēbus intersunt.

**nāvālis, e, adj. naval, 29. Fr.**  
*naval*.  
 castra nāvālia ad protegendās  
 nāves in litore instructās facta  
 sunt.

**nāvigātiō, ōnis, f. sailing, 58. Fr.**  
*navigation*.  
 celerī nāvigātiōne pervenit.

**nāvis, is, f. a ship, 1; nāvis longa, a**  
 warship, 7. Fr. *navire*.  
 nāvēs iam in portū sunt.

**-nē, interrog. part. 2; prefixed to**  
 the first word of a question expect-  
 ing a doubtful (i.e. either an affir-  
 mative or negative) answer.  
 Marcum-ne amicum tuum  
 vidisti?

**nē, conj. that not, lest, 31; not to**  
 (after hortor, etc.), 36; with 2nd  
 pers. subj. 37; final, 41; with  
 imperf. subj. = imperative, 45. Fr.  
*ne*.

orō tē nē hoc faciās.

**nē . . . quidem, adv. not even, 19;**  
 (emphasise the word between  
 them).

nē minimus quidem ventus fluc-  
 tus commovēbat (*stirred*).

**necessārius, a, um, adj. needful,**  
 necessary, 18. Fr. *nécessaire*.  
 dux res necessāriās comparat.

**necesse est, v. impers. it is neces-**  
 sary, 24, foll. by *inf.*.

necesse erat id confestim fieri.

**necō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v. a. I kill**  
 (cruelly), 11.

alii igni, alii famē (*hunger*)  
 necati sunt.

**neglēgō. 3. neglexi, neglectum, v. a.**  
 I am regardless of, 21. Fr.  
*négliger*.

illius in mē injūrias neglexi.

**negō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v. n. and a. I say**  
 no, deny, 22. Fr. *nier*.  
 speculātōrēs barbarōs adesse  
 negant.

**negōtium, ti, n. business, affair, 19.**  
 Fr. *négoce*.

negōtiō confectō donam redii.

**nēmō, nullūs, m. or f. no one, 15.**  
 hostium nēmō diūtius resistēbat.

**nēquāquam, adv. by no means, not**  
 at all, 17.

legatōrum responsū duci nēquā-  
 quam placuit (*pleased*).

**neque, conj. and . . . not, nor, 3.**

**neque . . . neque**, neither . . . nor,  
7.

neque in silvis neque in agris  
hostes erant.

• **nē-ve (neu)**, *adv.* and not, nor, 32,  
45; introduces a negative clause  
containing a purpose, command,  
or prohibition.

obsidēs ōrant ut sibi parcat, nēve  
agris suis noceat.

**nihil**, *indecl. n.* nothing, 15; foll. by  
*gen.* of noun, 15.

nihil frumenti in oppidō erat.

**nihilō minus**, *adv.* none the less, 3  
(*lit.* less by nothing).

nostrī nihilō minus impetum  
sustinent.

**nīl**, 39. = nihil, *q.v.*

**nisi**, *conj.* except, unless, 12, 48.

nisi auxilia vēnerint, diūtius  
sustinēre nōn poterimus.

**nōbilis**, *e, adj.* high-born, noble, 16.  
*Fr. noble.*

obsidēs nōbilissimī Rēmīs  
imperantur.

**nōbilitās**, *ātis, f.* the nobility, 43,  
*Fr. noblesse.*

omniū civitatīs nōbilitās interiit.

**noc-eō**. 2. -uī. -itum, *v.n.* I injure.  
hurt (*dat.*), 34; *impers.* 25.

dicit sē illīs nōn nociturum esse.

**noctū**, *adv.* at, by night, 4.

noctū feracē per silvās errant  
(*wander*).

**nocturnus**, *a, um, adj.* of night, 47.  
*Fr. nocturne.*

nocturnō tempore quies omnia  
occupat.

**nōlō, nolle, nōluī**, *v. irreg.* I do not  
wish, 12.

dux iniquō locō pugnāre nōn vult.

**nōmen, inis**, *n.* a name, 41. *Fr.*  
*nom.*

quō nōmine appellāris?

**nōn**, *adv.* not, 2. *Fr. non.*

incolae urbem nōn defendunt.

**nondum**, *adv.* not yet, 17.

nuntii nondum cum litteris red-  
ierant.

**nonne**, *interrog. part.* not? expect-  
ing an affirmative answer, 2.

nonne Pisō frātre[m] ex periculō  
eripit?

**nonnullus**, *a, um, adj.* some, several;  
*pl.* used as noun, 14.

nonnullae cohortēs intercipi-  
untur.

**nōs**, *1st pers. pron.* we, us, 2; (*pl. of*  
*ego, q.v.*). *Fr. nous.*

**noster**, *tra, trum, adj.* our, 1. *Fr.*  
*notre.*

patria nostra ā nōbīs amātur.

**nostrī**, *ōrum, m. pl.* our men,  
soldiers, 1.

instant nostrī, et hostēs fugant.

**nōtus**, *a, um, 15. perf. part. pass.*  
of noscō. 3. novi, nōtum, *known.*

num tibi urbs Rōma nōta est?

**novitās**, *ātis, f.* strangeness, 9.

Romani periculū novitate per-  
territi sunt.

**novus**, *a, um, adj.* new, strange, 14;  
**rēs novae**, a revolution, 27. *Fr.*  
*neuf, neuve, nouveau.*

id pugnae genus nostris novum  
erat.

**nox, noctis**, *f.* night, 5. *Fr. nuit.*

pueri saepe noctem timent.

**nūdus**, *a, um, adj.* bare, 31. *Fr. nu.*  
mulieris pectus nūdum est.

**nullus**, *a, um, adj.* no, none, 4.

nullus in oppidō invenitur hostis.

**num**, *interrog. part.* expecting a  
negative answer, 5.

num malōs hominēs laudās?

**numerus**, *1, m.* a number, 6. *Fr.*  
*nombre.*

reliqui, numerō quadringentī,  
fugantur.

**nuntius**, *tī, m.* a messenger, 4.

nuntius cum epistula mittitur.

o

**ob**, *prep. gov. acc.* on account of,  
because of, 37.

ob tempestātem in portū manē-  
tur.



**obiectus, a, um, 12. perf. part. pass.**  
of ob-iciō. 3. iēcī, -iectum, opposite.  
insula Sicilia Italiae obiecta est.

**obliquus, a, um, adj.** indirect (*lit.*  
slanting), 36. Fr. *oblique*.  
oratiō aut recta aut obliqua est.

**obses, idis, comm.** a hostage, 6.  
obsides in castra mittuntur.

**obliviscor. 3. oblitus, v. dep.** I forget  
(*gen.*), 45. Fr. *oublier*.  
nē, militēs, pristinae fortunae  
obliti sitis!

**ob-sideō. 2. -sēdī, -sessum, v.a. and**  
**n.** I blockade, beset, 3.  
Cicerō ā Nervii obsidetur.

**obsidiō, ōnis, f.** a siege, blockade, 3.  
spēs maior nostris in obsidiōne  
quam in oppugnatiōe erat.

**ob-sign-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, v.a.** I seal  
up, 8,  
epistulam meam obsignavi.

**ob-test-or. 1. -ātus, v. dep.** I entreat,  
implore, 31.  
te per (*by*) omnes deos obtestor.

**ob-tineō. 2. -tinui, -tentum, v.a. and**  
**n.** I hold, 1. Fr. *obtenir*.  
Caesar totius exercitus imperium  
obtinebat.

**occāsiō, ōnis, f.** an opportunity, 18.  
Fr. *occasion*.  
barbaris resistendī occāsiō nōn  
erat.

**occāsus, ūs, m.** a setting, 25.  
sōlis occāsū nāvēs solvit.

**oc-cidō. 3. -cidi, -cāsum, v.n.** I go  
down, set (of the heavenly bodies),  
25. Fr. *occident*.  
sōl iam complūres hōrās occiderat.

**oc-cidō. 3. -cidi, -cisum, v.a.** I kill.  
slay, 7.  
ad unum omnēs occiduntur.

**occisus, a, um, 15. perf. part. pass.**  
of occidō, *q.v.*

**occul-t-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, v. freq. a.** I  
conceal, 12.  
ūna legiō ā duce in silvis occul-  
tāta erat.

**occupātus, a, um, 14. perf. part.**  
**pass.** of occupō, busy, occupied.  
Fr. *occupé*.

**occup-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, v.a.** I seize,  
8; take possession of, 36. Fr.  
*occuper*.  
nostrī loca superiōra occupā-  
verant.

**oc-currō. 3. -curri, -cursum, v.n.** I  
face; go or come to meet, 27, 39.  
lēgatus Caesari venientī occurrīt.

**oc-tingenti, ae, a, num. adj.** eight  
hundred, 12.  
ex hostibus octingenti occisi  
sunt.

**oculus, ī, m.** an eye, 13. Fr. *œil*.  
quot oculi tibi sunt?

**ōdī, ōdisse, v. irreg. a.** I hate, 57.  
dixit se Marcum ōdisse.

**offendō. 3. offendī, offensum, v.a.**  
and **n.** I offend, vex 54. Fr.  
*offenser*.  
num te umquam (*ever*) verbo  
offendi?

**officiū, icī, n.** duty, obligation, 18.  
Fr. *office*.  
quī officiō suō funguntur lau-  
dandi sunt.

**omnīnō, adv.** at all, 43; altogether,  
54.  
nulla omnīnō rēs nostris dēerat.

**omnis, e, adj.** all, 3. *pl.* all men,  
mankind, 19.  
omnēs viae ā Rōmānis occupa-  
ntur.

**oner-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, v.a.** I load, 17.  
nāvēs commēatū onerātae in  
portum perveniunt,

**onus, eris, n.** weight, burden, 45.  
tantum-ne onus sustinēre potes?  
**ope. 50. abl. sing. of ops, opis, f.**  
assistance, help, *v. p.* 194.

**opera, ae, f.** means, agency, 36.  
tuā operā id fieri poterat.

**opiniō, ōnis, f.** opinion, belief, 12;  
expectation, 54. Fr. *opinion*.  
complūres in eādē opiniōne  
erant.

**oportet**, *et. 3. -uit, v. impers.* it behoves, is necessary or proper, 21.

omnēs officia praestāre oportet.

**oppidāni, ōrum, m. pl.** townsfolk, 23.  
oppidāni Caesaris adventū perterriti sē dēdunt.

**oppidum, i, n.** a town, 1.

oppidimunitiōnēs firmae (strong) sunt.

**opportūnus, a, um, adj.** seasonable, opportune, 9. Fr. *opportun*.

nihil illarē opportūnius acciderat.

**oppressus, a, um, 19. perf. part. pass.** of opprimō, *q.v.*

**op-primō. 3. -pressi, -pressum, v.a. 1** overwhelm, overpower, 19. Fr. *opprimer*.

timor Rōmānōs oppressit.

**oppugnātiō, ōnis, f.** an attack, assault, 3.

nostri Gallōrum oppugnātiōni resistunt.

**op-pugn-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, v.a. 1** attack, 4.

Caesar aggere vīncisque oppidum oppugnat.

**optimus, a, um, 26. superl.** of bonus, *q.v.*

**opus, eris, n.** work, art (as opp. to nātūra), 1; work, outwork (*milit.*) 16; work (ordinary), 17, 24; **opus est**, it is needful, useful, 16, 51.  
**quantō opere, rel.** how greatly, how much, 45.

**ōra, ae, f.** shore, coast, 15.

Britanniae ōrae periculōsae (*dangerous*) sunt.

**ōrātiō, ōnis, f.** speech, address, 6. Fr. *oraison*.

haec ōrātiōne militum animos confirmat.

**ordō, inis, m. 2** rank, 2; **prīmī ordinēs**, 43, *q.v.* Fr. *ordre*.

barbari impetum in nostrōs ordinēs faciunt.

**orior. 4. ortus, v. dep.** I rise (of a river), 2; of a shout, 6; of fear, 8; of the sun, 12; of descent, 22; of dawn, 26.

nonne ex Alpibus oritur Rhēnus?

**ōr-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, v.a. and n.** I beseech, ask, 31.

ōrant Caesarem nē sē necet.

**ortus, a, um, 22. perf. part.** of orior, *q.v.*

**ostend-ō. 3. -ī, -sum and -tum, v.a. 1** show, reveal, 14.

barbari sē ex silvis subitō ostendērunt.

**ōvum, ī, n.** an egg, 2. Fr. *œuf*.

in avis nidō (*nest*) tria ōva sunt.

## P

**P** = Publius, a Roman name, 11.

**pābul-or. 1. -ātus, v. dep.** I forage, 17.

trēs legiōnēs pābulatum missae sunt.

**pābulum, ī, n.** food, fodder, 48.

nulla pabuli cōpia nostris supererat.

**paene, adv.** almost, 16.

nōn solum illa legiō sed paene tōtus exercitus deperit.

**paenit-et. 2. -uit, v. impers.** it repents (*acc.* of person and *gen.* of thing), 24.

nonne tē consili mali paenituit?

**pāgus, ī, a** canton, 21.

Helvētīi multos pāgōs habēbant.

**palam, adv.** openly, publicly, 12.

nōn ex insidiis sed palam.

**palūs, ūdis, f.** a marsh, 27.

Rōmāni paludem transire cōnantur.

**par, paris, adj.** equal, 12.

turrēs paris magnitudinis aedificatae erant.

**parātus, a, um, 18. perf. part. pass.** of par-ō, ready, prepared, 18. Fr. *paré*.

parātus ad omnēs cāsūs (*emergencies*) sum.

**parc-ō. 3. pepercī, parsum, v.n. and a.** I spare, do not injure (*dat.*), 34.  
hostium aedificiis parcēbātur.

**pār-eō. 2. -uī, -itum, v.n.** I obey (*dat.*), 50.

puerī, magistrō pārēto!

**pariō. 3. peperī, paritum and partum, v.a.** I procure, win (*victōriam*), 51.

reliqui salutem sibi peperere.

**par-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I prepare, get ready, 9. Fr. *parer*.

turrēs testūdines-que parantur.

**pars, rtis, f.** a part, 2; direction, 6; some, 11; some . . . others, 12; season (*annī*), 12. Fr. *part*.

maxima pars militum in castra redeunt.

**parum, adv.** too little, 25 (qualifying another adv.).

equitēs parum celeriter auxilio reliquis vēnerunt.

**parvi, 58; gen. or loc. of value, r. pp.** 191, 192.

**parvulus, a, um, adj. dim.** very small, 27; (of age), 27.

proelium parvulum commissum est.

**passim, adv.** hither and thither, in every direction, 19.

barbari per agrōs passim sparsi (*scattered*) sunt.

**passus, ūs, m.** a pace, 12; mille passūs, 1000 paces, a Roman mile. multa milia passuum prōgrediuntur.

**passus, a, um, 31. perf. part. pass.** of paudō. 3. paudi, passum, out-stretched.

mulier passis manibus clāmābat.

**pat-eō. 2. uī, no supine, v.n.** I extend (of territory).

quōrum finēs longē patēbant?

**pater, tris, m.** a father; *pl.* forefathers, 37. Fr. *père*.

ea res patrū nostrōrum memoriā facta est.

**patior. 3. passus, v. dep.** I suffer, allow, 6; foll. by *inf.*

captivi supplicium grave patiuntur.

**patria, ae, f.** native land, 39. Fr. *patrie*.

quis patriam suam nōn amat?

**paucus, a, um, adj.** few, 6, 45.

pauci solum incolae in oppidō remanent.

**paulātim, adv.** gradually, little by little, 8.

nostri paulātim barbarōs fugam dant.

**paulisper, adv.** for a little while, 9. hic, puer, paulisper remanet!

**paulō, adv.** by a little, somewhat, 6, 16.

paulō minus hōris tribus redibō.

**paulum, adv.** a little, 16 (of time).

post paulum ē castris ēgressi sumus.

**pauper, eris, adj.** poor, 57. Fr. *pauc*.

nonne argentum pauperibus dare debemus?

**pax, pācis, f.** peace, 9. Fr. *paix*.

pax a Caesare cum barbaris facta est.

**pectus, oris, n.** breast, 34.

tribūnus pectore vulnus accipit.

**pecūnia, ae, f.** money, wealth, 24.

pecūniam comparatam servabō.

**pecus, oris, n.** cattle, 22.

pecora in agris sunt.

**pedes, itis, m.** a foot soldier, 32.

dux peditēs hortātur firmiter resistant.

**pedester, tris, tre, adj.** foot, 11. Fr. *pedestre*.

proelium pedestre committitur.

**peditātus, ūs, m.** foot-soldiers, infantry, 22.

peditātū coactō iter facit.

**pellis, is, f.** a skin, 15; *pl.* tent (sub pellibus, under 'canvas'), 2. Fr. *peau*.

nonne hieme militēs sub pellibus erunt?

**pellō. 3. pepulī, pulsum, v.a.** I drive back, rout (*milit.*), 14.

barbari omnēs a Galliae finibus pellentur.

**per**, *prep.* **per**, *acc.* through, 2; by means of, 4; **per vim**, by force, 31; **per mē**, as far as I am concerned, 24.

**per quōrum finēs** Rhēnus fertur?

**per-eō**, -ire, -ī (-ivī), -itum, *v.n.* I perish, die, 14. Fr. *périr*.  
illō diō maior pars militum periit.

**per-facilis**, *e*, *adj.* very easy, 38.  
num disciplina cognitu perfacilis est?

**per-ferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *v.a.* I carry (litterās), 46; announce (famam), 47; submit to, endure, 44.  
tantae iniuriæ perferri nōn possunt.

**per-ficiō**, 3. -fēcī, -fectum, *v.a.* I accomplish, complete, 14. 49.  
noctū opus a militibus perficitur.

**perfidia**, *ae, f.* treachery, 19.  
hostēs perfidiāsi nostrōs circumvenēre.

**per-fringō**, 3. -frēgī, -fractum, *v.a.* I break through, 13.  
barbari munitionēs perfringere nō poterant.

**per-fugiō**, 3. -fūgī, *no supine, v.n.* I desert, 52.  
ex hostibus multi ad Rōmānōs perfūgērunt.

**periculum**, *i, n.* danger, 1. Fr. *péril*.  
Rōmāni periculum non recūsant.

**pēritus**, *a, um, adj.* skilful, experienced (foll. by *gen.*), 24.  
multārum rerum peritus sum.

**perlectus**, *a, um, 56. perf. part. pass.* of per-legō 3. -lēgī, -lectum, read through.  
litterae ducē perlectae sunt.

**per-maneō**, 2. -mansī, -mansum, *v.n.* I continue, persist, 21.  
hostēs in officio permanēre nōlunt.

**per-mittō**, 3. -misī, -missum, *v.a.* I allow, permit, 14. Fr. *permettre*.  
Caesar captivis discēdere permisit.

**permōtus**, *a, um, 8. perf. part. pass.* of per-moveo. 2. -movī, -mōtum, influenced, excited.

nostrī, spē victōriæ permōtī, instant.

**perniciēs**, *ei, f.* ruin, disaster, 15.  
quāto eum dolōre perniciem illam vidēbam!

**perpaucus**, *a, um, adj.* very few, 19.  
perpauca ā nostris vulnera accepta erant.

**perpetuus**, *a, um, adj.* unbroken, continuous. in **perpetuum** (*sc. tempus*), for all time, 36. Fr. *perpetuel*.

**per-rumpō**, 3. -rūpī, -ruptum, *v.n.* I break or rush through.  
per hostium ordinēs **per-rumpēmus**.

**per-scribō**, 3. -scripsī, -scriptum, *v.a.* I write a full account of, 55.  
perscribit in litteris hostēs ab se discessisse.

**per-sequor**, 3. secūtus, *v. dep.* I follow up, 7; take vengeance on, 37.  
fugientes ad flumen persequimur.

**persevērō**, 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v.n.* and *a.* I persist (foll. by *inf.*), 37.  
nē id facere persevēraveris!

**per-solvō**, 3. -solvi, -solutum, *v.a.* I pay, suffer (poenas), 52.

**per-spiciō**, 3. -spexi, -spectum, *v.a.* I see through, 43.

silva nōn modo nōn intrari (entered) sed ne perspici quidem poterat.

**per-suādeō**, 2. suāsī, -suāsum, *v.a.* I persuade (*dat.*) 4; *impers.* 25. Fr. *persuader*.

dux servō praemiō persuādet.

**per-terrō**, 2. -uī, -itum, *v.a.* I frighten thoroughly, 6, 41.  
puer ferā perterrētur.

**perterritus**, *a, um, 6. perf. part. pass.* of per-terreo, *q.v.*

**per-tinēō**, 2. -uī, *no supine. v.n.* I reach, extend, 12.

Belgae ad inferiōrem partem fluminis Rhēni pertinent,

**per-turb-ō.** 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v.a.* I throw into confusion, 2.  
ordines nostri nōn perturbantur.

**per-veni-ō.** 4. -vēnī, -ventum, *v.n.* I come to, reach, 9; *impers.* 25.  
Fr. *parvenir*.

Germani in finēs Eburōnum per  
venerunt.

**pes, pedis, m.** a foot, 16. Fr. *pie*.  
quot pedēs tibi sunt?

**pet-ō.** 3. -ivī (-it), -itum, *v.a.* I attack,  
4; ask, 7; sue for, 9; make for, 11;  
seek, look for, 16.

barbari nostrōs saxīs sagittisque  
petēbant.

légātī pācem ā Caesare petunt.

**phalanx, ngis, f.** a battle formation  
of the Gauls and Germans, forming  
a parallelogram, 13, 29.

Helvētīi, phalanxē factā, instā-  
bant.

**pilum, ī, n.** a javelin, 13.  
primō nōstri pila cōicieunt.

**pilus, ī, m.** regularly joined with  
primus, *v.* Less, 43.

**piscis, is, m.** a fish, 2. Fr. *poisson*.  
piscēs in mari natant (*swim*).

**pix, picis, f.** pitch, 16.  
hostes turres nostrās pice in-  
cendunt.

**plānus, a, um, adj.** flat, 42.  
dux nāvēs in litore plāno con-  
stituit.

**plēnus, a, um, adj.** full, 12 (*gen.* and  
*abl.*). Fr. *plein*.  
quarum rerum domus tua plena  
est?

**plērique, raeque, raeque, adj.** very  
many, most, 11.

plērique Belgae contrā Caesarem  
coniūrāverant.

**plērumque, adv.** for the most part,  
15.

**plumbum, ī, n.** lead: **plumbum**  
album, tin, 4. Fr. *plomb*.  
in quibus Britanniae partibus  
plumbum album invenitur?

**plūrimum, plūrimus, v.** plūs.

**plūs, ūris, (compar. of multus), more;**  
*pl.* several, 2, 14; as *adv.* with posse;  
54 (*nom.* and *acc. pl.* plūrēs, plūra;  
*gen.* plūrium). Fr. *plus*.

**plūrimus, a, um, (superl. of multus)**  
very many, most, 24, 38.

**plūrimum, adv.** very much, ex-  
ceedingly; with valēre, 30; with  
posse, 39.

**poena, ae, f.** a penalty, 52. Fr. *peine*.  
barbari poenis gravibus adfecti  
sunt.

**polliceor.** 2. **pollicitus, v. dep.** I pro-  
mise, 5 (takes the *fut. tense* of the  
*infin.*).  
nonne pecūniam mihi pollicēris?

**pondus, eris, n.** weight, 27.  
magnum argenti pondus in hos-  
tium castris repertum est.

**pōnō.** 3. **posuī, positum, v.a.** I pitch  
(castra), 9; put, 11, 46; lay down,  
37.  
dux castra iniquo locō pōnit.

**pons, ntis, m.** a bridge, 19. Fr. *pont*.  
in eō flumine pons erat.

**poposci.** 26. *perf. indic. act.* of poscō,  
*q.v.*

**popul-or.** 1. -ātus, *v. dep.* I lay waste,  
ravage, 41.  
Rōmāni Remorum agrōs populati  
erant.

**populus, ī, m.** a people, 2. Fr.  
*peuple*.  
senatus populusque Rōmānus  
(S. P. Q. R.)

**porta, ae, f.** a gate, 15. Fr. *porte*.  
subitō ex omnibus castrorum  
portis eruptiō fuit.

**port-ō.** 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v.a.* I carry, 28.  
Fr. *porter*.  
militēs frumentum ad castra  
portant.

**portus, ūs, m.** a harbour, 1. Fr.  
*port*.  
Ostia Rōmae portus erat.

**poscō.** 3. **poposci**, no supine, *v.a.*  
I demand, 16; with two accs.?  
dux hostēs légatos poscet.

**positus, a, um, perf. part. pass.** of *pōnō*; *in. n. pl.* 'things placed,' 24.

• **possum, posse, potui, v.n. irreg.** I am able, can, 4; **plūs posse**, to have more power, influence, 54; **plūrimum posse**, to have very great power, 39.

**post, prep. gov. acc.** after, 3; behind, 19.

barbari post montem se occultaverant.

*adv.* afterwards, 11, 26.

**postea, adv.** after this or that, 26.  
*paulo postea* pax facta est.

**posterus, a, um, adj.** following, next, 4.

posterā nocte dux cōpiās eduxit.

**postquam, conj.** after, when, 12.  
*eō postquam* Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit.

**postrēmō, adv.** at last, finally, 45.

postrēmō etiam virēs nostris deerant.

**postridiē, adv.** on the following day, 48.

postridiē proficisci constituit.

**postulō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, v.a.** I demand, request, 8.

quod a mē postulās dare nō possum.

**potentia, ae, f.** power, authority, 45.

eius hominis potentia summa erat.

**potestās, ātis, f.** ability, opportunity, 17, 19.

eius-ne rei faciendae potestatem habēs?

**potiōr. 4. potitus, v. dep.** I get possession of, 5 (*abl. or gen.*).

imperiō tōtius Galliae potitur.

**prae, prep. gov. abl.** in comparison with, 45.

dives prae ceteris est.

**prae-caveō. 2. -cāvī, -cautum, v.n.** I take heed, use precaution, 25.

tibi satis praecavendum nō erat.

**prae-cēdō. 3. -cessī, -cessum, v.a.** I excel, 56. Fr. *précéder*.

Aulus Tiberium disciplinā iam praecedet.

**praeceptum, i, n.** an order, injunction, 33. Fr. *précepte*.

hōc praeceptō dato abiit.

**prae-cipiō. 3. -cēpi, -ceptum, v.a.** I instruct, order, 33, 34.

dux suōs praecipit proelium renovat.

**praecipitō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** and *n.* I throw headlong, 19. Fr. *precipiter*.

incolae se dē murō praecipitabant.

**praed-or. 1. ātus, v. dep.** I make booty, plunder, 17.

nonnulli praedatum missi erant.

**praefectus, i, m.** officer, 8. Fr. *préfet*.

praefecti suōs hortabantur.

**prae-ficiō. 3. -fēcī, -fectum, v.a.** I place over, at the head (*acc. and dat.*), 27.

Caesar classi Q. Atrium praefecit.

**prae-mittō. 3. -misi, -missum, v.a.** I send forward, 17.

legiōnēs in Hispaniam praemissae sunt.

**praemium, mi, n.** a reward, 4.

post victōriam dux suis praemia dabit.

**praesentia, ae, f.** (animi), presence of mind, 51. Fr. *présence*.

nostrī magnam animi praesentiam praestiterunt.

**praesertim, adv.** especially, 45.

tantae praesertim multitudinis frumentum deficiebat.

**praesidium, idi, n.** protection, garri-son, 4; *predic. dat.* 23.

praesidium in oppidō collocatur.

**prae-stō. 1. -stiti, -stātum** and *-stitum, v.n.* and *a.* I exhibit, manifest, 57.

nostrī magnam virtutem praestitere.

- praestat**, *impers.* it is better, preferable, 25.
- prae-sum**, -esse, -fui, *v.n.* I am over, in command (*dat.*), 41.  
aliquem mittit qui urbi praesit.
- praeter**, *prep. gov. acc.* except, 15.  
nihil commeatus erat praeter quod in castris habebant.
- premō**, 3. **pressi**, **pressum**, *v.a.* I press hard, oppress, 22.  
hostes nostros premere coeperant.
- prendō** (**prehendō**), 3. **prendi**, **prensum**, *v.a.* I grasp, take, 50. Fr. *prendre*.  
facere non potui quin eius dextram prenderem.
- pridie**, *adv.* on the day before, 47.
- primipilus**, 1. *m. v.* [less, 43 (*Lectio*).
- primus**, *a, um, adj.*, (*superl. of prae*), first, 11; **primō**, *adv.* at first, 16;  
**primum**, *adv.* at first, first, 16;  
**quam primum**, as soon as possible, 40.
- princeps**, *ipis, adj.* and *comm. noun.* first (in time or order), chief, leader, 6, 22, 52.  
Caesar hostium principes ad se vocavit.
- pristinus**, *a, um, adj.* former, early, 19.  
res in pristinum statum (*state*) redierunt.
- priusquam**, *conj.* before, 15; **prius** . . . **quam**, 34.  
priusquam tibi respondeo, hoc mihi dic!
- privatus**, *a, um, adj.* private, apart from the state, 15. Fr. *privé*.  
in privatis meis rebus versor.
- pro**, *prep. gov. abl.* in front of, 16; in proportion to, 29; in return for, 33; instead of, 43; in accordance with, 48; as (*pro* hoste habere), 51.
- probō**, 1. **-avi**, **-atum**, *v.a.* I try, test, 19; approve, 52. Fr. *prouver*.  
virtus in bello probari potest.
- prō-cēdō**, 3. **-cessi**, **-cessum**, *v.n.* I advance, 18.  
eo die milia passuum xv processit.
- proconsul**, *is, m.* a proconsul, 14.  
proconsules plerumque provinciis praerant.
- procul**, *adv.* from a distance, 4.  
non procul a mari castra ponit.
- pro-currō**, 3. **-cucurri** and **-curri**, **-cursum**, *v.n.* I rush forward, 49.  
barbari e silvis procurrunt.
- prō-dūcō**, 3. **-duxi**, **-ductum**, *v.a.* I lead forward, out, 57. Fr. *pro-duire*.  
copiis pro castris productis.
- proeli-or**, 1. **-atus**, *v. dep.* I fight, 5.  
legiones iniquo loco proeliantur.
- proelium**, *-li, m.* a battle, skirmish, 1.  
proelium a Romanis committitur.
- profectiō**, *ōnis, f.* a departure, 55  
quarta vigilia profectio fiet.
- profectus**, *a, m, 9. perf. part. of proficiscor*, *q.v.*
- proficiscor**, 3. **profectus**, *v. dep.* I set out, start,  
Caesar in Illyricum proficiscitur.
- pro-fiteor**, 2. **-fessus**, *v. dep.* I propose, offer, 36. Fr. *professer*.  
se postero die venturum professus est.
- pro-fugiō**, 3. **-fūgi**, no supine, *v.n.* I flee, escape, 14.  
noctu oppidani ex oppido profugunt.
- prō-gredior**, 3. **-gressus**, *v. dep.* I advance, 10.  
dux longius progredi noluit.
- pro-hib-eō**, 2. **-ui**, **-itum**, *v.a.* I hinder, debar, stop, 6, 7, 31; protect, 49.  
Helvetii Germanos finibus suis prohibent.
- prō-mineō**, 2. **-minui**, no supine, *v.n.* I bend forward, 34.  
mulier de muro prominēbat.

**prō-moveō.** 2. -mōvī, -mōtum, *v.a.* I move forward, 45.

aggō in urbem prōmovēbātur.

**prōmunturiūm.** *rī. n.* a headland,

• promontory, 43. Fr. *promontoire*.  
oppidū in prōmunturiō positus est.

**prō-nuntiō.** 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v.n.* and *a.* I announce, proclaim, 22. Fr. *prononcer*.

• ducis consiliū palam prō-nuntiātum est.

**prope.** *prep. gov. acc.* near, 41.

flūmen prope castra nostra erat.

*adv.* almost, 36.

**prō-pellō.** 3. -pulī, -pulsum, *v.a.* I drive before, defeat, 46.

• barbarī nostrōs ā sinistrō cornū prōpellēbant.

**propius** (*compar.* of *prope*), *prep. gov. acc.* nearer, 3; *adv.* nearer, 4.

**prō-pōnō.** 3. -posuī, -positum, *v.a.* I offer (*praemium*), 33; intend, purpose, 34. Fr. *proposer*.

Caesar militibus frumentum praemium prōponit.

**prō-pugnō.** 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v.n.* I make sorties, 28.

nostris studium prōpugnandi erat.

**propter.** *prep. gov. acc.* on account of, owing to, 3.

propter tempestatēs milites exire nō poterant.

**propterea**(quod), *adv.* on that account, 4, 46.

**prōra,** *ae. f.* the prow (of a ship), 44. Fr. *proue*.

quāles erant Venetōrum nāvium prōrae?

**prō-spiciō.** 3. -spexī, -spectum, *v.n.* I provide for, take care of, 25.

consulite vōbis, prospicite patriae!

**prō-tegō.** 3. -texī, -tectum, *v.a.* I cover, protect, 4. Fr. *protéger*.

comitem scūtō prōtexit.

**prōtinus,** *adv.* forthwith, 41.

ex fugā prōtinus auxilia disces-sērunt.

**prōvectus,** *a, um.* 26. *perf. part. pass.* of *prō-vehō*. 3. -vexī, -vectum, carried forward.

nāvēs in altum prōvectae sunt.

**prō-vidē.** 2. -vidī, -visum, *v.a.* I see to, 14. Fr. *pourvoir*.

frumentō exercitū prōvisō iter fecit.

**prōvincia,** *ae. f.* a province, 9. Fr. *province*.

senātus Caesarem prōvinciae praeficiet.

**proximus,** *a, um, adj.* (*superl.* of *prope*), nearest, 8; next (*diēs*), 47;

**proximē,** *adv.* shortly before or after, last, 11.

**publicus,** *a, um, adj.* public, 55. Fr. *public*.

rēbus publicis interest.

**puer, erī,** *m. a* child, 51; *pl.* children, 19.

māter puerum laudat et amat.

**pugna,** *ae. f.* a battle, 9.

pugna usque ad mediam noctem facta est.

**pugnō.** 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v.n.* I fight, 7; *impers. pass.* pugnātur, pugnatum est, etc.

pugnātur unō tempore omnibus locis.

**pulsus,** *a, um.* 14, 22. *perf. part. pass.* of *pellō*, *q.v.*

**pulvis, eris,** *m.* dust, cloud of dust, 36.

speculātōrēs magnum pulverem animadvertunt.

**pūn-iō.** 4. -ivī (-iī), -itum, *v.a.* I punish, 4. Fr. *punir*.

dux ignāvōs (*cowardly*) milites pūniēt.

**puppis, is, f.** the stern (of a ship), 44. Fr. *poupe*.

nāvium puppēs firmās (*strong*) esse oportet.

**putō.** 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v.a.* I think, consider, 25.

Caesar proficiscendum sibi nōn putat.



**Q** = Quintus, a Roman name, 28.

**quā**, *adv.* where, 26.

dux in eum locum progreditur,  
quā frumenti copiam } se cog-  
novit.

**quadringenti**, *ae, a, adj.* four hundred, 54.

ea silva quadringenta milia pas-  
sum patebat.

**quaerō. 3. quaesivi (-siv), quaesitum.**  
*v.a.* I look for, ask, 20.

Caesar ab captivis quaesivit.

**quālis, e, adj.** what like? 1.

quālibus mēris mūnītur  
oppidum?

**quam**, *adv.* than (after a *compara-  
tive*), 6; after *idem*, as, 24; wit  
*superl.* of *adjs.* and *advbs.*, as  
... possible, 33, 52.

**quamobrem**, *adv.* why? (*lit.* on  
account of what thing?), 14; in  
Indirect Questions, 44.

quamobrem nostri perterriti  
sunt?

**quamquam**, *conj.* although (*indic.*),  
54.

milites, quamquam fessi erant,  
tamen fortiter resistebant.

**quamvis**, *adv.* (qualifying an *adj.*) as  
much as you will, ever so, 21.

fortes, quamvis pauci, a pugnā  
nōn fugient.

*conj.* although (*subj.*), 54.

quamvis sis sapiens, id stultum  
(foolish) fecisti.

**quandō**, *indef. adv.* (after *si*) at any  
time, 49.

si quandō male feceris, puniēris.

**quantus, -a, -um, adj.** how great,  
either *interrog.* or *rel.* 33, 44, 45;  
*neut. sing. foll. by gen. of noun*,  
47; preceded by **tantus**, as great  
... as, 27.

**quantō opere**, how greatly, how  
much, 45.

**quantō ... tantō**, by how much ...  
by so much, the ... the, 27, 52.

quantō diūtius abes, tantō magis  
tē cupiō.

**quārē**, *adv.* why? 6; *rel.* 42.

quārē id quod iussisti nōn fecisti?

**quartus, -a, -um, adj.** fourth, 6. Fr.  
*quart.*

milium quarta pars occisa est.

**quattuor**, *num. adj.* four, 1. Fr.  
*quatre.*

nonne equō quattuor pedēs sunt?

**-que**, *conj.* and, 1.

tēla lapides-que cōiciuntur.

**quemadmodum**, *adv.* in what  
manner, how; *rel.* 42, v. p. 177.

**queror. 3. questus, v. dep.** I bewail,  
lament, 8.

cūr fatum frustrā quereris?

**questum**, 46, *supine* of *queror, q.v.*

**qui, quae, quod**, *rel. pron.* who,  
which, 1; (after *idem*) as, 24; **quod**,  
a thing which, 43.

ei, qui rectē faciunt, laudantur.

**quia**, *conj.* because, 16.

urbs, quia bene mūnita erat, nōn  
expugnata est.

**quicumque, quaecumque, quod-  
cumque**, *pron. rel.* whoever, what-  
ever, 16. Fr. *quiconque*.

quaecumque a mē petēs, nōn  
impetrabis.

**quid**, *neut. sing.* of *quis*, *quid, q.v.*  
why? wherefore? 48.

**quidam, quaedam, quoddam** and  
**quiddam**, *pron. indef.* a certain, a  
certain one, 4.

accurrit quidam nōtus mihi  
nōmine tantum (*merely*).

**quidem**, *adv.* indeed, 49; also, 51.

**nē ... quidem**, not even, 19, 51.

**quies, ētis, f.** rest, repose, quiet, 47.  
Fr. *quiesce*.

nostri ex diutino labore quiescēt sē-  
dant.

**quiētus, a, um, adj.** quiet, peaceful,  
27.

animō ne quiēto es?

**quīn**, *conj.* who not, but, that, etc.  
*v. Less.* 39.

nōn recūsō quīn tibi succurram.

**quindecim**, *num. adj.* fifteen, 25.  
Fr. *quinze*.

**quingentī, ae, a, adj.** five hundred, 12.

Rōmānī ex barbaris quingentōs interfecerūt.

**quinque, num. adj.** five, 8. Fr. *cinq.*

**quintus, a, um, adj.** fifth, 12. Fr. *quint.*

quintā diēi hōra.

**quis, quid, pron. interrog.** who? which? what? 1; **quī, quae, quod** is used adjectivally, 14. Fr. *qui?* ā quibus dēfenditur urbs?

*pron. indef.* any one, any, 15; after **pē, 32.**

**quisquam, quaequam, quicquam** or **quidquam, pron. indef.** any one, anything, any, 15.

neque ex ordinibus dēcessit quisquam.

**quisque, quaeque, quodque** and **quicque, pron. indef.** each, everybody, everything, 16; with *superl.* 16, 20; as *adj.* 49.

suam quisque patriam maximē amant.

**quō, adv.** whither? 6; *rel.* 12.

quō fugiunt hostes?

used instead of **ut** in final clauses containing a comparative 42, *q.v.*

**quoad, adv.** as long as, 11; until, 48.

quoad potestis, sustinēte!

**quod, conj.** because, 7; namely that, 28.

nāvēs, quod ventō tenēbantur, ad portum sērō (*late*) veniunt.

**quōminus, conj.** that not, from (after verbs of hindering, preventing, etc.), 39 *q.v.*

num tē prohibui quōminus id lacerēs?

**quōmodo, adv.** how? (*lit.* in what way?), 1.

quōmodo militum animi confirmantur?

**quoniam, conj.** seeing that, because, 4.

quoniam nulla spēs salūtis erat, incolae sē dēdiderunt.

**quoque, conj.** also, too, 3.

nōn solum peditēs, sed equitēs quoque.

**quot, adj. pl. indecl.** how many? 14.

quot diēs annō sunt?

**quotiens, adv.** as often as, 49.

quotiens nostrī irrupērunt, ex hostibus multi cadunt.

**quotus, a, um, adj.** which, what (in number, order, etc.), 16.

quota pars militum incolumis rediit?

## R

**rapiditās, ātis, f.** swiftness, 19. Fr. *rapidité.*

barbari flūminis rapiditate oppressi sunt.

**rapio, 3. rapui, raptum, v.a.** I carry off, plunder, 4.

nostrī multa pecora rapuerunt.

**ratio, ōnis, f.** theory (as opp. to **usus**, practice), 10; plan (pugnae), 41; reason, 51. Fr. *raison.*

ratio equestris proeli haec erat.

**recens, ntis, adj.** fresh, recent, 45. Fr. *récent.*

equitatus noster recentī proeliō elatus erat.

**receptus, ūs, m.** a retreat, retiring; in phrase, **receptui canere**, to give the signal for retreat, 23, 34.

**recessus, ūs, m.** a retreat, 51.

nostrī recessum ad auxilia nōn habebant.

**re-cipio, 3. -cēpi, -ceptum, v.a.** with reflexive *pron.* I retreat, 15. Fr. *recueillir.*

Britannī sē in silvās ad suōs recēpere.

**re-citō, 1. -āvi, ātum, v.a.** I read out (in public), 4. Fr. *reciter.* quid Cicerō recitat?

**rectē, adv.** right, 57.

quī rectē faciunt laudantur!

**rectus, a, um, adj.** (opp. to **obliquus**) direct, 36.

hanc orātiōnem rectam in obliquam vertite!

**re-cūsō.** 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I refuse, 19. Fr. *récuser*.

nōlite populī Rōmānī amicitiam recusāre!

**red-dō.** 3. -didī, -ditum, *v.g.* I give up, surrender, 32; translat<sup>9</sup>, 1. Fr. *rendre*.

dux captivōs reddere recūsavit.

**red-eō.** -ire, -ii, -itum, *v.n.* I return, 17.

unde redis?

**red-igō.** 3. -ēgī, -actum, *v.a.* I reduce, bring, 36.

Caesar Aeduōs in servitūtem redēgit.

**re-dūcō.** 3. -duxī, -ductum, *v.a.* I lead back, 41. Fr. *réduire*.

dux suōs intrā munitiōnēs re-duxit.

**re-ferō.** -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *v.a.* I carry back, 33.

frumentum omne ad sē referri iubet.

**re-ficiō.** 3. -fēcī, -fectum, *v.a.* I repair (nāvem), 26; with *reflexive pron.* I refresh, restore myself, 11. Fr. *refaire*.

exercitus sē ex pugnā refecit.

**refractus, a, um,** 15. *perf. part. pass.* of re-fringō. 3. -frēgī, -fractum, broken up, burst.

nostrī oppidi portas refringunt.

**regiō, ōnis, f.** a district, 4. Fr. *région*.

multae regiōnēs a Rōmānis vastantur.

**regnum, ī, n.** crown, kingdom, 1, 36. Fr. *régne*.

is homō regnum occupāverat.

**rē-iciō.** 3. -iēcī, -iectum, *v.a.* I throw back, 41. Fr. *rejeter*.

tellis in hostēs reiectis.

**re-languescō.** 3. -languī, no supine *v. incept. n.* I grow languid, become enfeebled, 12.

quibus rēbus relanguescunt animi?

**relictus, a, um,** 12. *perf. part. pass.* of relinquo, *q.v.*

**re-linquo.** 3. -liqui, -lictum, *v.a.* I leave, 3; abandon, raise (obsidiōnem), 56.

quot cohōrtēs in castris relinquantur?

**reliquus, a, um, adj.** remaining; other, 16; *pl. reliquī*, the remainder, rest, 8.

oppida, vicōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt.

**re-maneō.** 2. -mansī, no supine, *v.n.* I stay behind, remain, 9.

domi propter morbum remansit.

**re-miniscor.** 3. no *perf. part.*, *v. dep.* I remember (*gen.*), 32.

quārum rerū Helvētīi Caesarem monent reminiscātur?

**re-mittō.** 3. -misi, -misum, *v.a.* I send back, 32; resign, give up, 51. Fr. *remettre*.

légātum in hiberna cum legiōe remisit.

**re-mollescō.** 3. no *perf.* or supine, *v. incept. n.* I become soft, enervated, 12.

sōle remollescit glaciēs (*ice*).

**re-moveō.** 2. -mōvi, -mōtum, *v.a.* I remove, 13. Fr. *remuer*.

castra sex milia ab oppidō remōvit.

**rēmus, ī, m.** oar, 26. Fr. *rame*.

nāvis rēmis incitātur.

**re-nov-ō.** 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I renew, restore, 9.

Rōmāni, ducis verbis incitātī, proclium renovābunt.

**re-nunti-ō.** 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I bring back word, report, 22.

explōrātōr sē hostiūm cōpiās conspexisse renuntiāt.

**re-pellō.** 3. -ppuli, -pulsū, *v.a.* I drive back, expulse, 14. Fr. *repousser*.

nostrī, acriter in cōs impetū factō, hostēs reppulērunt.

**repentinus, a, um, adj.** sudden, unexpected, 34.

repentina Gallōrum coniūratiō orta est,

**re-periō.** 4. -pperi, -pertum, *v.a.* I find oft, discover, 22.

Caesar auxilia missa esse reperit.

**re-poscō.** 3. no perf. or supine, *v.a.* I ask for, require, 51.

eius rei quae causa sit reposeō.

**repulsus, a, um.** 28. *perf. part. pass.* of repellō, *q.v.*

**rēs, rei, f.** a thing, matter, business, etc., 1; way, means, 18.

his de rebus consilium capiam.

**rēs publica** or **republica, f.** the state, civil affairs, 29.

**re-sistō.** 3. -stiti, no supine, *v.n.* I stand my ground, resist (*dat.*), 3, 19.

legiones hostibus resistebant.

**re-spiciō.** 3. -spexi, -spectum, *v.n.* and *a.* I look behind, about, 51.

quamquam res in periculo erat, nemo respiciebat.

**re-spondeō.** 2. -spondi, -sponsum, *v.a.* I answer (*dat.*), 25. Fr. *répondre*.

cūr mihi nōn respondes?

**responsum, i, n.** an answer, 19. Fr. *réponse*.

• nullō ab nostris datō responso.

**re-tineō.** 2. -tinui, -tentum, *v.a.* I keep back, detain, 19; hold fast (memoriam), 45; maintain (virtutem), 56. Fr. *retenir*.

quattuor dies in portū retenti sunt.

**re-vertor.** 3. -versus, *v.n.* I return, 16. (The perf. forms, with the exception of the part. *reversus*, are from the Act. root, *e.g.* **reverti**.)

**reverterō, reverteram**, etc.) posterō die legati ad eum revertērent.

**re-vinciō.** 4. -vinxi, -vinctum, I bind, fasten, 44.

ancora firmiter revincitur.

**re-vinctus, a, um,** 44. *perf. part. pass.* of re-vinciō, *q.v.*

**re-vocō.** 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I call off, recall, 18.

Caesar legiones equitatumque revocat.

**Rhēnus, i, m.** the Rhine, 2. Fr. *Rhin*.

ubi est Rhēnus?

**Rhodanus, i, m.** the Rhone, 36. Fr. *Rhône*.

Rhodanus et Rhenus ex Lepontinis oriuntur,

**ripa, ae, f.** a bank, 25. Fr. *rive*.

postridiē ad ripas fluminis perventum est.

**rogō.** 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I ask (a question), 31; request, 16. quid hoc me rogās?

**Rōmānus, a, um, adj.** Roman; *pl.* **Rōmāni, ōrum, m.** the Romans, 1. Fr. *romain*.

num scūtum telum Romanum erat?

**rostrum, i, n.** the beak (of a ship), 44, 50.

hostes navibus Rōmānis rostris nocere cōantur.

**rursus, adv.** again, 28.

amicō rursus circumventō subsidium fert.

## S

**saepe, adv.** often, 12; *compar.* -ius; *superl.* -issimē, 43.

saepe et multum hoc mecum cōgitavi.

**sagittārius, āri, m.** an archer, 22.

Caesar sagittarios progredi iussit.

**sagulum, i, n.** a small military cloak, 49.

imperator sagulum purpureum (purple) portat.

**salūs, ūtis, f.** safety, 3. Fr. *salut*. barbari salutem fugā pariunt.

**sanctus, a, um, adj.** sacred, inviolable, 36. Fr. *saint*.

Germāni hospitēs sanctōs habebant.

**sapiens, ntis, adj.** wise, 45.

sapientium verba magnò usui sunt.

**sarmentum, i, n.** brush wood, fascine, 1, (usually in *pl.*). Fr. *sarment*.

Römāni sarmentòrum cōpiam comparant.

**satis, adv.** sufficient, enough, 28; qualifying an *adj.* 34; foll. by *gen.* of noun, 42. Fr. *assez* (ad *satis*).

Caesar id praesidium satis esse arbitratus est.

with **faciō**, I give satisfaction (*dat.*) 42. Fr. *satisfaire*.

**saxum, i, n.** a stone, 4; rock, 41.

saxa dē muris ab incolis cōiunguntur.

**scālae, ārum, f. pl.** a scaling ladder, 51. Fr. *échelle*.

Caesar scālas ad oppugnatiōnem fieri iussit,

**scapha, ae, f.** a light boat, skiff, 7.

scapha militibus complētur.

**sciō. 4. scivī, scitum, v.a.** I know, 36. dux hostes adesse sciebat.

**scribō. 3. scripsi, scriptum, v.a.** I write, 4. Fr. *écrire*.

quālibet litteris epistolam scripsit?

**scūtum, i, n.** an oblong shield (made of wood and leather), 4. Fr. *cu.* miles scūtum sinistrā tenet.

**sē (sē), pron. reflexive**, himself, herself, itself, themselves, 1. Fr. *se*. barbarus sē gladiō defendit.

**sēcum**, with himself. etc. 28.

**secundum, prep. gov. acc.** along (of place); next to (in rank, value), 28. Römāni castra secundum mare habuerunt.

**secundus, a, um, adj.** favourable, propitious, 33; *superl.* 45. aliquot (*some*) secunda proelia facta sunt.

**sēcūrus, a, um, adj.** free from care, 46.

noctū puer sēcūrus dormit (*sleeps*).

**secūtūrus, a, um, 10. fut. part.** of sequor, *q.v.*

**sed, conj.** but, 4.

Titus sapiens, sed Lūcius sapiētiōr est.

**sēdecim, num. adj.** sixteen, 41. Fr. *seize*.

**seges, etis, f.** a cornfield, 8.

frūmentum in segete iam succēdētur.

**semper, adv.** always, 6.

castra semper vallō fossāque circumdabantur.

**senātus, ūs, m.** the senate (council of elders at Rome), 1. Fr. *senat*.

senātus auctoritās maxima erat.

**senex. senis, comm.** an old person, 15. senēs bonum consilium sapēdant.

**sententia, ae, f.** a way of thinking, sentiment, 39. Fr. *sentence*.

variae (*various*) sententiae ab utrisque dictae sunt.

**sentiō. 4. sensi, sensum, v.a.** I perceive, think, 52. Fr. *sentir*.

monet eos ut unum quānēs sentiant (*i.e.* to be unanimous).

**septem, num. adj.** seven, 36. Fr. *sept*.

**septentrionēs, um, m. pl.** the north. (*lit.* the seven stars near the north pole), 12.

omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit.

**septimus, a, um, adj.** seventh, 28. Fr. *septième*.

legiō septima in hibernis relicta est.

**septingenti, ae, a, num. adj.** seven hundred, 12.

**septuāgintā, num. adj.** seventy, 1.

**sequor. 3. secūtus, v. dep.** I follow, 6. Fr. *suivre*.

Helvētii cum omnibus suis carris sequuntur.

**servitūs, ūtis, f.** slavery, 21. Fr. *servitude*.

nēmō servitutem amat.

**serv-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I keep, retain, 7.

militēs perterriti ordinēs nōn servant.

**servus, ī, m.** a slave, servant, 52.

dives ille vir multōs servōs habet.

**sescenti, ae, a, num. adj.** six hundred, 43.

decem centuriis circiter sescenti militēs erant.

**sēsē, v. sē.**

**sex, num. adj.** six, 11. Fr. *six*.

**sexāgintā, num. adj.** sixty, 43. Fr. *soixante*.

**sextus, a, um, adj.** sixth, 58.

sextā circiter hōra profecti sunt.

**sī, conj.** if, 4; **sī quāndō**, if at any time, 49. Fr. *si*.

sī incolae resistent, urbs oppugnabitur.

**sic, adv.** thus, so, 1; as follows, 12.

sic vulneratus ab hostibus circumdatur.

**sicuti, adv.** as if, 51.

nostri, sicuti re perfecta, ē proelio exēdunt.

**signifer, ferī, m.** a standard-bearer, ensign, 9.

signifer comitēs suos cohortatur.

**signific-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I show, signify, 8. Fr. *signifier*.

quid militēs significābant?

**signum, ī, n.** standard (*milit.*). 7. . .

signal, 7; **signa subsequi**, to keep in order of battle. Fr. *signe*.

militēs ab signis discēdere nōn debent.

signum tubā datur.

**silva, ae, f.** a forest, wood, 11.

barbari in silvas perfrēgērunt.

**silvestris, e, adj.** wooded, 43.

nonne in locis silvestribus latent ferae?

**similis, e, adj.** like; (foll. usually by *gen.*, sometimes *dat.*), 6; *superl.* **-illimus**. Fr. *semblable*.

profectiō fugae simillima erat.

**simul, adv.** at the same time, also, 6. simul nuntiōs in omnes partes dimittit.

**simulācrum, ī, n.** effigy, statue, 24. cūq; apud Gallōs plūrima simulacra erant?

**sīn, conj.** but if, 37.

sīn autem resistere vellent, virtūti locus nōn relinquēbatur.

**sine, prep. gov. abl.** without, 15.

nostri nōn sine magnā victōriae spē instant.

**singulāris, e, adj.** one by one, alone, unparallelēd, remarkable, 16.

Fr. *singulier*.

aliquem singulārem conspexi.

**singuli, ae, a, distrib. num. adj.** one to each, 27.

singulis centuriis singuli centuriōnēs erant.

**sinister, tra, trum, adj.** left, 6;

**sinistra, ae, f.** the left hand, 13.

Fr. *sinistre*.

ūna legio in sinistrā parte aciei constitit.

**situs, ūs, m.** situation, 43. Fr. *sitē*.

misit qui castrōrum situm cognoscerent.

**sive . . . sive, conj.** whether . . . or 41.

res facilis est, sive manemus, sive proficiscimur.

**socius, ci, m.** an ally, 22.

Nervii sociōs ad se arcessunt.

**sōl, sōlis, m.** the sun, 12. Fr. *soleil*.

sōl ex oriente oritur.

**soleō. 2. solitus sum, v.n.** I am accustomed, 12.

quomodo castra mūniri solebant?

**sollertia, ae, f.** ingenuity, 16.

Gallōrum gens summae sollertiae est.

**sollicit-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I incite (to revolt), try to win over, 36.

lēgati ad sollicitandam civitatem missi sunt.

**solum, adv.** only 11. Fr. *seulement* nōn solum interdiū (*by day*) sed etiam noctū laborābant.

- solvō. 3. solvī, solūtum, v.a.** I set free, loose; **nāvem (ēs) solvō.** I set sail, 17; without **nāvem (ēs)**, 9. Caesar primā luce solvet.
- sonus, ī, m.** a sound, noise, 41. Fr. *son*.  
armōrum sonus auditur.
- spatium, tī, n.** space, distance, 2; interval, period (of time), 14. Fr. *espace*.  
nostri magnum spatium pauci diebus conficiunt.
- speciēs, ēī, f.** appearance, form, 45. Fr. *espèce*.  
barbarī, nāvium nostrārum speciē perterriti, fugiunt.
- spectō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.freq. a.** (of localities) to look, face, be situated, 12.  
Aquitania inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs spectat.
- speculātor, ōris, m.** a scout, spy, 22. speculātōres ducem dē hostium adventū certiorē faciunt.
- speculor. 1. -ātus, v.dep.** I spy out, explore, 17.  
nonnulli militum speculatum missi erant.
- spērō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I hope, expect, 22. Fr. *espérer*.  
Caesar se victoriā potiri posse spēravit.
- spēs, speī, f.** hope, 3; promise, 45. hōc proelium nostris militibus spem auxit.
- spoliō. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I rob, despoil, 43.  
Helvetiī provinciam nostram spoliaverant.
- statim, adv.** at once, immediately 36.  
quō factō legatī statim dē pace mittuntur.
- statiō, ōnis, f.** a post (*milit.*); in **statiōne**, on guard. Fr. *station*.  
tres cohortēs in statiōne erant.
- statuō. 3. statuī, statūtum, v.a.** I determine, 16; with gerund, 25; with gerundive, 28.  
dē tertiā vigiliā proficisci statuit.
- statūra, ae, f.** stature, 27. Fr. *stature*.  
Galli hominēs magnae statūrae erant.
- stipendium, dī, n.** tribute, 12. Caesar Ambiofigeni stipendiō liberāverat.
- strāmentum, ī, n.** straw, thatch, 51. quae strāmentis tecta erant?
- studeō. 2. studiū, no supine, v.a.** and *n.* I apply myself to (*dat.*), 27. Fr. *étudier*.  
alii disciplinae, alii agricultūrae student.
- studium, dī, n.** zeal, eagerness, 17. Fr. *étude*.  
nostri magnum studium praestābant.
- sub, prep. gov. acc.** towards, about (of time), 28; under, up to (after vb. of motion), 22. Fr. *sous*.  
sub sōlis occāsum naves solvit.  
*gov. abl.* under. 2: at foot of, 11; **sub sinistrā**, on the left hand, 26. Caesar sub monte considit.
- sub-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, v.n.** and *a.* I submit to, undergo, 18. Fr. *subir*.  
tantam contumeliā nōn subibo.
- subitus, a, um, adj.** sudden. unexpected, 19. Fr. *subit*.  
Gallorum consilia subita et repentina sunt.
- subitō, adv.** suddenly, unexpectedly, 6. Fr. *subitement*.
- sublātus, a, um, 9. perf. part. pass.** of tollō, *q.v.*, elated.  
hāc victoriā hostēs sublāti sunt.
- sub-mittō. 3. -misi, -missum, v.a.** I send off, despatch, 7.  
Caesar auxilium laborantibus submisit.
- sub-sequor. 3. -secutus, v.dep.** I follow up, 6.  
omnibus cōpiis barbarōs subsequemur.
- subsidium, idī, n.** assistance, reserves (*milit.*), 7, 22.  
nullum erat subsidium quod dux submittere poterat.

**suc-cendō**. 3. -cendī, -censum, *v.a.* I set on fire, 16.

hostēs pontem succenderant.

**suc-cido**. 3. -cidi, -cisum, *v.a.* I cut down, 4.

frumentum in agris iam succidetur.

**suc-currō**. 3. -curri, -cursum, *v.n.* I run to assist, (*dat.*), 1.

comiti vulneratō succurrit.

**sudis**, *is, f.* a -take, 47.

Nerviū multas sudēs comparant.

**sum**, *esse*, *fui*. *no.* *supine, v.n. irreg.* I am, 3.

Rhodanus Galliae flūmen est.

**summus**, *a, um, adj.* (*superl.* of *suprā*) very great, exceeding, chief, 8, 11, 16.

nostri summō timōre occupābantur.

**sūmō**. 3. *sumpsi*, *sumptum*, *v.a.* I inflict (*supplicium*), 39; take, 43.

de quibus *supplicium* *sumptum* est?

**sumptus**, *a, um*, 43. *perf. part. pass.* of *sūmō*, *q.v.*

**superior**, *us, adj.* (*compar.* of *suprā*) higher (*locus*), 11; victorious, 14; former, previous, 26, 31. *Fr. supérieur.*

hostēs omnia loca superiora occupāverant.

**super-ō**. 1. -āvi, -atum, *v.a.* and *n.* I overcome, vanquish, 8.

Caesar maximās natiōnēs superāvit.

**super-sum**, -esse, -fui, *v.n.* I am left, remain, 15.

ex eō proeliō circiter milia hominum cxxx superfuērunt.

**suppliciter**, *adv.* humbly, 9.

lēgati suppliciter pacem petunt.

**supplicium**, *icī, n.* punishment (usually of the death penalty), 3. *Fr. supplice.*

captivi ad *supplicium* dēduntur.

**sup-port-ō**. 1. -āvi, -atum, *v.a.* I convey, carry, 54. *Fr. supporter.* comēatū ex agris supportatō.

**suprā**, *adv.* before, previously, 43. ut *suprā* dēmonstrātum est.

**sus-cipiō**. 3. -cēpi, -ceptum, *v.a.* I undertake, 25.

id bellum sibi suscipiendum esse putavit.

**suspiciō**, *ōnis, f.* mistrust, suspicion, 31 (*pl.*); 39 (*sing.*). *Fr. soupçon.* quā rē Gallis augēbatur suspiciō.

**suspicio**. 1. -ātus, *v. dep.* I conjecture, suspect, 54.

hostes prius instābant quam quisquam eōs adesse suspicārētur.

**sustent-ō**. 1. -āvī, -atum, *v. freq. a.* I hold out, endure, 46.

nullā frumentī cōpia diū sustentari nōn potuit.

**sus-tineō**. 2. -tinui, -tentum, *v.a.* I withstand, 22. *Fr. soutenir.*

incolae oppugnationem diutius sustinere nōn poterant.

**suus**, *a, um, adj.* his, her, its, their, 13. Piso fratrem suum dēfendit.

sui, *ōrum, m. pl.* his, their men, 5; *sua, n. pl.* their belongings, 45.

## T

**tabernāculum**, *ī, n.* a tent, 8.

milites noctu in tabernaculis erunt.

**talentum**, *ī, n.* a talent (sum of money equivalent to about £240), 55. *Fr. talent.*

**tālis**, *e, adj.* such, such like, 38. *Fr. tel.*

talibus verbis eis persuādet.

**tam**, *adv.* as, so, qualifying an *adj.*, 43; an *adv.*, 46; foll. by *ut* (consecutive), 43.

tam subito eōrum impetus erat ut in fugam dāremur.

**tamen**, *adv.* nevertheless, however, 1. barbari virtutem praestant; frustra tamen resistunt.

**tametsi**, *conj.* although, 54.

quae tametsi intellegēbat, tamen expectandum statuit.



**tandem**, *adv.* at length, 16.

tandem fugientes defessi in castra redeunt.

**tantus**, *a, um, adj.* so great, 19;

**tantus** . . . **quantus**, as great . . . as, 27. Fr. *tant*.

tantum laborem subibamus.

**tanti**, *gen.* of price; for so much, 45.

**tantulus**, *a, um, adj. dim.* so little, so small, 27.

tantulis rebus studere non oportet.

**tard-**ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I hinder, impede, 16. Fr. *tarder*.

palus nostrōs tardabat.

**tectus**, *a, um, 51. perf. part. pass.* of tegō, *q.v.*

**tegō** 3. **texi**, **tectum**, *v.a.* I cover, 51. Fr. *toit* (tectum).

militis caput galea tegitur.

**telum**, *i, n.* a weapon (offensive), missile, 1.

pilum telum Romanum erat.

**temerē**, *adv.* (preceded by *non*) easily (*lit.* without design), 15; rashly, 19.

non temerē Britanniam adeunt.

**temeritas**, *ātis, f.* rashness, 57. Fr. *témérité*.

dux militum temeritatem reprehendit (*blames*).

**tempestās**, *ātis, f.* a storm, 2; weather, 9. Fr. *tempête*.

nāvēs propter tempestatem in portū continentur.

**tempus**, *oris, n.* time, 3; *pl.* 34. Fr. *temps*.

id tempus non idoneum erat.

**ten-**ēō. 2. -ui, -tum, *v.n.* and *a.* I detain, 1; control (*laerimās*), 8; hold, occupy (*monerem*), 22; keep (*cursum*), 26; hold fast, bind (*iureiurandō*), 26. Fr. *tenir*.

Sabinus castris sese tenēbat.

**tenuis**, *e, adj.* weak, delicate, 47. quis tenui valitudine erat?

**tergum**, *i, n.* the back, 19; **terga** **vertere**, to turn the back, *v.p.* flee, 46.

hostes post tergum relinquere non vult.

**terra**, *ae, f.* land, 12; soil, earth, 49. Fr. *terre*.

quae regio in terris nostri non plena laboris?

**terr-**ēō. 2. -ui, -itum, *v.a.* 1 frighten, 2.

omnes mortis metu terrentur.

**territ-**ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v. freq. a.* I terrify, 12.

dux barbaros supplicio territabat.

**terror**, *ōris, m.* dread, terror, 48. Fr. *terreur*.

equitibus imperat ut quam maximum hostibus terrorem inferant.

**tertius**, *a, um, adj.* third, 4.

Celtae tertiam Galliae partem incolēbant.

**testāmentum**, *i, n.* a will, 8. Fr. *testament*.

cum milites testamenta obsignabant?

**testimōnium**, *ni, n.* evidence, 57. Fr. *témoignage*.

testimoniō virtutis ab Cicerone datō.

**testūdō**, *inis, f.* a shelter, shed (*milit.*) formed of the shields of the soldiers held over their heads, 20. (*lit.* tortoise).

nostrī testudine factā muris appropinquant.

**tim-**ēō. 2. -ui, no supine, *v.a.* and *a.* I fear, am afraid, 14; with *ut* and *nē* *v.* Less. 54.

infantes saepe sine causā timent.

**timor**, *ōris, m.* fear, alarm, 8.

nostris timor subito incitur.

**toler-**ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I support, sustain, 55. Fr. *tolérer*.

omnium rerum inopia diutius tolerari non poterat.

**tollō. 3. sustulī, sublātum, v.a.** I raise, lift up (in *perf. part. pass.* elated, *v. sublātus*), take away, 13.

**tormentum, i, n.** an instrument of torture, rack, 11; an engine for hurling missiles, 41.

fēmina tormentō exercuiātur.

**torreō. 2. torruī, tostum, v.a.** I scorch, burn, 51.

• sōl terram aestāte torret.

**tot, num. adj. indecl.** so many, 9.  
tot civitātum coniuratiō.

**tōtus, a, um, adj.** the whole, all the.  
• entire, 3. Fr. *tout*.

incolae toto mūrō saxa in nostrōs cōiciunt.

• **trabs, trabis, f.** a beam, 1.

barbari trabēs mūitioni com parābant.

**trād-ō. 3. -idi, -itum, v.a.** I give up, surrender, 13; propound, teach, 24.  
Fr. *trahir*.

• Aedui obsidēs Caesari tradiderunt.

**trādūcō. 3. -dixī, -ductum, v.a.** I lead across, over, 11 (often with a *doul.* acc.).

Caesar exercitum flūmen transduxit.

**trāgula, ae, f.** a javelin (thrown by means of a strap to which it was attached), 4.

trāgula a Gallō cōicitur.

**trans. prep. gov. acc.** across, 17.

cōpiās trans Rhenum in Galliam duxerat.

**trans-eō, -ire, -ivi (-iī), -itum, v.n.** and *a.* I cross, go across, 7; *pass.* 36.

• Caesar in Britanniam transire cōstituit.

**trans-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, v.a.** I translate (*lit.* carry across), 21.  
lectiōnem ē linguā Latinā trans-ferēmus.

**trans-port-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I carry over, across, 28; with *tuo* accs. 32. Fr. *transporter*.

nāvēs ad exercitum trans-portandum parantur.

**trepid-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.n.** I hurry in alarm, am agitated, 12.

tū cūr trepidās? nullum periculum est.

**trēs, tria, num. adj.** three, 6. Fr. *trois*.

trium flūminum nōmina mihi dīc

**triārii, ōrum, m, pl.** a class of Roman soldiers who formed the third rank of the 'triplex acies,' 43, *q.v.*

**tribūnus, i, m.** an officer, tribune, 8. There were six to each legion, and they commanded in turn, each two months at a time. Fr. *tribun*.  
tribūni suōs cohortantur.

**tribuō. 3. tribuī, tribūtum, v.a.** (*with magnopere*), I set store by, make much of, 37.

nōlī tuae magnopere virtūti tribuere!

**tribus, 11. dat. or abl. pl.** of trēs, tria, *q.v.*

**triduum, i, n.** (*sc.* spatium), a three days' space, three days, 26; **triduō** (*sc.* spatiō), in three days, 26.  
triduō intermissō.

**trīni (terni), ae, a, distr. num. adj.** three each, three, 27.

**trīplex, icis, adj.** threefold, triple, 43.  
dux aciem trīplicem instruit.

**triquētrus, a, um, adj.** triangular, 12.

insulae forma (*shape*) triquētra est.

**triumphus, i, m.** a triumphal procession (in honour of a successful general), 26. Fr. *triomphe*.

triumphus Caesari decretus (*decreed*) est.

**tū, 2nd pers. pron.** thou, you, 2. Fr. *tu*.

tū puer, ille adulescens est.

**tuba, ae, f.** trumpet, 18.  
proeli committendī signum tubā dabitur.

**tueor. 2. tuitus, v. dep. a.** I defend, protect, 36.

dux suōs hortātur castra diligenter tueantur.

**tuli**, *perf. indic. act.* of ferō, *q.v.*

**tum**, *adv.* then, 2, 26.

magnae tum silvae in his locis erant.

**tumultus**, *ūs, m.* uproar, commotion, 34. Fr. *tumulte*.

magnō cum tumultū castris egressi sunt.

**tumulus**, *i, m.* a raised heap, mound, 49.

illie tumulus terrēnus (*of earth*) satis magnus erat.

**tunc**, *adv.* then, 48 (- **tum**, and demonstr. suffix -ce).

**turma**, *ae, f.* a squadron of horse, 49.

paucis turmis subsidio laboranti bus missis.

**turpis**, *e, adj.* disgraceful, unseemly, 29.

quid illō turpius esse potest?

**turpitudō**, *inis, f.* disgrace, 41.

quōmodo turpitudinem fugae delēbimus?

**turris**, *is, f.* (*acc.* -im and -em), a tower, 1 (*for defence of a camp or city walls*). Fr. *tour*.

hostes turrim eminus telis petunt.

**tūtus**, *a, um, adj.* safe, 26.

id praesidium tutum esse non arbitratus est.

**tūtō**, *adv.* safely; *compar.* -ius, 41; *super.* -issimē.

**tuus**, *a, um, adj.* thy, your, 28.

quid in dextrā tuā est?

## U

**ubi**, *adv.* where? 2; where (*rel.*), 37; when, 25; whenever, 49. Fr. *où*.

ubi Rōma est?

**ubiquē**, *adv.* wheresoever, everywhere, 51.

navium quod ubiquē erat in unum locum cōgit.

**ulciscor**, *3. ultus, v. dep.* I take vengeance on, 18, 41.

nōn solum publicas sed etiam privatas iniurias ultus est.

**ullus**, *a, um, adj.* any (usually in negative sent.), 3; after **sine**, 52.

nostri sine ullō vulnere in castra redeunt.

**ultimus**, *a, um* (*superl.* of **ultrā**), *adj.* last, uttermost. In 51 **ultimi** (*sc. hominēs*), the farthest people.

ultimas Galliae partes profectus est.

**ultrō**, *adv.* without provocation, 39; against his wish, 47.

nē aliis iniurias ultrō inferāmus!

**ūnā**, *adv.* together, in company, 5.

pedites ūnā cum equitibus praemittuntur.

**unde**, *adv. interrog.* from where? from what? 6; *rel.* whence, 14.

unde oritur Rhēnus?

**undecimus**, *a, um, adj.* eleventh, 5. Fr. *onzième*.

**undique**, *adv. indef.* from, on all sides, everywhere, 2.

hostes undique circumdantur.

**ūnus**, *a, um, num. adj.* one, 2; only, alone, 11, 51. Fr. *un, une*.

erat omnino in Gallia citeriore legio una.

**urbs**, *bis, f.* a city, 1.

ā quibus urbs Roma incolitur?

**usque**, *adv.* all the way to, continuously, 25 (with **ad**). Fr. *jusque*.

usque ad hostium castra accessit.

**ūsus**, *a, um, 9. perf. part.* of ūtor, *q.v.*

**ūsus**, *ūs, m.* practice, exercise, experience, 2, 8, 49; **ūsui** (23) or **ex ūsū** (29) *esse*, to be of use, to be advantageous, serviceable. Fr. *usage*.

ūsū nauticarum rerum ceteros praecedunt.

**ut(i)**, *adv.* as, 12.

*conj.* that, in order that, to; after **persuādēō**, **orō**, **imperō**, etc., 38; final, 41; consecutive, 43; concessive (=although), 51.

**uter, tra, trum**, *pron.* which of two; in Indirect Questions, 44, 53.

itinerum utrum facilius esset iudicare nōn poterat.

**uter-que, utra-que, utrum-que,**  
*pron.* each of two, both, 16.  
hostēs ab utrōque cornū instā-  
bant.

**utī,** 56, *v. ut.*

**utilis, e, adj.** useful, 28. *Fr. utile.*  
nonne cibus hominibus rēs utilis-  
sima est?

**utinam, adv.** oh that! would that!  
would to heaven! 31.  
utinam id fuisset quod sperābam!

**utro, 3. ūsus, v. dep.** I use (*abl.*), 5.  
magnō studiō ūtēbamur.

**ūtrum, adv.** introducing an alterna-  
tive question (direct or indirect)  
whether, 6; foll. by **an**, or, 6.  
ūtrum mē an illum magis  
laudās?

**uxor, ōris, f.** a wife, 11.  
quī uxōrēs interficiēbant?

## V

**vadum, ī, n.** a shallow place, ford, 7.  
dux cōpiās vadum trādūcit.

**vag-or, 1. -ātus, v. dep.** I wander, 6.  
Germani lātius iam vagābantur.

**val-eō, 2. -uī, -itum, v.n.** I am strong,  
powerful (with **plūrimum**, etc.),  
27; of health, 51. *Fr. valoir.*  
Caesar equitatū plūrimum valē-  
bat.

**valētūdō, inis, f.** state of health, 47.  
qualis valētūdo tua est?

**vallēs(is), is, f.** a valley, 31. *Fr. vallée.*  
is vicus in valle positus est.

**vallum, ī, n.** a stockade, intrench-  
ment, 20.  
barbari sub ipsum vallum succē-  
dunt (approach).

**vānus, a, um, adj.** fruitless, vain, 54.  
*Fr. vain.*  
vānā spē sublātus es.

**vast-ō, 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I lay waste,  
devastate, 3.  
Caesar magnam prōvinciae  
partem vastāvit.

**vectigālis, e, adj.** paying tribute,  
tributary, 27.

Rōmāni multās nātiōnēs sibi vec-  
tigāles fecēre.

**vehementer, adv.** very much, ex-  
cessively, 9. *Fr. véhémentement.*  
hēc ā tē vehementer petō.

**vel, conj.** or, 43.

militum qui equōs habent, equi-  
tēs vel equitātūs appellantur.

**velle, pres. infin.** of volō, *v. v.*

**vēlum, ī, n.** a sail, 44. *Fr. voile.*

vēlīs rēmisque insulam capere  
cōnatī sunt.

**vēnātiō, ōnis, f.** hunting, 10.  
tū-ne vēnātiōnī studeēs?

**vend-ō, 3. -idī, -itum, v.a.** I sell, 36.  
*Fr. vendre.*

dux ea, quae ex urbe capta sunt,  
vendidit.

**veniō, 4. vēnī, ventum, v.n.** I come,  
8; *impers.*, 25. *Fr. venir.*  
posterō diē in hostium finēs  
vēnimus.

**ventit-ō, 1. -āvi, -ātum, v. freq. n.** I  
come often, resort, 12.  
cō ventitāre consuevī.

**ventus, ī, m.** wind, 1. *Fr. vent.*  
Caesar secundum ventum ex-  
spectābat.

**vēr, vēris, n.** spring, 40.  
vēr prima annī pars est.

**verbum, ī, n.** a word, 1; **his verbis**,  
as follows, 11; **verbō**, verbally,  
orally, 21. *Fr. verbe.*  
cūius verba milites excitant?

**vereor, 2. veritus, v. dep.** I fear, 5;  
with *dat.* nāvibus, for the ships,  
28; with **nē, nē nōn** (ut), 54.  
nullum periculum veremur.

**verg-ō, 3.** no perf. or supine, *v.n.* (of  
places) to lie, be situated, 12.  
collis ad flūmēn Sabim vergēbat.

**veritus, a, um, 4. (perf. part. of**  
vereor, with present meaning),  
fearing, 4.

**vērō**, *adv.* but, 7, 45 (introducing a sentence strongly opposed to a preceding sentence).

trēs iam cōpiarum partēs flūmen transierant, quarta vērō pars in castris relicta erat.

**vers-or.** 1. **-ātus**, *v. dep.* I take part, busy myself, 6, 30, 41.

nonne in vitae (life) periculis laboribusque omnes versamur?

**vértō**. 3, **verti**, **versum**, *v.a.* and *n.* I turn: with *terga*, to turn one's back, run away, 46; I translate, 20.

omnēs hostēs celerrimē terga vertunt.

**vesper**, *eris* and *erī*, *m.* evening, 33. *Fr. vèpre.*

sub vesperum urbī appropinquātum est.

**vester**, *tra*, *trum*, *adj.* your (*pl.*), 21. *Fr. votre.*

hostium bona vestrum, milites, praeium erunt!

**vestis**, *f.* clothing, clothes, 31. *Fr. vêtement.*

Suēvi minimam vestem habebant.

**vestitus**, *ūs*, *m.* clothing, 20.

Indi (the Indians) vix ullō vestitū utuntur.

**vet-ō**. 1. **-uī**, **-itum**, *v.a.* I forbid, 28. dux milites ab opere discēdere vetuit.

**vetus**, *eris*, *adj.* old, former, 32. *Fr. vieux.*

nostri vetere victōriā clāti sunt.

**vex-ō**. 1. **-āvi**, **-ātum**, *v. freq. a.* I injure, molest, 19.

militum pars hostium agrōs vexandī causā missi sunt.

**via**, *ae. f.* a road, journey, 1. *Fr. voie.*

eā viā ire nōn poterāmus.

**vicēni**, *ae. a. distrib. num. adj.* twenty each, 27.

**viciēs**, *num. adv.* twenty times, 12. viciēs centum.

**victor**, *ōris*, *m.* a conqueror, 3.

victōrum praeda (booty) maxima est.

**victōria**, *ae. f.* victory, 3. *Fr. victoire.*

dux milites ob victōriam laudat.

**victus**, *a, um*, 12. *perf. part. pass.* of vincō, *q.v.*

**vicus**, *i, m.* a village, 2.

barbarōrum vici vastantur.

**videō**. 2. **vidi**, **visum**, *v.a.* and *n.* I see, 7; *pass.* I am seen, or in a deponent sense, I seem, 6; **vidētur**, it seems good, 24. *Fr. voir.*

id turpissimū esse vidētur.

**vigilia**, *ae. f.* a watch (period of time), 6. *Fr. veille.*

nox in quattuor vigiliās divisa (divided) est.

**vincō**. 3. **vici**, **victum**, *v.a.* and *n.* I conquer. *Fr. vaincre.*

Gallia bellō ā Caesare victa est.

**vineā**, *ae. f.* amantlet (kind of shed for sheltering besiegers), 20.

vineis ad mūrū aeliis.

**vinum**, *i, n.* wine, 12. *Fr. vin.*

Bacchus vini deus erat.

**vir**, **virī**, *m.* a man (of courage), 1, 19. hostēs Pisonem, virum fortissimum, circumdant.

**virēs**, *pl.* of *vīs*, *q.v.*

**virtūs**, **ūtis**, *f.* courage, valour, 5. *Fr. vertu.*

barbari magnam virtutem praestabant.

**vīs**, *f.* force, strength, violence, 19, 31, 44; (*acc. vim*, *gen. wanting, abl. vi*), *pl. virēs*, *ium*, strength.

nonne elephantōrum vīs magna est?

**visū**, 8. *supine in -ū* of *videō*, *q.v.*

**vīt-ō**. 1. **-āvi**, **-ātum**, *v.a.* and *n.* I avoid, seek to escape, 31.

Britanni mortem fugā vītābant.

**vivō**. 3. **vixi**, **victum**, *v.n.* I live. support myself (foll. by *abl.*) 2. *Fr. vivre.*

Suēvi lacte (on milk) atque pecore vivunt.

**vīvus, a, um, adj.** alive; in phrase  
**vivā voce**, orally, 1.

**vix, adv.** scarcely, with difficulty,  
27, 46. •

hostium vix quarta pars ad castra  
redit. •

**voc.ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, v.a. and n.** I  
call (by name), denominate, 43;  
summon, 48.

Caesar hostium ducem ad se  
vocat. •

**volō, velle, voluī, v. irreg. a.** I wish,  
4; (with *two* accs.) I want some-  
thing of somebody, 51. Fr.  
**vouloir**. •

eas quoque regiones cognoscere  
volebat.

**voluntās, ātis, f.** good-will, affec-  
tion, 28. Fr. *volonté*.

Caesar Dumnorigis summam in  
se voluntatem cognoverat.

**vōs, 2nd pers. pron.** you, 2; (*pl.* of  
tū, *q.v.*). Fr. *vous*.

**vox, vōcis, f.** a voice, 1; word, saying,  
8. Fr. *voix*.

tribūni magnis vōcibus suos in-  
citant.

**vulgō, adv.** everywhere, 8.

in iis vulgō ab signis discēde-  
bant.

**vulgus, ī, n.** the populace, common  
people, 45.


quos vulgus circumstitit?

**vulner.ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, v.a.** I wound,  
1.

nostrī telis undique vulnerantur.

**vulnus, eris, n.** a wound, 1.

multa et gravia vulnera à Pisōne  
accipiuntur. •

**vult, 4. 3rd pers. sing. pres. indic.**   
volō, *q.v.*

v --

x, 4. as a numerical sign = 10.

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULĀRY

The numbers after Verbs refer to their Conjugation.

The Perfect Tenses and Supines of Verbs are given after the numbers.

Where part of a word is bracketed, *e.g.* anything, (ali)quid, either the whole word or the part outside the brackets may be used.

### A

able, I am, *v. can.*

about, prep. *dē* (abl.).

— adv. *circa*, *ferē*.

about-to, sign of *fut. part.*

absent, *absens*, *nlis*.

accomplish, I, *con-ficiō*. 3. *-fēcī*,  
*-fectum*.

according-to, *e(x)* (abl.).

accordingly, *itaque*, *igitur*  
(after first word of a  
clause).

accustomed, I am, *sol-eō*. 2.  
*-itus sum*, *v. p.* 282; *con-*  
*suescō*. 3. *-suēvī*, *-suētum*, *v.*  
*p.* 48.

across, *trans* (acc.).

added, there is, *v. impers.*  
*accēdit*; perf. *accessit*.

advance, I, *prō-gredior*. 3.

*-gressus*; *prō-cēdō*. 3. *-cessī*,  
*-cessum*.

advice, *consilium*, *ilī*, n.

after, prep. *post* (acc.).

— conj. *postquam*. 2.

afterwards, *postea*.

afraid, I am, *v. fear*.

again, *rursus*; *iterum* (a second  
time).

against, *contrā*, *in* (acc.).

age, *aetās*, *ātis*, f.

aged, *nātus*, *a*, *um*.

agreed, it is, *constat*; *pti.*  
*constitit*.

agriculture, *agricultūra*, *ae*,  
f.

aid, *auxilium*, *ilī*, n.; *sub-*  
*sidium*, *idī*, n.

- all, *omnis*, *e*; *tôtus*, *a*, *um*, appearance, *speciēs*, *ei*, *f*.;  
 (=the whole of). *opiniō*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 allow, *I*, *patior*. 3., *passus* appoint, *I*, *con-stituō*. 3. *-stitut*,  
 (infin.). *-stitutum*.  
 ally, *socius*, *ei*, *m*. approach, *I*, *appropinquō*. 1.  
 almost, *ferē*: *paene*. *ārī*, *-ātum* (dat.); *ac-cēdō*. 3.  
 alone, adj. *solus*, *a*, *um*. *-cessī*, *-cessum* (ad).  
 adv. *solum*. Archer, *sagittārius*, *ārī*, *m*.  
 along, *undā*. arise, *I*, *orior*. 4. *ortus* (of a  
 already, *iam*. shout); *co-orior*. 4. *-ortus* (of  
 also, *autem* (after first word of a storm).  
 a clause), *præterea*. armour, arms, *arma*, *ōrum*, *n*. pl.  
 although, *quamquam*, *quavis*, army, *exercitus*, *ūs*, *m*.; *agmen*,  
 etc., *v*. p. 228. *inis*, *n*. (on the march); *aciēs*,  
 am, *I*, *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*. *ei*, *f*. (in battle array).  
 ambassador, *lēgitus*, *ī*, *m*. arrival, *adventus*, *ūs*, *m*.  
 ambush, *insidiæ*, *ārum*, *f*. arrive, *I*, *per-veniō*. 4. *-venī*,  
 pl. *-ventum* (in. acc.).  
 among, amongst, *inter*, *apud* arrogance, *arrogantia*, *ae*, *f*.;  
 (acc.). *contūmācia*, *ae*, *f*.  
 anchor, *ancora*, *ae*, *f*. arrow, *sagitta*, *ae*, *f*.  
 ancient, *antiquus*, *a*, *um*. as, *ut*, *cum* (=since, *v*. Less.  
 and, *et*, *atque*, *ac*, *-que*. 46, p. 196).  
 announce, *I*, *prō-* or *re-nuntiō* — follows, *tālīa*, *iūm*, *n*. pl.;  
 1. *-ūrī*, *-ātum*. *sic*.  
 any, *ullus*, *a*, *um* (in negative — possible, *quam* with  
 sentences). superl. of adj. or adv.  
 anyone, *quis* (indefinite), *v* — soon as, *cum primum*;  
 pp. 58, 272. *simul ac*, *v*. Less. 48.  
 anything, (*ali*)*quid* (indefinite), — soon as possible, *quam*  
*v*. pp. 58, 272. *primum*.



ascent, *ascensus*, ūs, m.

ask, I (a question) (*inter*)*rog-ō*.

1. *-āvī, -ātum*.

assemble, I, *con-venio*.

*-vērī, -ventum*.

assistance, *v.* aid.

assizes, *conventus*, um, m. pl.

at, *in, ad* (acc.); (of time)

simple abl.

— home, *domī*.

— night, *noctū*.

— the same time, *simul*

(adv.); *eodem tempore*.

Athens, *Athēnae*, ārum, f. pl.

attack, I, *op-pugn-ō*.

1. *-āvī, -ātum*; *pet-ō*.

3. *-īrī (iī), -itum*;

*ag-gredior*.

3. *-gressus* (openly); *ad-orior*.

4. *-ortus* (secretly); *laccess-ō*.

3. *-īrī, -itum*; *impetum facio*.

3. *fēcī, factum* (in. acc.).

attack, noun, *impetus*, ūs, m.

attend-to, I, use dat. sing. of

*cūra*, ae, f., *v.* p. 96.

auxiliaries, the, *auxilia*, ōrum,

n. pl.

avert, I, *pro-hib-eō*.

2. *-uī, -itum*.

await, I, *ex-spect-ō*.

1. *-āvī, -ātum*.

## B

baggage, *impedimenta*, ōrum,

n. pl.

band, *manus*, ū, f.

battle, *pugna*, ae, f.; *proelium*,

*lī*, n.

bear, I, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum*.

beast-of-burden, *iumentum*, ī, n.

because, *quod, propterea quod,*

*quia, cum* (subj.).

become, I, *fiō, fieri, factus sum*.

beech, *fāgus*, ī, f.

before, adv. *ante*; *anteā*.

— prep. *ante* (acc.).

— conj. *antequam*; *prius-*

*quam*.

beg, *or-ō*.

1. *-āvī, -ātum*; *pet-ō*.

3. *-īrī (iī), -itum* (*ā*,<sup>f</sup> abl.).

began, I, *coepī*.

3. *-cēpī, -ceptum*.

beginning, *initium*, itī, n.

beginning of summer, *inita*

*aestas*, ātis, f.

— of, *primus, a, um* (*ob-*

*sidiō*).

believe, I, *cred-ō*.

3. *-idī, -itum*.

beseech, I, *v.* beg.

bosiege, I, *ob-sideō*.

2. *-sēdī, -ses-*

*sum*.

betake myself, I, *mē re-cipiō*.

3. *-cēpī, -ceptum*.

- betray, *prō-dō*. 3. *-didi*,  
-ditum.
- better, it is, *praestat*; perf.  
*praestitit*.
- bind, I, *ob-stringō*. 3. *-strinxi*,  
-strictum.
- birth, of high, say 'born in a  
high place.'
- blame, I, *culp-ō*. 1. *-avi*, -atum;  
*reprehend-ō*. 3. *-i*, -nsum.
- block, I, *ob-struō*. 3. *-struxi*,  
-structum.
- blockade, I, *ob-sideō*. 2. *-sedi*,  
-sessum.
- body, *corpus, oris*, n.
- boldly, *audacter*.
- born, I am, *nascor*. 3. *natus*.
- born, adj. *natus, a, um*.
- both, *uterque, utraque, utrumque*.
- both . . . and, *et . . . et*.
- bravely, *fortiter*.
- bridge, *pons, ntis*, m.
- brigadier, *legatus, i*, m.
- bring, I, (*ad*)*ferō, ferre, tuli*,  
*latum*; (*ad*)*port-ō*. 1. *-avi*,  
-atum.
- bring-about, I, *ef-ficiō*. 3. *-feci*,  
-fectum.
- Britain, *Britannia, ae*, f.
- Britons, the, *Britanni, orum*,  
m. pl.
- broad, *latus, a, um*.
- bronze, *aes, aeris*, n.
- burden, *onus, eris*, n.
- burst, I, *ir-rumpō*. 3. *-rupi*,  
-ruptum (in. acc.).
- business, (=thing), *rēs, rei*, f.
- but, *sed, at, autem* (after first  
word of a clause).
- that, *quā* (subj.)
- by, *ā* or *ab* (abl.) simple  
abl. of Instrument.
- far, *longē*.
- night, *noctū*.
- O
- Caesar, *Caesar, aris*, m.
- calamity, *calamitas, atis*, f.
- call together, I, *con-voc-ō*. 1.  
*-avi*, -atum.
- calm, noun, *tranquillitas, atis*, f.
- camp, *castra, orum*, n. pl.
- camp-follower, *callō, onis*, m.
- can, I, *possum, posse, potui*.
- canton, *pāgus, i*, m.
- capture, I, *capiō*. 3. *cēpi*,  
*captum*.
- captured, *captus, a, um*.
- care, *cūra, ae*, f.
- carefully, *diligenter*.
- carry, I, *port-ō*. 1. *-avi*, -atum;  
*com-port-ō*. 1. *-avi*, -atum.

- 'carry on, I, *gerō*. 3. *gessī*, *gestum*.  
 out, I, *per-ficiō*. 3. *-fēcī*, *-fectum*.  
 cart, *carrus*, *ī*, m.  
 Carthage, *Carthāgō*, *inīs*, f.  
 catch-sight-of, I, *con-spiciō*. 3. *-spexī*, *-spectum*.  
 cattle, *pecus*, *oris*, n.  
 cause, *cāusa*, *ae*, f.  
 cautiously, *cautē*.  
 cavalrŷ, noun, *equitēs*, *um*, m. pl.; *equitātus*, *ūs*, m.  
 ——— adj. *equester*, *tris*, *tre*.  
 cease, I, *dē-sistō*. 3. *-stitī*, *-stitum*.  
 centurion, *centuriō*, *ōnis*, m.  
 certain, a, *quīdam*, *quaedam*, *quiddam* or *quoddam*.  
 chance, *facultās*, *ātis*, f.  
 chariot, *essedum*, *ī*, n.  
 charioteer, *essedārius*, *ārī*, m.  
 chief, adj. and comm. noun, *princeps*, *cipis*.  
 chiefly, *maximē*.  
 children, *liberī*, *ōrum*, m. pl.; *puerī*, *ōrum*, m. pl.  
 choose, I, *dē-ligō*. 3. *-lēgī*, *-lectum*.  
 Cicero, *Cicerō*, *ōnis*, m.  
 city, *urbs*, *bis*, f.
- civilisation, *cultus*, *ūs*, m.  
 civilised, *hūmānus*, *a*, *um*.  
 clemency, *mansuetūdō*, *inīs*, f.; *clementia*, *ae*, f.  
 climb, I, *a-scendō*. 3. *-scendī*, *-scensum* (in. acc. or simple acc.).  
 clothing, *vestitus*, *ūs*, m.  
 cohort, *cohors*, *rtis*, f.  
 coin, *nummus*, *ī*, m.; gen. pl. *nummum* for *nummōrum*.  
 cold, adj. *frigidus*, *a*, *um*.  
 collect, I, *com-par-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*; *cōgō*. 3. *cōgī*, *coactum* (troops, etc.).  
 come, I, *veniō*. 4. *vēnī*, *ventum*.  
 come frequently, I, *venit-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*.  
 command, I, *iubeō*. 2. *iussī*, *iussum*; *imper-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum* (dat.); *mand-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum* (dat.).  
 commander-in-chief, *imperātor*, *ōris*, m.  
 common, *communis*, *e*.  
 compel, I, *cōgō*. 3. *cōgī*, *coactum* (infin.).  
 complain of, I, *queror*. 3. *questus* (acc.).  
 complete, I, *con-* or *per-ficiō*. 3. *fēcī*, *-fectum*.

- comrade, *socius*, *cī*, m.; *comes*, *itis*, comm.  
 conference, *colloquium*, *quī*, n.  
 conquer, • I, • *vincō*. 3. *vici*, *victum*: *super-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*.  
 conquered, *victus*, *a*, *um*.  
 conqueror, *victor*, *ōris*, m.  
 consider, I, *existim-ō*. 1. *-ārī*, *-ātum*; *arbitr-or*. 1. *-ātūs*  
 • (dep.); *hab-eō*. 2. *-uī*, *-itum*.  
 considered, I am, *habeor*. 2. *habitus*.  
 conspire, I, *con-iūr-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*; *con-spīr-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*.  
 consul, *consul*, *ulis*, m.  
 consulship, in the . . . of, *say*,  
 . . . being consul (abl. absol.).  
 contest, *certāmen*, *inis*, n.  
 continent, *continens*, *ntis*, f. (abl. *-ī* or *-e*).  
 contrary, *adversus*, *a*, *um*.  
 corn, *frumentum*, *ī*, n.; *rēs frumentāria*.  
 council, *concilium*, *ilī*, n.  
 country (= fatherland), *patria*, *ae*, f.  
 courage, *animus*, *ī*, m.; *virtūs*, *ūtis*, f.; *audācia*, *ae*, f.  
 cover, I, *in-tegō*. 3. *-texī*, *-tectum*.  
 crisis, *summum periculum*, *ī*, n.; *extrēmus cāsus*, *ūs*, m.; *discrīmen*, *inis*, n.  
 cross, I, *trans-eō*, *-īre*, *-ivī* (*ii*), *-itum*.  
 custom, *consuetūdō*, *inis*, f.; *mōs*, *mōris*, m.  
 cut-down, I, *ex-cidō*. 3. *-cidi*,  
 • D  
 daily, adj. *cotidiānus*, *a*, *um*.  
 danger, *periculum*, *ī*, n.  
 dangerous, *periculōsus*, *a*, *um*.  
 dare, I, *audeō*. 2. *ausus sum*, v. p. 282.  
 dawn, *prīma lux*, *lūcis*.  
 day, noun, *diēs*, *ēī*, comm. in sing., m. in pl.  
 — adj. *diurnus*, *a*, *um*.  
 day-by-day, *in diēs* (in sentences containing a comparative).  
 death, *mors*, *rtis*, f.  
 deceit, *fraus*, *dis*, f.; *dolus*, *ī*, m.  
 decide, I, *statu-ō*. 3. *-ī*, *-ūtum*.  
 defeat, *clādēs*, *is*, f.  
 defence, *praesidium*, *idī*, n.

- defend, I, *dē-fendō*. 3. *-fendī, -fensum*.  
 delay, I, *mor-or*. 1. *-ātus* (*v. n.* and *a.*).  
 — noun, *mora*, *ae*, *f.*  
 deliberate, I, *dē-liber-ō*. 1. *-ārī, -ātum*.  
 deliver, I, *trā-dō*. 3. *-didī, -ditum* (*impert.*); *dē-dō*. 3. *-didī, -ditum* (*give up*).  
 demand, I, *postul-ō*. 1. *-āvī, -ātum*.  
 deny, I, *neg-ō*, 1. *-āvī, -ātum*.  
 depart, I, *dis-cēdō*. 3. *-cessī, -cessum* (*ab or ex. abl.*); *proficiscor*. 3. *profectus*.  
 departure, *discessus*, *ūs*, *m.*  
 deserve, I, *mereor*. 2. *meritus*.  
 designedly, *consultō*.  
 despair, I, *dē-spērō*, 1. *-ārī, -ātum*.  
 destroy, I, *dē-l-ō*. 2. *-evī, -ētum*.  
 determine, I, *statu-ō*. 3. *-ī, -ātum*; *con-stitu-ō*. 3. *-ī, -ātum*.  
 die, I, *morior*. 3. *mortuus*; *inter-ō, -īre, -iī, -itum*.  
 difficult, *difficilis*, *e.*  
 directions, in all, *in omnēs partēs, passim*.  
 disastrously, *incommodē*.  
 discouraged, I am, *inē animō dē-mittō*. 3. *-mīsī, -missum*.  
 discover, I, *reperiō*. 4. *repperī, repertum*.  
 discuss, I, *agō*. 3. *ēgī, actum* (*dē*).  
 disease, *morbus*, *ī*, *m.*  
 disgraceful, *turpis*, *e.*  
 dislodge, *sum-moveō*. 2. *-mōvī, -mōtum*.  
 disperse, I, *dis-pergō*. 3. *-persī, -persum*.  
 distant, I am, *ab-sum, -esse, āfuī*.  
 district, *regiō, ōnis*, *f.*  
 disturbed, I am, *animō perturb-or*. 1. *-ātus*.  
 do, I, *faciō*. 3. *fēcī, factum*; *agō*. 3. *ēgī, actum*; *pass. fūō, fierī, factus*.  
 doubt, I, *dubit-ō*. 1. *-āvī, -ātum*.  
 draw-up, I, *in-struō*. 3. *-struxī, -structum*.  
 drive, I, *com-pellō*. 3. *-pulī, -pulsum*; *agō*. 3. *ēgī, actum*.  
 duty, *officium, icī*, *n.*

## E

- each, *quisque, quaeque, quodque* or *quicque*, *v. p. 61*.  
 early, *mātūrē*, compar. *-ius*; superl. *-urrimē*.

easily, *facile*.  
 eight, *octō*.  
 eighth, *octāvus*, *a*, *um*.  
 eighty, *octogintā*.  
 either . . . or, *aut . . . aut* ;  
     *vel . . . vel*.  
 enclose, *I*, *con-tineō*. 2. *-tinuī*,  
     *-tentum*.  
 encourage, *I*, *(co)hort-or*. 1.  
     *-ātus*.  
 endeavour, *I*, *v. try*.  
 endure, *I*, *per-ferō*, *-ferre*, *-tulī*,  
     *-lātum*.  
 enemy, *hostis*, *is*, comm. usually  
     in pl. 'the enemy.'  
 engage battle, *I*, *proelium com-*  
     *-mittō* 3. *-misi*, *-missum* ; *con-*  
     *-fligō* 3. *-flīrī*, *-flictum* (*cum*).  
 engaged, *occupātus*, *a*, *um*.  
 engine, *tormentum*, *ī*, *n*.  
 enquire, *I*, *quaerō*. 3. *quaesivī*  
     (*sū*), *quaesitum*.  
 entire, *tōtus*, *a*, *um*.  
 entrust, *I*, *com-mittō*. 3. *-misi*,  
     *-missum*.  
 envy, *I*, *in-vidēō*. 2. *-vidī*,  
     *-visum* (*dat.*).  
 every, *omnis*, *e*. every tenth  
     man, *v. p. 62*.  
 every-year, *quotannis*.  
 except, prep. *praeter* (*acc.*).

except, conj. *nisi*.  
 exchange, to, *inter se dare*.  
 exertion, *labor*, *ōris*, *m*.  
 exhort, *v. encourage*.  
 expect, *I*, *ex-spect-ō*. 1. *-āvī*,  
     *-ātum*.  
 expel, *I*, *ex-pellō*. 3. *-pulī*,  
     *-pulsum* (*ex*).  
 eye, *oculus*, *ī*, *m*.

F

fact, the . . . that, *quod*.  
 faithful, *fidēlis*, *e*.  
 fall, *I*, *cadō*. 3. *ccidī*, *cāsum* ;  
     *con-cidō*, 3. *-cidī*, no supine ;  
     *de-cidō*. 3. *-cidī*, no supine.  
 famine, *famēs*, *is*, *f*.  
 famous, *clārus*, *a*, *um*.  
 far off, *I am*, (*longē*) *ab-sum*,  
     *-esse*, *āfui*.  
 farmer, *agricola*, *ae*, *m*.  
 farther, *longius* (*compar. of*  
     *longē*).  
 fate, *fātum*, *ī*, *n*.  
 fear, noun, *metus*, *ūs*, *m*. ;  
     *timor*, *ōris*, *m*.  
 fear, *I*, *tim-eō*. 2. *-uī*, no  
     supine ; *vere-or*. 2. *veritus* ;  
     *metu-ō*. 3. *-ī*, *-ūtum*.  
 feed-on, *I*, *vescor*. 3. no perf.  
     part. (*abl.*).

- few, *paucus, a, um.*  
 fewness, *paucitās, ātis, f.*  
 field, *ager, grī, m.*  
 fierce, *ferus, a, um.*  
 fiercely, *vehementer; ferōciter.*  
 fifteen, *quindecim.*  
 fight, noun, *v. battle.*  
 — I, *pugn-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum; proelium com-mittō. 3. -mīsī, -missus; proeliō contend-ō.*  
 3. -ī, -tum.  
 fighting, *pugnandum, ī; bellandum, ī.*  
 fill, I, *com-pleō. 2. -plēvī, -plētum.*  
 find, I, *reperio. 4. repperī, repertum; quaerō. 3. quaesivī, (sī) quaesitum (=look for); invenio. 4. -vēnī, -ventum.*  
 find-out, I, *co-quoscō. 3. -gnōvī, -gnitum.*  
 finish, I, *conficiō. 3. -fēcī, -fectum.*  
 fir, *abies, etis, f.*  
 fire, *ignis, is, m.; incendium, dī, n.*  
 first, adv. *primō, primum.*  
 fixed, *certus, a, um.*  
 flee, I, *fugio. 3. fūgī, fugitum; fugae mē mand-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum.*  
 fleet, *classis, is, f.*  
 flesh, *carō, carnis, f.*  
 flight, *fuga, ae, f.*  
 fling, I, *prō-icio. 3. -iēcī, -iectum.*  
 foe, *v. enemy.*  
 follow, I, *sequor. 3. secutus.*  
 follow up, I, *in- or sub-sequor. 3. -secutus.*  
 foot, noun, *pes, pedis, m.*  
 adj. *pedester, tris, tre.*  
 for, (=instead of, or on behalf of), *prō (abl.);* after *pro-ficiscor, in (acc.);* duration of time, *e.g. for forty years,* express by acc. case.  
 — sign of dat. case.  
 — conj. *nam; enim* (after first word of a clause).  
 — a while, *paulisper.*  
 — the most part, *plērumque.*  
 — the sake of, *causā (gen.).*  
 forbid, I, *vet-ō, 1. -uī, -itum.*  
 forces, *cōpiae, ārum, f. pl.*  
 forest, *silva, ae, f.*  
 form, I, *capiō. 3. cēpī, captum (consilium).*  
 former, *pristinus, a, um.*  
 fortification, *mūnitio, ōnis, f.*  
 fortified, *mūnitus, a, um.*  
 fortify, I, *mūn-iō. 4. -iī (iī), -itum.*

forty, *quadragintā*.  
 four, *quattuor*.  
 fourteenth, *quartus decimus*.  
 fourth, *quartus*, *a*, *um*.  
 fray, *v.* battle.  
 free, *I*, *liber-ō*. 1. *-ārī*, *-ātum*.  
 frequent, *crescer*, *bra*, *brum*.  
 friend, *amicus*, *ī*, *m*.  
 friendly, *amicus*, *a*, *um*.  
 friendship, *amicitia*, *ae*, *f*.  
 frighten, *I*, (*per*)*terr-eō*, 2. *-uī*,  
*-itum*.  
 frightened, *I* am, use pass. of  
 above, or of *per-turb-ō*. 1.  
*-uī*, *-ātum*.  
 from, *ā*, *ab*; *ē*, *ex*; *dē* (=down  
 from), or simple abl.  
*above*, *dēsuper*.  
 all sides, *undique*.  
 fugitive, *fugiens*, *ntis*, comm.  
 full, *plenus*, *a*, *um* (abl. or  
 gen.).  
 funeral, *fūnus*, *eris*, *n*.

G

Gallie, *Gallicus*, *a*, *um*.  
 garrison, *præsidium*, *idī*, *n*.  
 gate, *porta*, *ae*, *f*.  
 Gaul, *Gallia*, *ae*, *f*.  
 Gauls, the, *Galli*, *orum*, *m*.  
 pl.

general, *dux*, *ducis*, *m*; *imperātor*, *ōris*, *m*.  
 German, *Germanicus*, *a*, *um*.  
 Germans, the, *Germani*, *orum*,  
*m*. pl.  
 get-possession-of, *I*, *potior*. 4.  
*potitus* (abl. or gen.).  
 — together, *I*, *com-par-ō*.  
 1. *-ārī*, *-ātum*.  
 give, *I*, *dō*, *dare*, *dātī*, *datum*,  
 (dat.).  
 go, *I*, *eō*, *ire*, *irī* (*irī*), *itūm*.  
 — away, *I*, *ab-eō*, *-ire*, *-irī*  
 (*irī*), *-itum*.  
 — out, *I*, *ex-eō*, *-ire*,  
*-itum*.  
 god, *a*, *deus*, *ī*, *m*.  
 good, *bonus*, *a*, *um*.  
 goose, *anser*, *eris*, *m*.  
 gradually, *paulatim*.  
 great, *magnus*, *a*, *um*; (compar.  
*maior*; superl. *maximus*);  
*summus*, *a*, *um*.  
 greatly, *magnopere*.  
 ground, *locus*, *ī*, *m*. nom. and  
 acc. pl. *loci*, as if neuter.  
 guard, *I*, *tueor*. 2. *tuitus*.  
 — noun, *custos*, *ōdis*, comm.;  
*præsidium*, *idī*, *n*. (=pro-  
 tection).



H	hide, <i>corium</i> , <i>rī</i> , n.
hamper, I, <i>r.</i> hinder.	high (of birth), <i>summus</i> , <i>a</i> ,
hand, <i>manus</i> , <i>ūs</i> , f.	
happen, (of events), use <i>pass.</i>	higher, <i>superior</i> , <i>ius</i> (locus).
of <i>gerō</i> . 3. <i>gessi</i> , <i>gestum</i> ; or	hill, <i>collis</i> , <i>is</i> , m.; <i>iugum</i> , <i>ī</i> , n.
of <i>agō</i> . 3. <i>ēgī</i> , <i>actum</i> .	him (=himself), <i>sē</i> , <i>sēsē</i> .
happened, it, <i>accidit</i> .	himself, <i>ipse</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ; in oblique
harass, I, <i>lacessō</i> . 3. <i>-īvī</i> ( <i>īī</i> ),	cases <i>sē</i> , <i>sēsē</i> .
<i>-itum</i>	hinder, I, <i>imped-iō</i> . 4. <i>-īvī</i> ( <i>īī</i> ),
harbour, <i>portus</i> , <i>ūs</i> , m.	<i>-itum</i> .
hare, <i>lepus</i> , <i>oris</i> , m.	his-men, <i>suī</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , m. pl.
hasten, I, <i>properō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> ,	his-own, <i>suus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
<i>-itum</i> ; <i>con-tendō</i> . 3. <i>-tendī</i> ,	hither, adj. <i>citerior</i> , <i>ius</i> .
<i>-tentum</i> .	hold, I, <i>ten-eō</i> . 2. <i>-uī</i> , <i>-tum</i> ;
have, I, <i>habeō</i> . 2. <i>-uī</i> , <i>-itum</i> .	<i>hab-eō</i> . 2. <i>-uī</i> , <i>-itum</i> (cov-
headlong, <i>praeceps</i> , <i>capitis</i> .	cilium).
hear, I, <i>aud-iō</i> . 4. <i>-irī</i> ( <i>īī</i> ),	hold-out, I, <i>sus-tineō</i> . 2. <i>-tinuī</i> ,
<i>-itum</i> .	<i>-tentum</i> .
hear-of, I, say 'I am in- formed.'	honour, <i>honor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.
heavy, <i>gravis</i> , <i>e</i> .	hope, <i>spēs</i> , <i>eī</i> , f.
help, noun, <i>auxilium</i> , <i>ilī</i> ; sub- sidium, <i>idī</i> , n.	horse, <i>equus</i> , <i>ī</i> , m.
— I, <i>suc-currō</i> . 3. <i>-currī</i> ,	— (=cavalry), <i>v.</i> cavalry.
<i>-cursum</i> (dat.); <i>ad-iuvō</i> . 1.	hospitality, <i>hospitium</i> , <i>itī</i> , n.
<i>-iūrī</i> , <i>-ūtum</i> ; <i>auxili-or</i> . 1.	hostage, <i>obses</i> , <i>idis</i> , comm.
<i>-itus</i> (dat.).	hour, <i>hōra</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.
hen, <i>gallina</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.	how, rel. <i>quemadmodum</i> .
hesitate, I, <i>dubitō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> ,	— great, rel. <i>quantus</i> , <i>a</i> ,
<i>-itum</i> .	<i>um</i> .
hesitation, <i>cunctatiō</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , f.	however, <i>tamen</i> ; <i>autem</i> .
	— qualifying an adj., <i>quam-</i>
	<i>vīs</i> .

huge, *ingens, ntis*.

humble, *humilis, e*; compar.

*-ior*; superl. *-illimus*.

hundred, *centum*.

hunting, *venatio, ōnis, f*.

hurl, I, *iaciō*, 3. *iēcī, iactum*;

*cōn-iciō*. 3. *-iēcī. -iectum*;

*mittō*. 3. *misī, missum*.

# I

*-if, sī*.

— not, *sī nōn, nisi*.

imitate, I, *imit-or*. 1. *-ātus*.

immediately, *statim*.

in part, I, *commūnic-ō*. 1. *-āvī*

*-ātum*. (aliquid cum aliquō).

implore, I, *implōr-ō*. 1. *-āvī,*

*-ūtum*.

in, *in* (abl.), or simple abl.

— accordance with, *prō*

(abl.).

— all directions, *undique,*  
*passim, in omnēs partēs* (with  
verbs of motion).

— front of, *prō* (abl.),

order that, *ut* or *rel.* foll.

by subj. In final clauses  
containing a comparative,  
*quō* with subj.

— proportion to, *prō* (abl.).

— vain, *frustrā, nēquiquam*.

incredible, *incrēdibilis, e*.

influence, *auctoritās, ātis, f*.

inform, I, *certiōrem(-ēs) faciō,*

3. *fēcī, factum*; pass. *certior,*  
*fīō, fierī, factus* (dē).

inhabit, I, *in-colō*. 3. *coluī, no*

supine.

inhabitant, *incola, ae, comm*.

injure, I, *noc-eō*, 2. *-uī -itum*

(dat.).

instead-of, *prō* (abl.).

intention, *consilium, illi, n*.

interrupt, I, *inter-mittō*. 3. *-mīsī,*

*-massum*.

into, *in* (acc.).

iron, adj. *ferrus, a, um*.

— mine, *ferrāria, ae, f*.

Italy, *Italia, ae, f*.

javelin, *iaculum, ī, n*. (Gaul-

ish); *pilum, ī, n*. (Roman).

journey, noun, *iter, itineris, n*.

— I, *iter faciō*. 3. *fēcī, factum*.

joy, *gaudium, dī, n*; *laetitia;*

*ae, f*.

jump, I, *dē-siliō*. 4. *-siluī, -sultum*

(dē).

Jupiter, *Iuppiter, Iovis, m*.

## K

- keenness, *alacritās, ātis*, f.  
 keep, I, (=detain) *con-tinēō*. 2. *-tinuī, -tentum*.  
 kill, I, *inter-ficiō*. 3. *-fēcī, -fectum*; *occidō*. 3. *occidī, occisum*; *nec-ō*. 1. *-āvī, -ātum* (cruelly).  
 kind, *genus, eris*, n.  
 know, I, *sciō*. 4. *scīvī, scitum*; *co-gno-*. 3. *-gnōrī, -gnitum* (*-get to know*); *certior fū, fierī, factus* (dē).  
 knowledge, *scientia, ae*, f.  
 known, *nōtus, a um*.  
 lacking, I am, *dē-sum, -esse, -fuī*.  
 land, *ager, grī*, m.; *solum, ī*, n.  
 large, *magnus, a, um*; compar. *maior*; superl. *maximus*, — number, *multitūdō, inis*, f.  
 last, adj. *extrēmus, a um*.  
 launch, I, *dē-dūcō*. 3. *-duxī, -ductum*.  
 law, *lex, legis*, f.  
 lay-waste, I, *vast-ō*. 1. *-āvī, -ātum*.  
 lead, I, *dūcō*. 3. *duxī, ductum*; *dē-dūcō*. 3. *-duxī, -ductum*.  
 leader, *dux, ducis*, m.; *princeps, cipis*, m.  
 leap down, I, v. jump.  
 learn, I, v. know.  
 leave, I, *re-linquō*. 3. *-liquī, -lictum*; *dis-cēdō*. 3. *-cessī, -cessum* (ab); *ex-cēdō* (ex); *ex-eō, -īre, -ī, -itum* (ex).  
 left (hand), adj., *sinīster, trā, trum*.  
 legion, *legiō, ōnis*, f.  
 less, adj. *minor, us*. — adv. *minus*.  
 lest, *nē* (subj.).  
 let, sign of subj. mood.  
 letter, *litterae, ārum*, f. pl.; *epistula, ae*, f.  
 liberty, *libertās, ātis*, f.  
 lie, I, *iaceō*. 2. *ui, -itum*.  
 life, *vita, ae*, f.  
 like, *similis, e*, (gen. or dat.).  
 limb, *membrum, ī*, n.  
 line-of-battle, *acies, ēī*, f.  
 little, *a, paulum*.  
 live, I, *vivō*. 3. *vixī, victum*.  
 long, adj. *longus, a, um*. — adv. *diū* (=for a long time).  
 longer, adv. *diūtius* (=for a longer time).

look-to, *1, cūr-ō. 1. -ārī, -ātum.*  
 lose, *1, ā-mittō. 3. -mīsī, -mīs-*  
*sum; per-dō, 3. -didi,*  
*-dītum.*  
 loud, *magnus, a, um* (of noise).

M

made, I am, *fiō, fieri, factus.*  
 magnitude, *magnitūdō, inis, f.*  
 make, I, *faciō. 3. fecī, factum;*  
*ef-ficiō. 3. -fecī, -fectum* (= render, or of concrete ob-  
 jects); pass. *fiō.*  
 man, *homō, inis, comm.* (= human being), *vir, ī, m.* (as opp. to a woman).  
 manifest, I, *praeb-eō. 2. -uī*  
*-itum.*  
 mantlet, *vineā, ae, f.*  
 many, *multus, a, um; compar.*  
*plūs; superl. plurimus.*  
 march, *1, iter faciō. 3. fecī,*  
*factum* (in. acc.).  
 march, noun, *iter, itineris. n.*  
 marsh, *palūs, ūdis, f.*  
 matter, *rēs, reī, f.*  
 meanwhile, *interim, intereā.*  
 meet, I, *oc-currō. 3. -currī,*  
*-cursum* (dat.).  
 melted, *fervefactus, a, um.*

men, *hominēs, um* (=man, kind).  
 merchant, *mercātor, ōris, m.*  
 mere, adj., *ipse, a, um.*  
 messenger, *nuntius, ī, m.*  
 method, *ratio, ōnis, f.*  
 middle-of, *medius, a, um.*  
 midnight, *media nox, noctis.*  
 mile, *mille passūs; pl. milia*  
*passuum.*  
 military, adj. *militāris, e.*  
 milk, *lac, lactis, n.*  
 mind, *mens, ntis, f.*  
 mine, *cuniculus, ī, m.*  
 mining, use pl. of *cuniculus, ī,*  
*m.*  
 money, *pecūnia, ae, f.;*  
*argentum, ī, n.*  
 moon, *lūna, ae, f.*  
 more, adv. *amplius, plūs* (of quantity); *magis* (of de-  
 gree).  
 moreover, *autem, praeterea.*  
 most, adj. *plurimus, a, um.*  
 mostly, adv. *maximam partem.*  
 mountain, *mons, ntis, m.*  
 move, I, *moveō. 2. movī, mōtum*  
*(v.a.); moveor, or mē moveō*  
*(v.n.).*  
 much, adv. *multum.*  
 multitude, *multitūdō, inis, f.*

muscle, *nervus*, *ī*, m.

must, I, *dēb-eō*. 2. *-uī*, *-itum*

(*infin.*); *oportet*. 2. *-uīt*, *v.*

Less. 24; or use gerund or gerundive, *v.* Less. 17-19.

my, *meus*, *a*, *um*.

## N

naked, *nūdus*, *a*, *um* (*abl.*).

name, *nōmen*, *inis*, n.

namely that, *quod*.

narrow, *angustus*, *ū*, *um*.

native, *adj.* *barbarus*, *a*, *um*.

natives, the, *barbarī*, *ōrum*,  
m. pl.

nature, *nātūra*, *ae*, f.

near, *prep.* *apud* (*acc.*).

nearer, *prep.* *propius* (*acc.*).

nearest, *proximus*, *a*, *um*.

necessarily, *necessāriō*.

neglect, I, *neglegō*. 3. *neglexī*,  
*neglectum*; *praeter-mittō*. 3.  
*-misi*, *-missum*.

neighbours, *finitimī*, *ōrum*,  
m. pl.

neither, *neque*.

neither . . . nor, *neque* . . .  
*neque*; *nec* . . . *nec*.

nevertheless, *nihilō minus*,  
*tamen*.

new, *novus*, *a*, *um*.

next (=afterwards), *deinde*.

next day, *posterō diē*, *postrūdiē*.

night, noun, *nox*, *noctis*, f.

—, *adj.* *nocturnus*, *a*, *um*.

ninth, *nōnus*, *a*, *um*.

no, *nullus*, *a*, *um*.

no one, *nēmō*, *nullius*.

none the less, *nihilō minus*.

nor, *neque*, *nec*.

not, *nōn*, *nē* (*in negative com-*  
*mands or petitions*).

— to, *nē* (*subj.*).

— yet, *nondum*.

nothing, *nihil*, *nīl*.

number, *numerus*, *ī*, m.

## O

oar, *rēmus*, *ī*, m.

oath, *iūs iūrandum*, *iūris*  
*iūranti*, n. (or *iūsiurandum*,  
etc.).

obey, I, *obtemperō*. 1. *-āvī*,  
*-ātum* (*dat.*); *pār-eō*. 2. *-uī*,  
*-itum* (*dat.*).

occurrence, *cāsus*, *ūs*, m.

of, sign of gen. case; some-  
times *ex*, e.g. *ex hostibus*  
centum.

— this kind, *eiusmodī*.

- officer, *tribūnus*, *ī*; *praefectus*, *ī*, *m*.  
 — often, *saepe*.  
 on, *in* (abl.), or simple *abl.*  
*e.g.* of time; after vb. of motion, *in* (acc.).  
 — all sides, *undique*, *passim*.  
 — foot, *pedibus*.  
 — the other hand, *contrā*.  
 — this account, *hōc*, *eō*.  
 — this side of, *citrā*, *cis* (acc.).  
 one, *unus*, *a*, *um*.  
 — at a time, *singulī*, *ae*, *a*.  
 only, adj. *sōlus*, *a*, *um*.  
 —, adv. *solum*.  
 open, *apertus*, *a*, *um*.  
 opinion, *opiniō*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 opportunity, *occāsiō*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 — *facultās*, *ātis*, *f*.  
 or, *aut*, *vel*; *nē-ce* (in negative commands, or petitions); preceded by 'whether' in indirect questions, *an*.  
 order, *I*, *iub-eō*. 2. *iussī*, *iussum*; *imper-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum* (dat.); *mandō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum* (dat.); *prae-cipiō*. 3. *-cēpī*, *-ceptum* (acc. and dat.).  
 other, *alius*, *a*, *ud*.  
 ought, *v. must*.  
 our, *noster*, *tra*, *trum*.  
 — men, *nostrī*, *ōrum*, *m*. pl  
 — selves, *ipsī*.  
 outstretched, *passus*, *a*, *um*.  
 outwork, *agger*, *cris*, *m*.  
 overtake, *I*, *ad-sequor*. 3. *-secūtus*.  
 overwhelm, *I*, *op-primō*. 3. *-pressī*, *-pressum*.  
 owing-to, *propter*, *et* (acc.).  
 P  
 pacify, *pāc-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*.  
 parley, *colloquium*, *quī*, *n*.  
 part, *pars*, *rtis*, *f*.; *regiō*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 (=district).  
 people, *populus*, *ī*, *m*.  
 perceive, *I*, *intellegō*. 3. *intellēxī*, *intellectum*; *animadvert-ō*. 3. *-ī*, *-rsum*; *sentīō*. 4. *sensī*, *sensum* (=feel).  
 perform, *I*, *fungor*. 3. *functus*.  
 perish, *I*, *per-eō*, *-īre*, *-iī*, *-itum*; *inter-eō*, etc.  
 persuade, *per-suādeo*. 2. *-suāsī*, *-suāsum* (dat.).  
 pick-up, *I*, *ex-cipiō*. 3. *-cēpī*, *-ceptum*.  
 pitch, *pix*, *picis*, *f*.  
 place, *locus*, *ī*, *m*. *v.* ground.

place, I, *pōnō*. 3. *posuī, positum*.

plainly, *plānē*.

plan, *consilium*, *ilī*, n.; *ratio*,  
*ōnis*, f. (of battle).

pleases it, *plac-et*. 2. *-uit* or  
*-itum est*.

pleasure, *voluptās, ātis*, f.

plough, I, *ar-ō*. 1. *-āvī, -ātum*.

plunder, I, *praed-or*. 1. *-ātūs*  
(v. n. *prae-dī-rīpiō*. 3. *-rī-*

*-eptum* (v. a.).

poet, *poēta, ae*, m.

point out, I, *dē-monstr-ō*. 1. *-āvī,*  
*-ātum*.

poor, *pauper, eris*.

position, *locus, ī*, m.

post, I, *col-loc-ō*. 1. *-āvī, -ātum*.

powerful, *potens, ntis*; compar.  
*-ntior*; superl. *-ntissimus*.

prepare, I, *par-ō*. 1. *-āvī, ātum*.

prevail, I, *super-ō*. 1. *-āvī,*  
*-ātum*.

priest, *sacerdōs, ōtis*, comm.

private, *privātus, a, um*.

promise, I, *pollic-eor*. 2. *-itus*  
(takes fut. tense of the  
infin.).

property, *possessiōnēs, um*, f.  
pl.

protection, *praesidium, idī*, n.;  
*fidēs, eī*, f.

provisions, *commeātus, ūs*, m.  
(used in either sing. or pl.).

punish, I, *pūn-iō*. 4. *-īvī (ī),*  
*-itum*.

put, I, *pōnō*. 3. *posuī, positum*.

— to flight, I, *fug-ō*. 1. *-āvī,*  
*-ātum*; in *fugam dō, dare,*  
*dedī, datum*; in *fugam con-*  
*vertō*. 3. *-vertī, -versum*.

## Q

queen, *rēgīna, ae*, f.

quickly, *celeriter*; compar.  
*celerius*; superl. *celerrimē*.

quiet, adj. *quīetus, a, um*.

## R

race, *gens, ntis*, f.; *genus, eris*,  
n.

rank, *ordō, inis*, m. (of sol-  
diers); *dignitās, ātis*, f. (of  
position).

reach, I, *per-veniō*. 4. *-vērī,*  
*-ventum* (in. acc.).

reason, *causa, ae*, f.

receive, I, *ac-cipīō*. 3. *-cēpī,*  
*-ceptum*.

refuse, I, *recūs-ō*. 1. *-āvī, -ātum*.

reinforcements, *ampliōrēs*  
*cōpiae, ārum*, f. pl.; *subsīdia,*  
*ōrum*, n. pl.

- relate, *P. dic-ō*. 3. *dicī, dictum*; (wonderful) to relate, use supine in *-ū*.
- relying-on, *fētus, a, um* (abl.).
- remain, *I, (re)maneō*. 2. *mansī, mansum*.
- remainder, the, *reliquī, ōrum*, m. pl.; *ceterī, ōrum*, m. pl.
- remember, *I, memoriam retineō*. 2. *-tinuī, -tentum* (gen.); *reminiscor*. 3. no perf. part. (gen.).
- remove, *I, re-moveō*. 2. *-mōvī, -mōtum*.
- repair, *I, re-ficiō*. 3. *-fēcī, -fectum*.
- repent, *I, use paenit-et*. 2. *-uit* (acc. of person, gen. of thing).
- reply, *I, re-spondeō*. 2. *-spondī, -sponsum* (dat.).
- report, *I, (re)nunti-ō*. 1. *-āvī, -ātum*.
- republic, *rēs publica, rei publicae* (or *respublica, reipublicae*).
- reserves, the, *auxilia, ōrum*, n. pl.
- resist, *I, re-sistō*. 3. *-stitī, -stitum* (dat.).
- resolve on, *I, con-stituō*. 3. *-stituī, -stitutum*.
- resource, *consilium, ilī*, n.
- rest, the, or rest-of, *v. remainder*.
- retire, *v. retreat*.
- retreat, *I, mē re-cipio*. 3. *-cēpī, -ceptum*; *cōdō*. 3. *cessī, cessum*.
- return, *I, red-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum*; *re-vertō* or *-vector*. 3. *-vertī, -versus* (perf. tenses except *reversus*, having returned, are formed from the act. root).
- reward, *praemium, nī*, n.
- Rhine, *Rhēnus, ī*, m.
- rights, *iūs, iūris*, n.
- rising, *a, mōtus, ūs*, m.
- river, *flūmen, inis*, n.
- road, *via, ae, f.*; *iter, itineris*, n.
- Roman, *Rōmānus, a, um*.
- Romans, the, *Rōmānī, ōrum*, m. pl.
- Rome, *Rōma, ae, f.*
- rope, *fūnis, is*, m.
- rouse, *I, excit-ō*. 1. *-āvī, -ātum*.
- rule, *imperium, erī*, n.
- rumour, *rūmor, ōris*, m.
- run up, *I, ac-currō*. 3. *-cucurrī, and -currī, -cursum*.
- running, noun, *cursus, ūs*, m.
- rush at, *I, impetum faciō*. 3. *fēcī, factum* (in. acc.).



## S

safe, *tūtus*, *a*, *um*; *incolumis*, *e*.

safely, *tūtō*.

safety, *salūs*, *ūtis*, *f*.

sail, *I*, *nāvig-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*.

— noun, *vēlum*, *ī*, *n*.

sailing, *nāvigātiō*, *ōnis*, *f*.

sally, *I*, *ē-rumpō*. 3. *-rūpī*,  
*-ruptum* (*ex*).

same, *iste*, *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*.

save, *I* (*con*)*serv-ō*. 1. *-āvī*,  
*-ātum*.

say, *I*, *dicō*. 3. *dicī*, *dictum*.

says, *he*, *ait*, *inquit* (in direct  
speech).

scantiness, *exiguitās*, *ātis*, *f*.

scarcely, *vix*.

scout, *explōrātor*, *ōris*, *m*.

sea, *mare*, *is*, *n*.

— board, *ōra* (*ae*, *f*.) *mariti-*  
*tima*.

secretly, *clam*.

see, *I*, *videō*. 2. *vidī*, *vīsum*.

seek, *I*, *pet-ō*. 3. *-īvī* (*ī*),  
*-itum*.

seem, *I*, *videor*. 2. *vīsus*.

seize, *I*, *occup-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*.

self, *ipse*, *a*, *um*.

sell, *I*, *vend-ō*. 3. *-idī*, *-itum*.

senate, *senātus*, *ūs*, *m*.

send, *I*, *mittō*. 3. *misī*, *missum*.

send forward, *I*, *prae-mittō*. 3.

*-misī*, *-missum*.

— out, *I*, *dī-mittō*. 3. *-misī*,  
*-missum*.

set-fire-to, *I*, *incend-ō*. 3. *-ī*,  
*-nsum*; *ignem in-ferō*, *-ferre*,  
*-tulī*, *-lātum* (*dat.*).

— out, *I*, *proficiscor*. 3. *pro-*  
*fectus*.

several, *complūrēs*, *a*, (*gen.*  
*-ium*).

severe, *gravis*, *e*.

ship, *nāvis*, *is*, *f*.

shortness of stature, *brevitās*,  
*ātis*, *f*.

shout, noun, *clāmor*, *ōris*, *f*.

siege, *obsidiō*, *ōnis*, *f*.

sight, *conspectus*, *ūs*, *m*.

signal, *signum*, *ī*, *n*.

since, *quoniam* (*indic.*), *cum*  
(*subj.*), *v*. because, and  
Less. 46.

six, *sex*.

size, *magnitūdō*, *inis*, *f*.

skilful, *perītus*, *a*, *um* (*gen.*).

skin, *pellis*, *is*, *f*.

skirmish, *proelium*, *lī*, *n*.

slaughter, *caedēs*, *is*, *f*.

slave, *servus*, *ī*, *m*.

sleep, *somnus*, *ī*, *m*.

sling, *funda*, *ae*, *f*.

slinger, *funditor*, *ōris*, m.  
 smoke, *fūmus*, *ī*, m.  
 so, *tam*, *ita*.  
 — great, *tentus*, *a*, *um*.  
 soldier, *mīles*, *itis*, comm.  
 some, *nonnullus*, *a*, *um*; *aliquis*,  
*id*; *aliquot* (*diēs*).  
 — men, *aliī*; some . . .  
 others, *aliī* . . . *aliī*.  
 son, *filius*, *lī*, m.  
 soon, *mox*: *iam* (with tenses  
 referring to fut. time).  
 sortie, *eruptiō*, *ōnis*, f.  
 sound, *sonus*, *ī*, m.; *sonitus*,  
*ūs*, m.  
 Spain, *Hispania*, *ae*, f.  
 spare, I, *parcō*. 3. *pepercī*,  
*parsum* (dat.).  
 speak, I, *loquor*. 3. *locutus*.  
 speech, *sermō*, *ōnis*, m.; *oratiō*  
*ōnis*, f.  
 speedily, *velociter*; *celeriter*.  
 speedy, *celer*, *eris*, *ere*.  
 spot, *v. place*.  
 spring, *vēr*, *vēris*, n.  
 spy, *explorator*, *ōris*, m.  
 squadron, *turma*, *ae*, f.  
 (equitum).  
 stand, I, *st-ō*. 1. *-eti*, *-atum*.  
 stand my ground, I, *re-sistō*.  
 3. *-stitī*, *-stitum*.

standard, *signum*, *ī*, n.  
 — bearer, *aquilifer*, *erī*, m.  
 stakes, *materia*, *ae*, f. (lit.  
 timber).  
 start, I, *proficiscor*. 3. *profectus*.  
 state, *civitas*, *atis*, f.  
 matters, *rēs publicae*,  
*rerum publicarum*, f. pl.  
 stature, *statūra*, *ae*, f.  
 steep, *praeceps*, *cipitis*.  
 stir up, I, *solicit-ō*. 1. *-āvī*,  
*-ātum*.  
 stockade, *vallum*, *ī*, n.  
 stone, *saxum*, *ī*, n.  
 stop, I, *mor-or*. 1. *-ātus*, v.n.  
 and a.  
 storm, I, *expugn-ō*. 1. *-āvī*,  
*-ātum*.  
 storm, noun, *tempestas*, *atis*, f.  
 stoutly, *v. bravely*.  
 stranger, *hospes*, *itis*, m.  
 strength, *vīres*, *ium*, f. pl. (pl.  
 of *vīs*).  
 strengthen, I, *con-firm-ō*. 1.  
*-āvī*, *-ātum*.  
 strenuously, *strēnuē*.  
 such, *tālis*, *e*; *tantus*, *a*, *um*.  
 (=so great), *is*, *ea*, *id* (in  
 consp.c. clauses); of such a  
 kind, *eiusmodi*.  
 sudden, *subitus*, *a*, *um*.

suddenly, *subitō*.  
 suffer, I, *patior*. 3. *passus*.  
 sufficient, *satis*.  
 suitable, *aptus*, *a*, *um* (ad.);  
     *ilōneus*, *a*, *um* (dat. or ad.).  
 summer, *aestās*, *ātis*, f.  
 summit, *summa*, *ae*, f.  
 supply, *cōpia*, *ae*, f.  
 support, I, *al-ō*. 3. *-ū*, *-tum*  
     and *-itum*; *toler-ō*. 1. *-āvī*,  
     *-ctum* (hiemem).  
 surround, I, *circum-dō*, *-dare*,  
     *-dedī*, *-datum*; *circum-veniō*. 4.  
     *-vērī*, *-ventum*; *circum-sistō*.  
     3. *-stetī*, no supine; *cingō*. 3.  
     *cinxī*, *cinctum*.  
 suspend, I, *inter-mittō*. 3. *-mīsī*,  
     *-missum* (opus).  
 sway, *imperium*, *erī*, n.  
 sword, *gladius*, *dī*, m.; *ferrum*,  
     *ī*, n. (ignī ferrōque).

## T

take, I, *capiō*. 3. *cēpi*, *captum*.  
 — part, I, *vers-or*. 1. *-ātus*  
     (in. abl.).  
     up a position, I, *con-*  
     *sistō*. 3. *-stitī*, *-stitum*.  
 talk, I, *v. speak*.  
 tall, *altus*, *a*, *um*.  
 tell, I, *v. inform*.

temper, *animus*, *ī*, m.  
 tent, *tabernāculum*, *ī*, n.  
 tenth, *decimus*, *a*, *um*.  
 terms, *conditiō*, *nis*; f. (sing.  
     or pl.).  
 territory, *-ies*, *fīnēs*, *ium*,  
     m. pl.; *agrī*, *ōrum*, m. pl.  
 than, *quam* or simple abl.  
 that, demonstrative pron. and  
     adj. *is*, *ea*, *id*; *ille*, *illa*,  
     *illud*.  
 that, rel. pron., *v. which*.  
 that (=in order that),  
     introducing indirect state-  
     ments, omit.  
 the (before a comparative), *eō*  
     or *hōc*, *v. Less.* 28.  
 their, *eōrum*; *suus*, *ī*, *um*  
     (=their own).  
 themselves, *ipsī*; in oblique  
     cases, *sē*, *sēsē*.  
 then, *tum*, *deinde* (=next).  
 thence, *inde*.  
 there, *illīc*.  
 therefore, *itaque*; *igitur* (after  
     first word of a clause.)  
 thigh, *femur*, *oris*, or *inis*, n.  
 thing, *rēs*, *reī*; often trans-  
     lated by n. sing. or pl. of  
     a pronoun, *e. g.* 'those  
     things,' *ea*.

think, I, *put-ō*, 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum* ;  
*ex-istim-ō*, 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum* ;  
*arbitr-or*, 1. *-ātus*.  
 third, *tertius*, *a*, *um*.  
 thirty, *trīgintā*.  
 this, *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*.  
 thither, *cō*.  
 three, *trēs*, *triā*.  
 — days, *triduum*, *i*, *n*.  
 through, *per* (acc.).  
 throughout, translate by the  
 abl.  
 throw, I, *cōn-iciō*. 3. *-iēcī*,  
*-iectum* (*tēla*) ; *prō-iciō*. 3.  
*-iēcī*, *-iectum* (*aquilam*) ; *prae-*  
*cipit-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*, (*mē*).  
 — away, *ab-iciō*. 3. *-iēcī*,  
*-iectum*.  
 — into-confusion, *per-turb-ō*.  
 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*.  
 thus, *sic*, *tālī modō*.  
 timber, *materia*, *ae*, *f*. (in  
 nom. and acc. sing. also  
*materiēs*, *em*).  
 time, *tempus*, *oris*, *n*.  
 to, sign of dat. case ; in final  
 clauses, *ut*.  
 — prep. *ad*, *in* (acc.).  
 — -morrow, *crās*.  
 — one-another, *inter sē*.  
 — relate, *v*. relate.

top-of, *summus*, *a*, *um*.  
 torture, *cruciātus*, *ūs*, *m*.  
 towards, *in* (acc.) ; of feelings,  
 etc., *ergā* (acc.).  
 tower, *turris*, *is*, *f*. acc. *turr-im*  
 and *-em* ; abl. *turr-ī* and *-e*.  
 town, *oppidum*, *i*, *n*.  
 training, *exercitātiō*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 traitor, *prōditor*, *ōris*, *m*.  
 transport, I, *transpōrt-ō*.  
*-āvī*, *-ātum*.  
 traveller, *viātor*, *ōris*, *m*.  
 tribe, *nātiō*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 tribune, *tribūnus*, *i*, *m*.  
 tributary, *vectigālis*, *e*.  
 troops, say 'soldiers' or  
 'forces.'  
 trumpet, *tuba*, *ae*, *f*.  
 trust, I, *confidō*. 3. *fisus sum*  
 (dat. or abl.).  
 try, I, *cōn-or*. 1. *-ātus* ; *experior*.  
 4. *expertus* (*auxilium*).  
 twenty, *vīgintī*.  
 two, *duo*, *ae*, *o*.  
 — hundred, *ducentī*, *ae*, *a*.  
 — years, *biennium*, *nī*, *n*.

unincumbered, *expeditus*, *a*,  
*um*.  
 uneven, *iniquus*, *a*, *um*.

unexpectedly, (*dē*) *improvisō*.

unknown, *ignōtus*, *a*, *um*.

unless, *nisi*.

unstable, *mōbilis*, *e*.

unsuitable, *nōn idōneus*, *a*, *um*  
(*ad* or *dat.*).

until, *priusquam* ; *dum* (*subj.*) ;  
*quoad* (*subj.*).

unworthily, *indignē* ; *compar.*

*-ius* ; *superl.* *-issimē*.

unworthy, *indignus*, *a*, *um*  
(*abl.*).

urge-on, *I*, *urgeō*. 2. (*ursī*), *no*  
*supine* ; *incitō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*,  
(*equum*).

*us*, *nōs*.

use, *I*, *utor*. 3. *usus* (*abl.*).

useful, *ūtilis*, *e* ; *dat.* of *usus*,

*ūs*, *m*.

useless, *inūtilis*, *e*.

## V

valley, *vallēs*, *is*, *f*.

valour, *virtūs*, *ūtis*, *f*.

very, sign of *superl.* degree ;  
(=actual), *ipse*, *a*, *um*.

— easy, *perfacilis*, *e*.

young, *v.* young.

victorious, *I* am, *v.* conquer ;  
or *victor*, *superior sum*, *esse*,  
*fui*

victory, *victōria*, *ae*, *f*.

violence, *vīs*, *vīm*, *vī*, *f*.

do violence-to, *I*, *viol-ō*. 1. *-āvī*,  
*-ātum* (*acc.*).

voice, *vox*, *vōcis*, *f*.

## W

wage, *I*, *gerō*. 3. *gessi*, *gestum*.

wait, *I*, *mor-or*. 1. *-ātus* (*v.n.*) ;  
*ex-spect-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*  
(*v.n.*).

— for, *I*, *ex-spect-ō*. 1. *-āvī*,  
*-ātum* (*v.a.*).

walk, *I*, *ambul-ō*. 1. *-āvī*,  
*-ātum*.

wall, *mūrus*, *ī*, *m*.

war, *bellum*, *ī*, *n*.

warlike, *bellicōsus*, *a*, *um*.

warn, *I*, (*ad*)*mon-eō*. 2. *-uī*,  
*-itum*.

warrior, *armātus*, *ī*, *m*. (*lit.* an  
armed man).

warship, *nāvis longa*, *f*.

watch, *vigilia*, *ae*, *f*.

water, *aqua*, *ae*, *f*.

way (=method), *modus*, *ī*,  
*m*.

we, *nōs* ; or express by 1st  
pers. pl. of tenses.

weapon, *tēlum*, *ī*, *n*.

weariness, *lassitudo*, *inis*, f.

weep, I, *flēō*. 2. *flēvi*, *flētum*.

weigh-down, I (=oppress),  
*op-primō*. 3. *pressi*, *pressum*.

weighed, *examinatus*, a, um.

weight, *pontus*, *eris*, n.

what, rel. pron. = that which,  
*id quod*; those things which,  
*ea quae*.

— interrog. pron. (in In-  
• direct Questions), *quis*, *quid*  
(noun), *quī*, *quae*, *quod*  
(adi.).

when, *ubi* (indic.); *cum* (past  
tense of subj.).

whence, *unde*.

whenever, *cum*, *quotiens*,  
*v. Less. 49*.

whether? *utrum*.

whether . . . or (in Indirect  
Questions), *utrum*, *num*, *-ne*  
. . . an, *v. p. 186*.

which, rel. *v. who*.

while, *dum* (indic.), *v. p. 204*.

whither, rel. adv. *quō*.

who, rel. pron., *quī*, *quae*,  
*quod*.

— interrog. pron. *quis*, *quid*.  
whole, whole-of, *tōtus*, a, um.

why? *cūr*, *quamobrem*, *quā dē*  
*causā*.

wind, *ventus*, *i*, m.

wine, *vinum* *i*, n.

wing, *cornū*, *ūs*, n. (milit.).

winter, noun, *hiems*, *emis*, f.

winter, I, *hiem-ō*. 1. *-āvī*,  
*-ātum*.

— quarters, *hiberna*, *ōrum*,  
• n. pl.

wish, I, *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*.

— for, I, *cūp-iō*. 3. *-ivī* (*ivī*),  
*-itum*.

— not, I, *nolō*, *nolle*, *noluī*.

with, simple abl., or *cum*  
(abl.) = together with.

— difficulty, *agrē*, *vix*.

within, *intrā* (acc.).

without, *sine* (abl.).

woman, *mulier*, *eris*, f.; *fēmina*,  
*ae*, f.

wonderful, *mīrābilis*, *e*.

woody, *silvestris*, *e*.

word, *verbum*, *i*, n.

work, noun, *opus*, *eris*, n.

—, I, *labōr-ō*. 1. *-āvī*,  
*-ātum*.

wound, noun, *vulnus*, *eris*,  
n.

—, I, *vulner-ō*. 1. *-āvī*,  
*-ātum*.

write, *scribō*. 3. *scripsi*, *scriptum*.

wrong, *nefas* (indecl.).

## Y

year, *annus*, ī, m.

yet (=nevertheless), *tamen*.

you, sing. *tū*, pl. *vōs*; or express by 2nd pers. sing. or pl. of tenses.

young, very, *adulescentulus*, *a-*  
*um*.

young man, *iuvenis*, *is*, m.

*adulescens*, *ntis*, m.

— men, *iuventūs*, *ūtis*, f.

## Z

zeal, *studium*, *dī*, n.





# MESSRS. RIVINGTONS

## Rivingtons' Junior Classics.

### First Latin Translation Book.

By J. A. TURNER and A. H. THOMAS. 1s. 6d.

### Initia Latina. A Latin Book for Beginners.

By E. D. MANSFIELD. 2s.

### Exercises in Latin Prose.

By E. D. MANSFIELD. 2s. 6d. net.

### Edited, with Maps, Plans, Exercises for Re-translation, Notes, and Vocabularies.

Caesar, The Gallic War.

Books I. to VI. 1s. 6d. each.

### Selections from Cicero.

In Two Parts. 1s. 6d. each.

### Eutropius. 2s.

### Selections from Livy. 2s.

### Selections from Ovid. 2s.

### The Anabasis of Xenophon. Book I. 2s.

## Rivingtons' Single Term Latin Readers

With Notes, Exercises, and Vocabularies.

**First Term.**—Three Books, of equal difficulty. 8d. each. *First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.*

**Second Term.**—Three Books, of equal difficulty. 1s. each. *First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.*

**Third Term.**—Three Books, of equal difficulty. 1s. each. *First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.*

**Fourth Term.**—Three Books, of equal difficulty. 1s. each. *First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.*

**Fifth Term.**—Three Books, of equal difficulty. 1s. 4d. each. *First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.*

**Sixth Term.**—Three Books, increasing in difficulty. 9d. each. *First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.*

## Rivingtons' Single Term Greek Readers

With Notes and Vocabularies. 8d. each.

**First Term.**—Three Books, of equal difficulty. *First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.*

**Second Term.**—Three Books, of equal difficulty. *First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.*

**Third Term.**—Three Books, of equal difficulty. *First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.*

## A First Greek Reading Book.

By ARTHUR SIDGWICK. 4s. 6d.

## Greek Sentence Construction.

By ARTHUR SIDGWICK. 1s. 6d. net.

## A Primer of Greek Grammar.

By E. ABBOTT and E. D. MANSFIELD.

2s. 6d. net, or separately:—

**Accidence.** 2s. 6d. net. **Syntax.** 1s. 6d. net.

## A Primer of Greek Exercises.

Based on, and adapted to, the above.

By W. GREENSTOCK. 2s. 6d.

## Elementary Greek Exercises.

By A. E. HILLARD and C. G. BOTTING.

2s. 6d.

## Greek Prose Composition.

By M. A. NORTH and A. E. HILLARD.

3s. 6d.

## Rivingtons' Middle Form Classics.

**Livy. Book I.** By A. F. HORT. 2s.

**Livy. Book II.** By A. F. HORT. 2s.

**Livy. Book V.** By A. F. HORT. 2s.

**Euripides' Hercules Furens, Scenes**

from. By A. F. HORT. 1s. 6d.

**Pylos and Spheerteria, from Thucy-**

dides. By W. ROUSE. 1s. 6d.

**The Retreat from Syracuse, from**

Thucydides. By W. ROUSE. 1s. 6d.

**The Empire of Athens, from Thucy-**

dides. By J. M. SING. 1s. 6d.

**The Siege of Plataea, from Thucy-**

dides. By J. M. SING. 1s. 6d.

**Brasidas in Thrace, from Thucy-**

dides. By J. M. SING. 1s. 6d.

## A Primer of Latin Grammar.

By W. MOULE. 2s. 6d. Or separately:

**Accidence.** 1s. **Syntax.** 1s. 6d.

## First Latin Lessons.

For the use of Preparatory and all types of

Secondary Schools. By C. M. D.

## First Latin Book. Being the First

Year of a Two Years' Course prepara-

tory to Caesar. By C. A. WILLIAMS. 2s.

## Latin Lessons for Beginners.

By A. S. R. HALLIDIE. 1s. 6d.

## Latin Prose Composition for

Middle Forms of Schools. By M. A.

NORTH and A. E. HILLARD. 3s. 6d.

## A Latin Verse Book. For Junior

Students. By A. H. THOMAS. 3s. 6d.

## Rivingtons' Class Books of

Latin Unseens. (a) Six Books, for

alternative use (of a nearly similar

standard of difficulty), for the use of

Fourth Forms of Schools; and (b) Six

books, for use of Fifth Forms. Edited

by E. H. C. SMITH. 6d. each net.

## Easy Latin Unseens. In Three Books.

Prose and Verse together.

Book I., 6d.; Book II., 6d.

Edited by S. E. LONGLAND.

Book III., A First Book of Latin

Verse. Edited by H. C. BENDOW. 6d.

London: 34, King Street, Covent Garden, W.C.

# EDUCATIONAL WORKS

**Summary History of England.**  
By Mrs. CYRIL RANSOME. 1s.

**First History of England.**  
By Mrs. CYRIL RANSOME. 2s. 6d.

**An Elementary History of England.** By C. RANSOME. 1s. 9d.

**An Illustrated History of England.** For Upper and Middle Forms.

By W. S. ROBINSON. One Vol. 3s. 6d., or in two periods 2s. each.

I. To End of Commonwealth, 1860. 2s.  
II. To Edward VII., 1907. 2s.

**A Class Book of English History.** For Middle Forms of Schools.

By A. HASSALL. 3s. 6d.

**An Advanced History of England.** By C. RANSOME. 7s. 6d.

Or, in 2 Parts, 4s. each.

**Rivingtons' Text Books of English History.** By A. HASSALL.

The Tudor Dynasty. 1485-1603. 2s.  
The Expansion of Great Britain. 17-89. 3s.

**War and Reform. 1789-1837.** 3s.

**An Elementary History of Greece.** By C. W. C. OMAN. 2s.

**A Short History of Greece.** By W. S. ROBINSON. 3s.

**A Short History of Rome.** By W. S. ROBINSON. 3s. 6d.

**A History of Rome.** For Middle and Upper Forms. By J. L. MYRES. 5s.

**A Short History of the Church in Great Britain.**

By W. H. HUTTON. 3s. 6d.

**Scriptures in Old Testament History.** By A. R. WHITHAM.

1. The Bible Text only, 2s. 6d. net; or in Two Parts, 1s. 3d. each net.

2. The Readings only, in 78 Lessons, 2s. 6d. net. [4s. 6d. net.

3. Text and Readings, in One Vol., 4s. 6d. net.

By Canon GLAZEBROOK.

**Lessons from the Old Testament.** Senior Course. Text in 3 Vols., 2s. 6d. each net.

Notes of each Vol. together, 4s. each net.

**Junior Course.** Text and Notes in one Vol., 3s. 6d. net. Text without Notes, 2s. 6d. net, or, in 3 Parts, 1s. each net.

**Bible Lessons for the Young.**

The Old Testament in selections from the Authorised Version. 2s. 6d. net, or in Two Parts, 1s. 3d. each net.

**Notes and Outlines for Bible Lessons.** For Teachers using "Bible Lessons for the Young." 3s. 6d.

**Bible Lessons and Notes and Outlines also in 1 Vol., 4s. 6d.**

**Rivingtons' Bible and Prayer-Book Handbooks.**

**The First Volume of the Pentateuch:** The Creation to Deliverance from Egypt. 2s. 6d. net—

**The Second Volume of the Pentateuch:** Departure from Egypt to Death of Moses. 2s. 6d. net—

**Joshua.** 2s. 6d. net—

**Judges and Ruth in 1 Vol.** 2s. 6d. net—

**The First Volume of the Monarchy:** Samuel to Accession of Solomon. 2s. 6d. net—

**The Second Volume of the Monarchy:** Solomon to Captivity of Judah. 3s. 6d. net—

**St. Matthew's Gospel.** 2s. 6d. net—

**St. Mark's Gospel.** 2s. 6d. net—

**St. John's Gospel.** 2s. 6d. net—

**The Acts.** Pt. I, chs. I-xv., 2s. 6d. net; Pt. II, chs. xvi-cxx., 2s. net—

**The Prayer Book.** 4s. 6d. net.

Edited by DR. A. E. HILLARD.

**Rivingtons' Books of the Bible.**

**Genesis—Exodus—Joshua—Judges—Ruth and I. Samuel—II. Samuel—I. Kings—II. Kings—Ezra and Nehemiah—Amos—St. Matthew's Gospel—St. Mark's Gospel—St. Luke's Gospel—St. John's Gospel.** 1s. 6d. each—

**The Acts.** 2s.

**A Continuous Narrative of the Life of Christ in the Words of the Four Gospels.** 2s. 6d.

By W. G. BORCHARDT.

**Practical Arithmetic for Schools.** Complete, 3s. 6d.; with Answers, 4s. 6d., or in Two Parts:—

Part I, 2s.; with Answers, 2s. 6d.

Part II, 2s.; with Answers, 2s. 6d.

**Examples only, with or without Answers, 3s. Or in Two Parts:—**

Part I, 1s. 6d., with or without Answers, 1s. 2s., with or without Answers.

**Arithmetical Types and Examples.** 3s. 6d.

**The Examples separately.** 3s.

*Copies may be had with and without Answers.*

**Junior Arithmetic.** 1s. 6d.; with Answers, 2s.

**The Examples separately.** With or without Answers, 3s. Or in Two Parts:—

Part I, 1s. 6d.; with Answers, 2s.

Part II, 2s., with or without Answers.

**Elementary Statics.** With or without Answers, 4s. 6d.

London: 34, King Street, Covent Garden, W.C.



